

New

TOP

Updated

series

A Reference To
**English
Grammar**

For
All Learners Of English

لجميع دارسي اللغة الانجليزية



By

Edwar Nagi Sedra

EX . Senior master of English

TOP

New Updated

A Reference To English

GRAMMAR

For
All Learners of English

لجميع دارسي اللغة الإنجليزية

By
Edwar Nagi Sedra

0122 344 34 23

حقوق الطبع والنشر محفوظة للمؤلف

CONTENTS

| | |
|---|------------|
| 1. Tenses | 4 |
| 2. Sequence of Tenses | 31 |
| 3. Negation | 39 |
| 4. How to make a question | 44 |
| 5. Question Tags | 49 |
| 6. Pronouns | 54 |
| 7. Articles | 72 |
| 8. Modal Verbs | 89 |
| 9. Active & Passive Voice | 108 |
| 10. The Causative Form | 112 |
| 11. Direct & indirect speech | 131 |
| 12. Infinitive and Gerund | 145 |
| 13. Nouns | 153 |
| 14. Adjectives | 163 |
| 15. Adverbs | 173 |
| 16. Inversion of subject and verb after certain adverbs | 175 |
| 17. Word order | 176 |
| 18. Additions to remarks, using auxiliary verbs | 178 |
| 19. Kinds of sentences | 181 |
| 20. The compound sentence | 185 |
| 21. The relative pronouns | 190 |
| 22. The complex sentence the adjective clause | 194 |
| 23. Adverbial clauses 1. Clause of purpose | 199 |
| 24. Clause of result | 203 |
| 25. Clause of Cause | 205 |
| 26. Clause of contrast | 208 |
| 27. Clause of time | 213 |
| 28. The conditional clause | 216 |
| 29. Clause of manner | 217 |
| 30. Clause of comparison | 219 |
| 31. Noun clauses | 224 |
| 32. The use of capital letters & punctuation marks | 226 |
| 33. Prepositions | 230 |
| 34. Phrasal verbs | 237 |
| 35. Verb + preposition + ing | 239 |
| 36. On time / in time / at the end / in the end | 241 |
| 37. Noun + preposition (reason for, cause of) | 244 |
| 38. Verb + preposition | 250 |
| 39. Verb + object + preposition | 254 |
| 40. Adjective + preposition | 258 |
| 41. Preposition + noun (by mistake, on television) | 263 |
| 42. Language functions | 278 |
| 43. General Rewrite | 287 |
| 44. Ganeral objectives | 286 |
| 45. Advanced Exercises | 297 |
| 46. Conjugation of Irregular Verbs | 316 |
| 47. Find the mistake | 331 |

Verb To Be

الضمائر Present المضارع Past الماضي Past Participle التصریف الثالث

| | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------|---|-----------------|---|------|
| I He She It They You We | am is are | → | was were | → | been |
|---|-------------------------|---|-----------------|---|------|

I **am** a boy. She **is** clever. They **are** in class
 I **was** in Alexandria yesterday.
 We **were** in Alexandria yesterday.
 We **were** in the garden last week.
 Next year I **shall be** in the university.

VERB To Do يفعل - يعمل - يؤدي عمل

| الضمائر | Present | Past | Past participle |
|------------------------|---------|------|-----------------|
| I We They You | do | did | done |
| He She It | does | | |

I **do** my work. (١) (do) بمعنى يعمل - يؤدي عمل
 I **did** my work yesterday.
 I **shall** do this exercise tomorrow.
 (٢) فعل (do) يأتي مع الفعل في المصدر ليعبر عن تأكيد.
 I **do believe** the truth. (for emphasis) للتأكيد.
 I **did see** the accident yesterday. (for emphasis).

VERB TO HAVE فعل يملك

| الضمائر | Present | Past | Past Participle |
|---------|---------|------|-----------------|
| I | have | had | had |
| We | | | |
| You | | | |
| They | | | |
| He | has | had | had |
| She | | | |
| It | | | |
| | | | |

I **have** a car.

أملك سيارة

I **have** my breakfast at seven o'clock.

أتناول الإفطار

I **have** to work hard to succeed.

هنا **must = have to** في المضارع و بعدها الفعل يوضع في المصدر.

TENSES

The Simple Present Tense المضارع البسيط

١- المضارع البسيط هو نفس شكل الفعل في المصدر و لكنه يتميز بإضافة حرف (s) أو (es) له إذا كان الفاعل أو أسم يحل محل الضمير

He - She - It - Aly - Mary - the sky

٢- عندما ينتهي الفعل بـ ss, sh, ch, x, o يضاف (es)

I cross, he crosses.

I rush, he rushes.

I box, he boxes.

I watch, she watches.

I go, It goes.

I reach, she reaches.

٣- الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف (y) يسبقها حرف ساكن تحول إلى (I) ثم نضيف (es)

I carry, he carries.

I hurry, she hurries.

٤- الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف (y) قبلها حرف متحرك (a, e, o, u, u, i) نبتع القاعدة العادية مثل ذلك :

I obey, He obeys.

I say, she says.

٥- يستعمل المضارع البسيط للآتي: ١- للتعبير عن الحقائق و العادات

Facts & Habits

a) Facts

1. The earth **is** round.
2. Birds **do not build** nests in autumn.
3. It **rains** in winter.
4. It **gets** hot in summer.

b) Habits

الكلمات التي تدل على العادات: **usually** عادة , **rarely** نادراً , **always** دائماً , **sometimes** أحياناً , **often** غالباً , **every** كل , **Frequently** مراراً , **generally** عموماً , **scarcely** نادراً , **on Sundays, on Fridays (etc.)**, **Twice a week (a year, a day, a month)**.

1. Mr. Helmi **always wears** a dark suit.
2. Pupils **come to school every day**.
3. The cat often **sits** there.

When, till (until)

٣- يستعمل بعد

1. I shall stay **until (till)** you **get** back.
2. **When he arrives**, he will tell us all about it.

The Simple Present Negative & Interrogative

1. I speak English.

Negative

I do not (don't) speak English.

(don't + المصدر)

(do + الفاعل + المصدر)

Interrogative

Do I speak English ?

إذا كان الفعل بدون (s) للنفي تستعمل

للاستفهام تستعمل

The Simple Present in Answer :

1. Do you speak English ? **Yes, I speak English.**

Yes, I do. إجابة مختصرة

No, I don't speak English. **No, I don't.** إجابة مختصرة

إذا كان السؤال به (do) في الإجابة بالإثبات يوضع الفعل كما هو للنفي و نستعمل المصدر + don't .

2. **He speaks** English. He does not (**doesn't**) speak English.

No, he doesn't speak English. **No, he doesn't.**

إذا كان السؤال به (does) يضاف فعل (s) أو (es) عند الإجابة بالإثبات و للنفي نستعمل المصدر + doesn't

Ex. 1 (A) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form:

1. The policeman often (**direct**) the traffic.
2. Butchers (**sell**) meat.
3. He generally (**wear**) a brown suit.
4. The boys and girls (**go**) to the seaside Everyday.
5. The earth (**move**) round itself.
6. Cats (**eat**) mice.
7. A teacher (**work**) hard.

8. We (**speak**) English in the English lessons.

Ex.1(B) Put the following in: a) Negative & b) Interrogative

1. He teaches English.
2. The men drink tea.
3. They speak a little English.
4. Janet likes chocolate.
5. He works at his desk.
6. It costs a pound.

The Present Continuous Tense المضارع المستمر

١- يتكون من (am-is- are (to be Present) + infinitive + ing

٢- عندما يتكون الفعل من مقطع واحد و ينتهي بحرف ساكن a, e, o, u, i يسبقه حرف متحرك نضعاف الحرف الأخير مثال ذلك : .

hit, hitting – run, running – stop, stopping – cut, cutting – put, putting – sit, sitting.

٣- عندما يكون الفعل من مقطعين و ينتهي بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضعاف هذا الحرف الأخير إذا كان الضغط يقع عليه عند النطق مثال ذلك : a,

e, o, u, i

begin, beginning – prefer, preferring – admit, admitting.

أما الفعل enter لا نضغط على الحرف الأخير عند النطق لذلك لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير و يصبح entering .

٤- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف (I) يسبقه حرف متحرك a, e, o, u, i نضعاف (I) مثال ذلك :

travel, travelling – signal, signalling.

٥- لا يستعمل المضارع المستمر مع الأفعال الآتية:

I) Verbs of senses أفعال الشعور : see, hear, smell, notice.

II) Verbs of thinking أفعال التفكير : think, feel, realize, know, understand, mean, suppose, believe, expect, remember, recollect, forget, recall, trust, mind.

III) Verbs of emotion أفعال العاطفة : want, desire, refuse, forgive, wish, care, live, hate, love, like, dislike.

IV) Verbs of possessing أفعال الملكية : own, owe, belong, possess.

V) The auxiliaries ما عدا be & have : الأفعال المساعدة

VI) Signify يدل على : appear (seem), contain, consist, keep (continue), concern, matter.

يستعمل المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مستمر الآن و تعبر عنه الكلمات الآتية :

Now, at this moment, at present, still, look, listen.

أو إذا فهمنا من معنى الجملة أن الحدث مستمر الآن مثال ذلك :

1. It **is raining** now. 2. Look, the car **is running** madly.
3. I am not **wearing** a coat as it isn't raining.
4. Listen, birds are **singing**. 5. She is still **making** the beds.
- 6-At this moment the boys **are playing**.

١ - يستعمل للتعبير عن حدث يقع و ليس بالضرورة أن يقع لحظة الكلام.

I **am reading** a book by Taha Hussain.

هذه الجملة تعني أنني أقرأ كتاباً لطفه حسين و ليس بالضرورة أنني أقرأ في هذه اللحظة بالضبط.

٢ - يستعمل لحدث سوف يحدث في المستقبل خطط له مستقبلاً.

I **am going** to the theatre tonight.

هذه الجملة تعني أنني حجزت التذاكر للمسرح هذه الليلة.

٣ - يستعمل مع بعض أفعال الحواس و هي **listen, look, watch, see** عندما تدل على حدث متعمد مثال ذلك:

1. Don't disturb him, **he is listening** to a radio play.
2. Why **are you looking** at the car.
3. The police **are watching** the house.
4. **I'm seeing** the doctor tomorrow at 11.00.

The Present Continuous Negative & Interrogative.

Negative نفي **Interrogative** استفهام

She is working. She is not (**isn't**) working. Is she working ?

They are playing. They are not (**aren't**) playing. Are they playing?

Ex.2(A) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. She (**not work**) now, she (**swim**) in the sea.
2. Why Mary (**not wear**) her new dress ?
3. It (**rain**) ? Yes, it (**rain**) very hard, we can't go out.
4. Who (**make**) that terrible noise ? It's Janet, she (**practise**) the violin.
5. What you (**read**) now ?
6. It's a lovely day, the sun (**shine**) and the birds (**sing**).
7. Now the fireman (**come**) down again. He (**carry**) a baby.

Ex. 2 (B) Put the verbs in brackets in the Simple Present or the Present Continuous.

1. You can't see Nagi now, he (**have**) a bath.
2. He usually (**drink**) coffee, but today he (**drink**) tea.

3. What she **(do)** in the evening ? She usually **(study)** her lessons or **(listen)** to music.
4. I won't go out as it **(rain)** and I **(not have)** an umbrella.
5. In Spain Women usually **(not wear)** hats.
6. I **(wear)** a hat today because the sun **(be)** very hot.
7. You always **(write)** with your left hand ?
8. You **(love)** him ? No, I **(like)** him very much. I **(not love)** him.
9. He always **(say)** that he will mend the window, but he never **(do)** it.
10. This car **(make)** a very strange noise. You **(think)** it's all right ?
11. Mary usually **(learn)** language very quickly, but she **(not seem)** able to learn modern Greek.
12. The kettle **(boil)** now. Shall I make tea?
13. What this one **(cost)** ? It **(cost)** forty pence.
14. He always **(borrow)** from me and never **(remember)** to pay me back.
15. What he **(do)** to his car now ? I think he **(polish)** it.

Ex.2 (C) Choose the correct answer.

1. This roast chicken **(tastes – is tasting – tasted – taste)** delicious
2. She usually **(sit – sits – is sitting)** at the back of the class, but today she **(sit – sits – is sitting)** in the first row.
3. A : When **(does – is – has – will)** she leaving for London? B : On the 6th of July.
4. Mr. Ali usually **(sell – sells – is selling)** newspaper but this week he **(is selling – sells – sell)** magazines.
5. **(Is – Do – Does – Are)** you seeing Nagi tomorrow ?
6. He generally **(comes – come – is coming)** to my office, everyday but today he **(visits – visit – is visiting)** his parents in the country.

7. Mary usually (**wears – wear – is wearing**) a hat to go shopping, but today as the sun (**shines – shine – is shining**), she (**does not wear – is not wearing – do not wear**) one.
8. (**Do you listen – Are you listening – Do listen**) to what I (**say – says – am saying**) ?
9. He generally (**speaks – speak – is speaking**) Greek, but he (**speaks – speak – is speaking**) English now.
- 10- Janet (**do – does – is doing**) her homework now. She usually (**do – does – is doing**) it in the evening.

The Simple Future Tense المستقبل البسيط

will / shall + infinitive

١- يتكون من

I - we & shall + infinitive

he – she – it – they – you – will + infinitive

Will is contracted to **'ll** تختصر إلى

Will not is contracted to **won't** تختصر إلى

Shall not is contracted to **shan't** تختصر إلى

ملحوظة لا تستعمل 'll عندما يكون المصدر محذوفاً.

Who **will go** ? I will.

I **shall know** tomorrow.

We **shall have** to rebuild that wall.

١- يستعمل المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن حدث في المستقبل - الكلمات التي تدل على المستقبل هي :

tomorrow – next – in future – soon – shortly.

In a few days (**minutes – months – weeks**) tonight.

1. Next week **we shall visit** the museum.

2. They **will soon speak** English well.

٢- يستعمل المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن الآراء و الافتراضات و الآمال بالنسبة للمستقبل و هذه يمكن أن يسبقها أفعال مثل :

think – know – believe – doubt – suppose – assume – expect – hope – be afraid.

probably – possibly – perhaps – surely أو يأتي معها ظروف مثل

I'm sure, he will come back.

1. **I suppose**, they will sell the house.

٣- يستعمل المستقبل للتعبير عن أحداث ما يتكرر حدوثها في المستقبل مثال ذلك :

1. Spring **will come** again.
2. Birds **will build** nests.
2. People **will make** plans.

٤- لا يستعمل المستقبل البسيط بعد **the moment, as soon as, till when,**
When it gets warmer, the snow **will start** to melt.

٥- يأتي المستقبل البسيط مع الجمل الشرطية **if – unless** في الحالة الأولى :
If I drop this glass, **it will break**.

٦- يستعمل المستقبل البسيط في الصحف و نشرات الأخبار في الإعلان عن خطط المستقبل
The President **will open** the new project tomorrow.

am – is – are + going to + infinitive.

تستعمل للتعبير عن قصد أو هدف في المستقبل خطط له مسبقاً مثال ذلك :

I have bought some bricks and I am going to build a house.

معنى هذه الجملة أنني اشتريت الطوب و لذلك سوف أقوم ببناء المنزل.

shall – will + infinitive أما

فهي تعبر عن قصد في المستقبل دون تخطيط سابق .

كذلك يستعمل للتنبؤات العينية على مآثره أو نعره بمعنى أن يكون لدينا دليل على هذا التنبؤ .

The sky is **very cloudy** . It's **going to** rain.

إليك أمثلة توضح الفرق بين المصدر **am – is – are + going to +**

Shall – will + infinitive.

1. Nagi **has just borrowed** the axe, he **is going to** chop some wood.
2. She has bought some cloth, she **is going to** make herself a dress.
3. Why are you taking down all the pictures ?
I **am going to** repaper the room.
4. What are you going to do this weekend ?
I **am going to** the cinema.

II. Father : I've left my watch upstairs.

Son **I'll go** and get it to you.

3. Mother : Who will post the letter ? Son : **I will.**

1. You don't normally use **"going to"** with the verb **"go"** you usually just say **"I'm going rather than I'm going to go."**

٧- استعمالات أخرى للمستقبل البسيط:

أ- عندما تدعو شخصاً للجلوس أو لتبادل بعض المشروبات.

1. Will you sit down ? 2. Will you have some tea ?

ب- عندما تطلب من أحد (Please) will you tell me your name ?

ج- عندما تعرض مساعدة Shall I help you with your work ?

The Simple Future Negative & Interrogative.

Negative Interrogative

I shall go I shan't go Shall I go ?

He will leave He won't leave Will he leave ?

Ex.4 (A) Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. I am sure that I (**recognize**) him.
2. I (**see**) her tomorrow.
3. I (**go**) again next year.
4. He (**leave**) in a few days.
5. If he works well, I (**pay**) him five pounds.
6. I (**believe**) it when, I (**see**) it.
7. When you (**meet**) them ? I (**meet**) them at 8.30.
8. You (**understand**) when you (**be**) older.
9. I (**see**) my grandparents tomorrow.

Ex.4(B) Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form. Use will + infinitive or going to + infinitive.

1. They (**play**) golf this afternoon.
2. I'm bored, I think I (**do**) a crossword puzzle.
3. They are making a lot of noise. They (**wake**) the baby.
4. You've got a bad cold. I (**make**) you some soup.
5. A: Would you like something to drink?
B: I (**have**) a cup of tea, please.
6. We hope the dog (**find**) his way back home.
7. A: Look at that man on the ladder.
B: Oh, no! he (**fall**).
8. A: I don't understand this Maths problem.
B: That's ok. I (**help you**).
9. A: Why are you wearing those old clothes?
B: Because I (**paint**) the kitchen today.
10. A: Do you want to know what she told me?
B: Oh yes! I promise I (**not tell**) anyone else.

المستقبل المستمر The Future Continuous Tense

١- يتكون من shall – will + be + verb + ing

I shall be working.

You will be working.

I'll be working.

He'll be working.

٢- الاستعمال الأساسي للمستقبل المستمر هو التعبير عن المستقبل دون قصد أما المستقبل البسيط فيعبر عن قصد مثال ذلك :

I shall come to your house tomorrow.

هذه الجملة تعني أنني أتوي أو أقصد الحضور إلى منزلك غداً.

I shall be coming to your house tomorrow.

هذه الجملة تعني أنني سأحضر إلى منزلك ولكن دون قصد أو عمد .

مثال آخر I'll write to Nagi and tell him about Mary's arrival

هذا الزمن I'll write يعبر عن قصد فالمتكلم يتحدث عن حدث سوف يقع متعمداً (سوف أكتب لناجي و بناء عن رغبتني) و ذلك بهدف أن أخبره عن وصول ماري.

I'll be writing to Nagi and I'll tell him about Mary's arrival.

مستقبل لا يعبر عن قصد أنه مجرد عبارة I'll be writing علي أن الخطاب سوف يكتب إلى ناجي بطريقة روتينية لا علاقة لها بوصول ماري.

٣- يمكن أن يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مثل الأزمنة المستمرة الأخرى ليعبر عن حدث سوف يستمر في المستقبل لبعض الوقت دون تحديد و عندما يستخدم بهذه الطريقة (بعبارة تدل على الزمن) فإنه يدل علي أن الحدث سوف يبدأ قبل الوقت المذكور و ربما يستمر بعدة مثال ذلك :

When I reach London, it will be raining.

This time next year. I shall be driving to Alexandria.

Ex. 4c) Put the verbs in the brackets in the Future Continuous Tense.

1. This time in the next month I (sit) on the beach.
2. When you arrive, I probably (pick) the fruit.
3. I'll call at her at eight.
4. No, don't she still (have) breakfast now.
5. I (wait) you when you come back.
6. When you next see me, I (wear) my new suit.
7. We have to do night duty here, I (do) mine next week.
8. In a hundred years' time, people (go) to Mars for their holiday.
9. It's a serious injury, but he (walk) again in six weeks.
10. Stand there, they (change) the guard in a minute.

11. It won't be easy to get out of the country, the police (watch) all the parts.

The Future Perfect Tense المستقبل التام

shall / will have + P.P

يتكون من .

He will have worked. I shall have worked

١- يعبر المستقبل التام عن حدث سوف يكتمل وقوعه في وقت محدد في المستقبل.

They will have finished the bridge in a year's time.

هذه الجملة تعني أنهم في خلال سنة سوف ينتهون من بناء الكوبري (حدث سوف يكتمل في زمن معين في المستقبل).

He will have moved into a new flat in two months' time.

سوف يكون قد أنتقل إلى شقة جديدة في خلال شهرين.

انفرق بين المستقبل البسيط و المستقبل التام .

1. I shall complete the novel next June.

2. I shall have completed the novel by next June.

في الجملة الأولى سوف أكمل القصة في يونيو القادم (مستقبل بسيط).

في الجملة الثانية سوف أكون قد أكملت القصة في يونيو القادم (مستقبل تام).

٢- يأتي المستقبل التام مع العبارات الآتية :

In + period of time e.g. in a month's time—in a year's time.

This time + exact time e.g. this time tomorrow — this time next week.

By (= before) + exact time e.g. by next Friday, by this time tomorrow.

1. I shall have completed the project by the end of this year.

2. In two year's time, I shall have taken my degree.

3. I shall have received a reply by this time tomorrow.

4. You will have learnt the results of the examination by then.

Ex.5 (A) Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. In a fortnight's time, we (take) our exam.

2. I (finish) this book by tomorrow morning.

3. By next winter, they (build) four hospitals.

4. If I continue with my diet, I **(lose)** 10 kilos by the end of the month.
 5. By the time we get to the party, everything **(be)** eaten.
 6. By this time next year I **(save)** five hundred pounds.
 7. I hope we **(sell)** all the tickets before the end of the week.
 8. The train **(leave)** before we reach this station.
 9. When you come back I **(finished)** all the housework.
 10. By April 1990 I **(pay)** 5 thousand pounds in taxes.
-

EX. 5(B) Choose the correct answer:

1. By the end of the term I **(will read – will be reading – will have read)** twelve novels.
2. I **(shall see – shall be seeing – shall have seen)** her tomorrow.
3. The football club had lost some its best players. They **(will look–will be looking–will have looked)** out for new men.
4. I **(will remember – will be remembering – will have remembered)** this day all my life.
5. By the end of my university course, I **(will attend – will be attending – will have attended)** 1,200 lectures.
6. You **(will need – will be needing – will have needed)** a visa if you are going to Spain.
7. I am sure you **(will like – will be liking – will have liked)** our new house.
8. In fifty years time, we **(will live – will be living – will have lived)** on pills.
9. The police **(will hear – will be hearing – will have heard)** the theft by this time tomorrow.
10. He **(will believe – will be believing – will have believed)** whatever you tell him.
11. They are pulling down all the old houses in this street, I expect they **(will pull down – will be pulling down – will have pulled down)** mine in a few years' time.

12. The treasurer أمين الصندوق said "By the end of the year all the debts **(will be paid – will be paying – will have been paid)** off".
13. I'll come at three o'clock. Good ! Father **(will expect – will be expecting – will have expected)** you.
14. By midnight, he **(will be – will being – will have been)** unconscious for twelve hours.
15. The garden **(will look – will be looking – will have looked)** its best next month.

الماضي البسيط The Simple Past Tense

١ - يتكون الماضي البسيط بإضافة (ed) الفعل الذي لا ينتهي بحرف (e) وإضافة (d) فقط للفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (e) ما عدا الأفعال الشاذة التي لها تصريفات خاصة.

1. I **worked** – He **worked** – They **worked**.

٢ - نفي الماضي البسيط يتكون من (المصدر + **did not / didn't**) مثال ذلك:

I **did not (didn't)** work. They **did not (didn't)** work.

He **did not (didn't)** work. You **did not (didn't)** work.

٣ - صيغة الاستفهام للماضي البسيط (المصدر + الفاعل + **did**).

Did I work ? Did you work ?

٤ - أنظر قواعد مضاعفة الحرف الأخير في زمن المضارع المستمر و طبق نفس هذه القواعد على الماضي البسيط.

- يستعمل الماضي البسيط :

١ - للتعبير عن حدث في الماضي اكتمل في وقت محدد مثل **I met him yesterday**

٢ - يستعمل للسؤال عن وقت وقوع الحدث **When did you meet him ?**

٣ - عندما يكون من الواضح أن الحدث وقع في وقت محدد مع أن هذا الوقت غير مذكور مثال ذلك :

1. The train **was** ten minutes late.

2. I **bought** this car in Paris.

How **did you get** your present job?

٤ - يعبر عن حدث لا نعرف وقته بالضبط ولكن هذا الحدث قد شغل فترة من الزمن انتهت الآن.

3. She **worked** in that bank **for four years (but she doesn't work there now).**

4. She **lived** in Rome **for a long time (but she is not living there now)**.

5. Once he **was** a good player **(but now he is not)**.

٥- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن عادة في الماضي مثال ذلك:

1. He **always carried** an umbrella.

He **used to travel** by air. (اعتاد أن used to)

٦- يأتي الماضي البسيط في الجملة الشرطية (بعد if) .

If I **knew** his address, I **would** visit him.

٧- يستعمل الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية :

yesterday – last night (week – year) ago – just now – a few minutes ago – three days ago – a long time ago.

Ex. 6 (A) Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form:

1. They **(get back)** very late last night.
2. Last month the cost of living **(rise)** to a new high point.
3. Yesterday afternoon the police **(catch)** a thief.
4. He **(ring)** me up just now.
5. It is exactly five years ago today that we **(get)** married.
6. I **(see)** the bus pass a few minutes ago.
7. They **(not visit)** us after we had quarrelled.
8. When you last **(see)** your father ?
9. I **(lie)** in bed and **(watch)** the television yesterday.
10. Once there **(be)** a volcano here.

Ex.6(B) Make the following a) Negative b) Interrogative.

1. He dried his hands.
2. They understood the story.
3. The artist drew a picture.
4. Mary drank tea.
5. They worked hard.
6. They had a good meal.

Used to / Be used to / Get used to

1) We use "**used to + infinitive**" to refer to **past habits or states**.

In such cases "used to" can be replaced by the past simple with no difference in meaning.

eg. He **used to** go out when he was younger. (He doesn't any more)

We use the past simple and not (used to) for actions which happened at a definite time in the past.

He visited Paris last month.

He **went out** a lot when he was younger / He **used to go** out when he was younger. (He doesn't any more).

Did she spend / Did she use to spend a lot of money when she was single?

Look at the following examples of how we can use (be / get used to + noun / pronoun +ing form

- a) They are **used to** hot water. (They **are accustomed to** معاد على hot weather. **Present**).
- b) I'm **used to** getting up early (**I'm accustomed to** getting up early)
- c) She **wasn't used to** working at night. (**She wasn't accustomed to work at night**)
- d) Mary is **getting used to** life in the city. (Mary is **becoming accustomed to** life in the city – **present**)
- e) Nagy had never lived in a tropical country but he quickly **got used to** it. (**He became accustomed to it - past**)
- f) They **will soon get used to** cooking their own meals. (**They will become accustomed to cooking** their own meals – **future**)

Choose the correct answer:

- 1) A: "I find it hard to get up early."
B: "You to getting up early once you start working."
a) are used b) will get used
c) were used d) used
- 2) A: "Do you exercise now?"
B: "No, but I to exercise a lot when I was at school."
a) used b) am used
c) will get used d) was used

- A: "Aren't you bothered by all that noise?"
 B: "No, we to noise. We live in the city centre."
 a) were used b) will get used
 c) used d) are used
- 4) A: "Does your sister travel a lot?"
 B: "No, but she to before she got married."
 a) didn't use b) wasn't used
 c) used d) will get used
- 5) A: "I don't like wearing a suit everyday."
 B: "Don't worry, you to it very soon."
 a) will get used b) are used
 c) were used d) used
- 6) Julie to using the computer, but now she enjoys it. It's a lot easier to her now.
 a) isn't used b) wasn't used
 c) will get used d) used
- 7) A: "Do you remember the things we... to do when we were kids."
 B: "Of course I do. How could I forget what fun we had."
 a) used b) are used
 c) will get used d) got used
- 8 A: "Do you like living in the city?"
 B: "Well, I to it yet, but it's okay."
 a) am not used b) wasn't used
 c) will get used d) am used

The Past Continuous Tense الماضي المستمر

- ١- يتكون من {was – were (To Be Past) + verb + ing} يكون من
- ٢- يستعمل أساساً للتعبير عن حدث استمر في الماضي لبعض الوقت مثال ذلك :
 He **was working** in the garden yesterday.
- ٣- يعبر عن حدث استمر في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر (ماضي بسيط) أو استمر بعده مثال ذلك :
 When I arrived, Nagi **was talking** on the phone.
- ٤- يستعمل بعد While أو As بمعنى (بينما) و أحياناً مع When .

1. As **I was coming** to school this morning, **I saw** a car run into a bus.
2. **While we were having** supper, all **lights went out**.
3. The **teacher was giving** us a lesson, when a little dog walked into the room.
4. The fire **was still burning** when I passed the house.

٥ - يستعمل للتعبير عن حدثين كانا يحدثان في نفس الوقت

Mother **was cooking** the food while father **was reading** the papers

٦ - صيغة النفي و الاستفهام في الماضي المستمر.

Negative

Interrogative

I was working. I **was not** working.

Was I working ?

They were working. They **were not** working. **Were** they working?

Ex.7 (A) Put the verbs in brackets into the Simple Past or the Past Continuous.

1. When I **(see)** him, he **(paint)** a portrait of his wife.
2. As we **(come)** here, a policeman **(stop)** us.
3. As he **(make)** his speech, the minister suddenly **(feel)** faint.
4. He **(say)** he **(look)** for some stolen property and **(ask)** if he could search the car.
5. As they **(walk)** along the road, they **(hear)** a car coming from behind them, Nagi **(turn)** round and **(hold)** up his hand.
6. While I **(water)** the flowers, it **(begin)** to rain.
7. While I **(swim)**, someone **(steal)** my clothes and I **(have to)** walk home in my bathing dress.
8. He **(sit)** on the bank fishing when he **(see)** a man's hat floating down the river.
9. As the goalkeeper **(run)** forward to seize the ball, a bottle **(strike)** him on the shoulder.
10. "What you **(do)** between 9.0 and 10.0 yesterday?" said Mary " I **(clean)** my house." said Janet.

Ex. 7 (B) Choose the correct answer:

1. I (find – found – was finding) this ring as I (dig – dug – was digging) in the garden.
2. It (rained – was raining – raining) when we (were going – went – going) out.
3. Nagi (was getting – getting – got) off the train while it (was going – going – went).
4. He (hurt – hurting – was hurting) his foot while he (climbed – climb – was climbing) the tree.
5. She (lived – was living – living) in England when war (began – beginning – was beginning).
6. When I (arriving – arrived – was arriving) at the house he (still sleeping – still slept – was still sleeping).
7. She (was talking – talked – talking) to her neighbour when the baby (begin – began – was beginning) to cry.
8. Nagi (was working – worked – working) on a new project when his manager (was coming – came – coming) in.
9. My aunt (walking – walked – was walking) in the garden when I (meeting – met – was meeting) her.
10. She (cooked – cooking – was cooking) the food when the door bell (rang – ringing – was ringing).

المضارع التام The Present Perfect Tense

١- يتكون من (التصريف الثالث للفعل have – has + P.P)

I have worked. I haven't worked. Have I worked?
He has worked. He hasn't worked. Has he worked?

١- يستعمل المضارع التام مع just ليعبر عن حدث أكتمل الآن.

He has just gone out = He went out a few minutes ago.

٢- يستعمل للتعبير عن حدث في الماضي لم يحدد زمنه.

I have read the instructions but I don't understand them.

٣- يعبر عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي و لا يزال لها علاقة بالحاضر.

I have seen statues in the museum.

هذه الجملة تعني أنني شاهدت تماثيل ذلك المتحف و لا يزال من الممكن مشاهدة التماثيل الآن.

٤- يستعمل المضارع التام مع already, lately, recently, yet

1. There **has been** a lot of changes **recently**.
2. He **hasn't finished yet**.

هـ - يستعمل المضارع التام مع **since**

أ - إذا جاءت **since** في جملة بها فعل واحد يوضع في زمن المضارع التام.

We **have not seen him since** his arrival.

ب - إذا جاءت **since** في جملة بها فعلان يوضع الفعل بعد **since** مباشرة في زمن الماضي البسيط و الفعل الآخر مضارع تام.

I **have smoked since** I left school (**I still smoke**).

ت - يستعمل المضارع التام مع **never** في النفي و مع **ever** في الاستفهام.

1. He has **never** learned English.
2. Have you **ever** seen an English film?

For & Since

١ - تستعمل **for** لفترة من الزمن مثل : **for six days, for a long time**

و عندما تستعمل **for** مع الماضي البسيط فإنها تدل على فترة زمنية منتهية.

We lived there **for ten years**. مدة عشر سنوات انتهت الآن

تستعمل **for** مع المضارع التام لتدل على فترة زمنية تمتد إلى الوقت الحاضر.

We have lived in London **for ten years**. (and still live there)

لفترة عشر سنوات (و لا تزال نعيش هناك)

يمكن أحياناً حذف **for** مثال ذلك : We've **been here an hour**.

٢ - تستعمل **since** مع توقيت زمني منذ ذلك الوقت حتى وقت الكلام.

تستعمل **since** مع زمن المضارع التام.

She has been here **since six o'clock** (and still here)

Ex.(8) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. She just (**wash**) the floor.
2. I (**not pay**) the telephone bill yet.
3. You ever (**ride**) a camel?
4. I (**attend, not**) any parties since I (**come**) here.
5. I (**not see**) him for three years. I wonder where he is.
6. He (**not smoke**) for two weeks. He is trying to give it up.
7. He (**be**) very ill since last month.
8. The play just (**begin**), you are a little late.
9. We (**have**) a terrible weather for the last month.
10. This book (**appear**) recently.
11. This very moment I (**receive**) a letter from my brother.
12. Things (**change**) since I (**be**) a boy.

13. Mary : Where else you **(be)** since you came to Cairo?
Janet Oh, I **(be)** to Zamalek, Heliopolis and Shoubra.
14. So far this week I **(have)** two tests.

have / has gone to / have / has been to / in

Study the following examples:

- 1- They **have gone to** the theatre.
→ (this means they have not come back)
2- He **has been to** Japan.
→ (this means that he has visited Japan. He is not there now)
3- He **has been in** Alexandria now.
→ (this means he lives in Alexandria now.)

Ex 9: Fill in the gaps with "have / has gone to or have / has been to / in:

- 1- Mum the supermarket. She'll be home soon.
2- you ever the opera?
3- We ... New York for very long but we don't know it very well yet.
4- Julie isn't here now. She the library to get some books.
5- My sister the cinema. She left an hour ago.
6- We Marsa Matrouh for long so far but we want to go there again.
7- He school. It's his first day.
8- My son the USA now and he contacts me every week.
9- My brother never an art gallery.
10- Usama ... Aswan for a few days. He's returning tomorrow.

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

المضارع التام المستمر

١- يتكون من (have been – has been + infinitive + ing)

يستعمل للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي و لا يزال مستمراً أو أنهى تواتاً كذلك مع نفس الكلمات السابقة للمضارع التام.

I've been waiting for an hour, and **he hasn't turned up**.

I'm so sorry I'm late. **Have you been waiting long?**

٢- يستعمل هذا الزمن مع الأفعال التي يدل معناها على حدث مستمر مثل.

Live, wait, stay, work, read, sleep, study

و مع الأفعال التي تدل على أن الحدث متكرر.

٣- الكلمات المستخدمة في هذا الزمن دائماً يسبقها كلمة (all)

All this morning, all this week, all day, all this year.

1. They have been living here since 1970.
2. I have been waiting for you all morning.
3. She has been sleeping for three hours now.

٤ لا يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في المضارع المستمر ما عدا **want, wish**.

٥ لا يستخدم المضارع التام في المبني للمجهول و يستخدم بدلاً منه المضارع التام البسيط .

٦ المقارنة بين المضارع التام و المضارع التام المستمر .

1. a) It hasn't rained for six weeks.
b) It has been raining hard since yesterday and it is still raining.
2. a) He has rung up five times since 12 o'clock.
b) He has been ringing me up all morning.
3. a) He has never stayed at this hotel before.
b) He has been staying at the hotel for the last three weeks.
4. a) I have read "El Ayem" five times.
b) I have been reading all afternoon.

Ex. 10 (A) Supply the correct form of Present Perfect Continuous or Present Perfect Simple or Past Simple in the place of the verbs in brackets.

1. We already (**have**) breakfast.
2. They (**live**) here since January.
3. We (**wait**) on the platform since three o'clock.
4. She (**write**) letters all morning, but I (**not start**) to write any yet.
5. How long you (**stay**) in that old hotel ?
6. They (**work**) in the same hotel for 20 years now.
7. I (**shop**) all the morning, but I (**not buy**) anything yet.
8. He (**write**) a book for the last six months but (**make**) very little progress so far.
9. He (**be**) in prison for a year.

10. They just **(arrive)** from Tanta.
11. You ever **(read)** "El Ayam" ?
12. We **(fish)** for two hours now.
13. How many times you **(be)** to the cinema this week ?
14. I **(not see)** him today, but he **(tell)** Mary that he'd be in for dinner.
15. He **(not stop)** eating since he **(arrive)**.
16. He **(sleep)** since 10 o'clock. It's time he woke up.
17. I **(teach)** hundreds of students, but I never **(meet)** such a hopeful class as this.
18. I only **(hear)** from him twice since he **(go)** away.
19. I **(study)** your proposals for hours now and I can't accept them.
20. It **(rain)** all day, I wonder when it stop.

"Since for"

Ex. 10 (B) Fill in the spaces using for or since:

1. I've been working in his office a month.
2. They've been living in France 1970.
3. I've known that a long time.
4. She has worn the same hat 1975.
5. I've been using this medicine twelve years
6. Mr. Hassan has been in hospital his accident.
7. We've been waiting half an hour.
8. The wireless has been on 7 a.m.
9. They've been on strike November.
10. The strike has lasted six months.

Ex. 10 (C) Choose the correct answer.

1. They **(have built – have been building – are building)** that bridge for over a year and it still isn't finished.
2. He **(has gone – has been going – is going)** to the dentist off and on for six months.
3. She **(has just spent – has just been spending – just spent)** three weeks at her grandmothers'.
4. Nobody has seen him **(for – since – from)** last week.

5. He has been Minister of Education (**for – since – from**) 1975.
6. He (**has taught – has been teaching – taught**) in this school for five years.
7. The driver of that car (**has blown – has been blowing – is blowing**) his horn for the last ten minutes.
8. I (**have tried – have been trying – tried**) to open the door since I came.
9. No one (**has come – has been coming – came**) to see us since we bought that house.
10. The police has been looking for him (**since – for – from**) 4 days.
11. He (**hasn't eaten – hasn't been eating – is not eating**) for 24 hours.
12. I (**have used – have been using – used**) this machine for twelve years.

The Past Perfect Tense الماضي التام

(had + P.P)

١- يتكون من

I **had worked** (I'd worked). He had not (**hadn't**) worked.

Had **they worked** ? Hadn't you worked ?

٢- يستعمل للتعبير عن حدث تام في الماضي قبل حدث آخر (ماضي بسيط).

٣- يستعمل بعد **When** عندما نريد أن نؤكد أن الحدث الأول (ماضي تام) وقع واكتمل وقوعه قبل أن يبدأ الحدث الثاني (ماضي بسيط) مثال ذلك :

1- **When he had shut** the window, we opened the door of the cage.

2- We waited for the window to be quite shut before opening the cage.

2- **When he had seen** all the pictures, he said he was ready to leave.

٣- يستعمل بعد **After** وقبل **Before** في الجمل التي تعبر عن الماضي.

He **returned** home **after he had left** the house.

I **had already finished** my work before my friends arrived.

٤- يستعمل في التعبير عن حدثين في الماضي (حدث يسبق الآخر) مع أدوات الربط .

till (until) as soon as.

He didn't agree to go **until he had seen** all the papers.

As soon as his guests **had eaten their meal**, they left his house.
 ملاحظة: قبل **till / until** يستعمل غالباً ماضي منفي و بعدها ماضي تام .
 عندما نريد أن نؤكد أن الحدث الأول (ماضي تام) وقع و اكتمل وقوعه قبل أن
 يبدأ الحدث الثاني (ماضي بسيط) و مثال ذلك :

He **didn't write** his report **till (until)** he **had read** the book.
 She **didn't cook** the food **till (until)** she **had cleaned**
 the kitchen.

Ex. 11. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tenses, Simple Past or Past Perfect.

1. Class (**begin already**) by the time I (**get**) there, so I (**take, quietly**) a seat to the back.
2. She (**burst**) into tears the moment he (**shut**) the door.
3. His fingers (**begin**) to bleed as soon as he (**cut**) himself.
4. He (**lose**) his new knife shortly after he (**buy**) it.
5. I (**see, never**) any of Picasso's paintings before I (**visit**) the art museum.
6. He (**begin**) to read as soon as he (**find**) a place.
7. It already (**rain**) for half an hour when he (**step**) out into the street.
8. The patient (**die**) already by the time the doctor (**arrive**).
9. When Emad (**enter**) the room, the thief already (**escape**).
10. When we (**get**) home, night already (**fall**).
11. Until he (**explain**) the lesson, students (**not understand**).
12. Until the aeroplane (**take off**), we (**can**) not hear ourselves.
13. Until the gardener (**water**) the plants, they (**not grow**).
14. His neighbors (**will**) not speak to him until he (**apologize**).
15. They (**be**) not able to make the pudding until the maid (**bring**) the eggs.

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

الماضي التام المستمر

(**had been + Verb + ing**)

١- يتكون من

I **had been working**. They **had not (hadn't) been working**.
 Had they been working ?

٢- لا يستعمل مع الأفعال التي لا تستعمل مع المضارع المستمر ما عدا **want - wish**

The boy was delighted with his new bicycle, **he had been wanting** one for a long time.

٣- هذا الزمن لا يأتي في صيغة المبني للمجهول و يستعمل بدلاً من أقرب زمن إليه و هو الماضي التام .

They **had been picking** apples.

Active

Apples **had been picked**.

Passive

٤- عندما يبدأ الحدث قبل وقت الكلام و يستمر حتى ذلك الوقت أو توقف قبله يمكن استعمال الماضي التام أو الماضي التام المستمر.

It was now six and he was tired because he **had worked** since dawn.

It was now six and he was tired because he **had been working** since dawn.

٥- حدث متكرر في الماضي التام يمكن التعبير عنه بالماضي التام المستمر .

He **had tried** five times to get here on the phone.

He **had been trying** to get here on the phone.

Ex. (12) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

Use Simple Past and Past Perfect, Simple and Continuous:

1. He **(give)** me back the book, and **(thank)** me for lending it to him and **(say)** that he **(enjoy)** it very much, but I **(know)** that he **(not read)** it because the pages **(be)** still uncut.
2. I **(put)** that five pound note into one of my books, but next day it **(take)** me long to find it because I **(forget)** which book I **(put)** into.
3. A woman **(come)** in with a baby, who she **(say)** just **(swallow)** a safety pin.
4. He **(keep)** looking at her, wondering where he **(see)** her before.
5. I **(think)** my train **(leave)** at 4.30 and **(be)** very disappointed when I **(arrive)** at 4.30 and **(learn)** that it just **(leave)**. I **(find)** later that I **(use)** an out-of-date time table.
6. I **(look)** out before I **(go)** to bed and **(see)** a man standing on the opposite pavement watching the house.

7. When I **(get)** up the following morning he **(be)** still there and I **(wonder)** whether he **(stay)** there all night or if he **(go)** away and **(come)** back.
8. He **(park)** his car under a No Parking sign and **(rush)** into the shop. When he **(come)** out of the shop ten minutes later, the car no longer **(be)** there. He **(wonder)** if someone **(steal)** it or if the police **(drive)** it away.
9. It **(be)** 6 p.m., and Nagi **(be)** tired because he **(work)** hard all day yesterday.
- 10- When I **(open)** the door I **(see)** a man on his knees. He clearly **(listen)** to our conversation and I **(wonder)** how much he **(hear)**. When I **(ask)** him what he **(do)**, he **(say)** that he **(drop)** a 50 piece outside the door and **(look)** for it.

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence:

- 1) **I've never heard such a sad story.**
ever It's the saddest story I have ever heard.
- 2) **He started painting fifteen years ago.**
been He has been painting for fifteen years.
- 3) **She hasn't finished decorating the flat.**
still She is still decorating the flat.
- 4) **I've never eaten Chinese food before.**
first It's the first time I have ever eaten Chinese food.
- 5) **When did they graduate from college?**
since How long is it since they graduated from college?
ago How long ago did they graduate from college?
- 6) **He didn't begin talking until everyone had sat down.**
before He waited until everyone had sat down before he began talking.
- 7) **We haven't been to the theatre for a year.**
time The last time we went to the theatre was a year ago.

- last** We last went to the theatre a year ago.
- 8) **It's two years since I went on holiday.**
have I have not been on holiday for two years.
- 9) **It was the first time they had travelled by boat.**
never They had never travelled by boat before.
- 10) **Jack was about to have dinner when his boss called.**
point Jack was on the point of having dinner when his boss called.

Ex 13 - Complete each sentence with two to five words, including the word in bold:

She began to play tennis when she was 10.

since She she was 10.

1- I bought this coat three years ago.

for I three years.

2- I haven't finished writing the report yet.

still I the report.

3- We've never seen such a funny film.

ever It's the seen.

4- He's never played football before.

time It's the first football.

5- John hasn't played golf for years.

time The golf was years ago.

6- When did Mary move to Liverpool?

since How long is it to Liverpool?

7- It was the first time I had met a film star.

never I a film star before.

8- We didn't start tidying up until after the guests had left.

before We waited until the guests tidying up.

9- Kate was about to leave the house when the postman came.

point Kate was ... the house when the postman came.

10- It's four weeks since I spoke to Paul.

- have I for four weeks.
- 11- When did they announce their engagement?
ago How long their engagement?
- 12- We haven't played squash for six months.
last We six months ago.
- 13- Kim was on the point of closing the shop when a customer walked in.
about Kim the shop when a customer walked in.
- 14- He is the kindest man I've ever met.
never I have man before.
- 15- They are still discussing the problem.
finished They the problem yet.
- 16- Mike started studying medicine four years ago.
been Mike four years.
- 17- The waiter didn't take our order until everyone had decided what they wanted.
before The waiter waited until everyone had decided what they wanted our order.

The Unreal Past الماضي الغير حقيقي

- ١ - يستعمل الماضي البسيط للافتراض أو الرغبة التي تحدث الآن .
٢ - يستعمل الماضي التام للافتراض أو الرغبة التي حدثت في الماضي .

Examples:

1. I wish you **weren't present** at these meetings.
2. I wish you **hadn't been present** at yesterday's meetings.
3. Suppose you **could solve** this problem now.
4. Suppose he **got** there late.
5. He appeared as if he **had been** in prison.
6. I wish I **were sitting** quietly at home.
7. I wish I **could go** home now.
8. If only I **were** rich.
9. I'd rather you **didn't do** that.
10. It's high time you **washed** your hands.

Ex. (14) A Correct the verbs between brackets.

1. It's just struck midnight. It's time we **(leave)**.
2. He walks as if he **(have)** a wooden leg.
3. I wish I **(know)** what is wrong with my car.
4. It's time we **(do)** something to stop road accidents.
5. Suppose I **(solve)** the problem now.
6. I'd rather you **(not mention)** it to them just yet.
7. We all wished we **(not stay)** to see the end of the film.
8. She says she'd rather he **(leave)** tomorrow instead of today.
9. He looked as if he **(not wash)** for years.
10. Suppose I **(do)** what you ask "What would become of me"?
11. Suppose I **(do)** What you asked "What would have become of me" ?
12. If only we **(do)** as we were told ! This would never have happened.

Ex. 14(B) Choose the correct answer:

1. I wish I **(know – knew – will know)** his name.
2. It's time we all **(go – went – would go)** home.
3. It's about time you **(get – got - will get)** the tea ready.
4. Suppose I **(solve-solved – will solve)** the problem now.
5. I wish you **(will pay – paid – would pay)** me now.
6. Suppose he **(asked – would ask – will ask)** me for the money tomorrow.
7. You looked as if you **(did – had done – would do)** with a drink.
8. I wish I **(did not break – had not broken – will not break)** it just now.
9. I'd rather you **(gave–will give-had given)** me a new one.
10. Don't you wish you **(come – came – will come)** earlier ?

تتابع الأحداث Sequence Of Tenses

١ - إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي في الجملة مضارع أو مستقبل يوضع الفعل الذي يليه في أي زمن يناسب المعنى مثال ذلك :

1. I **know** that he **arrived** yesterday.
- or, I **know** that he **will arrive** tomorrow.

2. He **will tell** you what he **does** everyday.

• or, He **will tell** you what he **did** yesterday.

• Or, He **will tell** you what he **will do** tomorrow.

٢- إذا كانت الجملة الفرعية تعبر عن الزمن أو الشرط يستعمل زمن المضارع بدلاً من المستقبل مثال ذلك:

1. I **shall receive** him when he **arrives** next week.

2. He **will visit** me if he **comes** next week.

٣- إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي في الجملة ماضي لابد أن يأتي بعده ماضي مثال ذلك :

1. I **asked** him why he **neglected** his work.

2. I **saw** him yesterday while he **was crossing** the road.

3. He **told** me that he **was** very ill yesterday.

٤- إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي للجملة ماضي يوضع الفعل الذي يليه في المضارع البسيط إذا كان يعبر عن حقيقة مثال ذلك :

1. I **was taught** that the earth **is round**.

2. He **told me** that his father **is dead**.

٥- إذا كان الفعل في الجملة يحتوي على مقارنة يمكن استعمال أي زمن يناسب المعنى مثال ذلك :

1. Life was **harder** in olden times than it is now.

2. My friend **worked** as hard last year as I have worked this year.

3. Travelling in the past **was not** so easy as it **is** today.

Or as it **will be** in the future.

٦- إذا كان الفعل في الماضي يمكن استعمال أي زمن في الجملة الوصفية.

1. The boy who **is sitting** in the front lines, **was absent** yesterday. جملة وصفية.

2. The house which my father has just bought, was built 20 years ago.

٧- إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي في الزمن الماضي يوضع في الجملة الظرفية في أي زمن مناسب مثال ذلك :

3a Salah Edin **won** so many battles that he **is remembered** today.

3b Salah Edin **won** so many battles that he **will always be remembered**.

4- His hand **was** so badly injured that he **will never be able** to use it again.

General Exercise On Tenses

Ex. (15 A) Correct the verbs between brackets.

1. I never **(see)** so beautiful a garden.
2. The people **(put)** out the fire before the fireman **(arrive)**.
3. My friend just **(telephone)** me to say that he **(not come)** tonight.
4. The pupils **(learn)** English grammar now.
5. I already **(remember)** the old story.
6. Mary **(write)** an exercise now.
7. He **(live)** in England since 1960.
8. I **(see)** you yesterday, you **(sit)** in a café.
9. He **(take)** the money after I **(ask)** him not to do so.
10. He usually **(write)** in green ink.
11. The train **(leave)**, before I **(arrive)**.
12. I **(not see)** my friend since his absence.
13. Two months ago I **(meet)** a very interesting gentleman while I **(travel)** to Aswan.
14. I am sorry I **(not know)** that you **(leave)** your book when you **(call)** on me last Friday.
15. I **(not hear)** yet whether he **(pass)** the examination which **(be)** held a month ago.
16. My brother **(not feel)** well lately, so yesterday he **(go)** to the doctor who **(advise)** him to take a few days' rest.
17. Since I **(come)** back from my holiday, I **(work)** hard as I **(want)** to make up for أَعوض the time I **(lose)**.
18. While I **(write)** a letter, my brother **(telephone)** me.
19. He **(promise)** a week ago that he **(return)** the books he **(borrow)** last month, but he **(not do)** so yet.
20. When they **(finish)** talking, they shook hands and were out separately.
21. It's high time they **(mend)** this road.
22. It **(rain)** for two days now, there'll be a flood soon.
23. I **(wait)** here till he comes back.
24. I **(lend)** you my bicycle whenever you want it.

... **(never see)** him in my life, so of course I could not recognize him.

Ex. (15 B) Choose the correct answer:

- 1-The Suez Canal **(joins – is joining – will join – joined)** the East to the West.
- 2-I wish I **(know – will know – knew – have known)** English well.
- 3-My father **(lived – has been living – was living – had lived)** in Aswan since 1960.
- 4-I have not seen my uncle **(for – ago – since – from)** the last two weeks.
- 5-Don't get off the bus till it **(stopped – will stop – stops – was stopping).**
- 6-I haven't seen the cinema **(from – since – for – ago)** over a month.
- 7-I **(didn't speak – not spoke – never spoken – have never spoken)** to a foreigner since I started learning English.
- 8-After they **(left – leaving – had left)**, I **(go – went – had gone)** home.
- 9-The light **(goes out – was going – went out)** while we **(watched – watching – were watching)** television.
- 10-While he **(repaired – had repaired – was repairing – has been repairing)** his roof, he had a bad fall.
- 11- He has been here **(for – since - ago – from)** last month.
- 12-Her phone **(has been ringing – is ringing – rings – was ringing)** for ten minutes. I wonder why she doesn't answer it.
- 13-After I **(have had – had had – had – have)** some biscuits, I had a drink.
- 14-This telegram has just arrived and the boy **(waits – shall wait – waiting – is waiting)** in case you want to send a reply.
- 15-If only I **(be – were – am – will be)** insured.
- 16- I wish I **(am – be – will be - were)** younger.

- 17-By the end of this month 5000 people,I (**will see – have seen – will be seeing – will have seen**) the exhibition.
- 18-By this time next year I (**shall save – shall be saving – have saved – shall have saved**) two hundred pounds.
- 19-By the end of the week, his illness (**will cost – will have cost – cost – will be costing**) him five hundred pounds.
- 20-I'll wait until he (**write – writes – wrote – will write**) his next novel.
- 21-I've just remembered that I left the bathroom tapes on, and expect the water (**will be flowing – was flowing – is flowing – flowing**) down the stairs.
- 22-I wish I (**was – am – were – had been**) at he party yesterday.
- 23-He hasn't been here (**three weeks – for three weeks – since three weeks – three weeks**) now.
- 24-I guessed that he wouldn't return until he (**spent – has spent – would have spent – had spent**) all his money.
- 25-I didn't know that he (**had finished – has finished – finishes – finished**) already.
- 26-Since 1975 he (**was working – has worked – has been working**) at Tanta and he is still there.
- 27-I wonder what we (**do – were doing – will be doing – will do**) this time next year.
- 28-.He hasn't finished his homework (**already–still–yet–ever**).
- 29-.Have you (**almost – ever – never – already**) climbed a mountain?
- 30-.We've (**almost – already – ever – yet**) visited the mountain.
- 31-.Yasser has (**just–ever– almost – still**) broken the chair.
- 32-.I was playing tennis (**when – while – during – still**) suddenly the sky went grey.
- 33-.(**During – When – While – Before**) I was doing my homework, the light went out.

- 34-.He didn't join the football team because he was **(already – still – ever – almost)** young.
- 35-.The weather **(was – is being - has been – had been)** nice lately.
- 36-.My telephone is working now. They repaired it a week **(ago – before – still – yet)**.
- 37-My family went back to live in Alexandria. They had lived there ten years **(ago – before – since – for)**.
- 38-I **(think – will think – have been thinking – thinking)** about buying a new car recently.
- 39-A: **Farid doesn't study enough.**
B: I know I'm afraid he **(won't pass – won't be passing – won't have passed)** the exam.
- 40-A: **I want to visit Marwa.**
B: Well, don't visit her before five o'clock. She **(is working will be working – will work – will have worked)**.
- 41-The play had started **(while – until – just – by the time)** we got to the theatre.
- 42-**(How long ago – How far – How long – How much)** did you move to Tanta?
- 43-She **(ever – still – never – always)** eats beans because they make her ill.
- 44-I'm tired. I have been working very hard **(so far – just – lately – before),**
- 45-A: **(When – How long – Since – While)** have you been playing flute?
B: **Since 1992**
- 46-A: **Where is Bill?**
B: He's **(been going – been – be going – gone)** to the basketball game.
- 47-A: **Why is Mary tired?**
B: Well, she **(is studying – has been studying – has studied – studied)** in the library for hours.
- 48-A: **Does Mr. Fawzy mow the lawn every Saturday?**
B: Yes, he **(always – never – ever – still)** does.
- 49-I've only **(been going – been – gone – going)** to the opera once.

Ex. (15) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets.

1. Nagi started his business a short time ago. (just)
2. They have decided to buy a new car. (going)
3. He can drive a car. (soon)
4. We are sitting down to eat. At that moment someone knocked at the door. (when)
5. I saw this film not long before. (already)
6. Engy is still asleep. (yet)
7. It's ages since Hanan visited her parents. (for)
8. We planned to meet at 10 o'clock tonight. (we're)
9. He learned to drive when he was eighteen. (since)
10. He washed his feet carefully. Then he put his shoes on. (before)
11. I last went there five years ago. (I haven't)
12. I came here to wait for my friend an hour ago. (for)
13. By tomorrow morning, they'll be in New York. (arrived)
14. The volcano hasn't erupted for 50 years. (It's)
15. They started watching television three hours ago. (for)
16. I'm going to buy a new bicycle. (decided)
17. I'm sorry Mr. Johnson went out a moment ago. (just)
18. I was dreaming when the alarm-clock rang. (while)
19. Nader didn't travel by train long ago. (for)
20. We intend to do gardening tomorrow. (going)
21. He can swim like a fish. (soon)
22. I started running my own business four years ago. (since)
23. I haven't seen her since we left school. (I last)
24. It's ages since we went out together. (for)
25. He has a tendency to use formal English. (tends)
26. Yasser began painting this picture two hours ago. (for)
27. For the first time he knew the meaning of happiness. (before)
28. He completed the letter. Then he had a cup of coffee. (until)
29. They didn't discover a cure for cancer. (yet)

30. I last went there eight years ago. (for)
31. First they ate chicken. Then they fell ill. (As soon as)
32. She wrote the letter. Then she went to the post office. (after)
33. They corrected the mistakes a few seconds ago. (just)
34. I haven't enjoyed myself so much for years. (It's years)
35. It's two days since I started reading this book. (for)
36. I last went to the cinema six months ago (been)
37. When did he start working for this company? (How long)
38. We have never experienced such a cold weather in Egypt before. (ever)
39. She locked the front door, then she went to bed. (after)
40. We've arranged to leave by train tomorrow morning. (are)
41. I've never ridden a camel yet. (first)
42. How long is it since you tidied your room? (How long ago)
43. They haven't won a competition for years. (since)
44. I was born in this city and still live here. (been)
45. I have never read a better book by that author. (best)
46. He can't stand the traffic, now he avoids going to the city centre. (never)
47. Robert is still decorating his flat. (finished)
48. I've never met such an interesting person. (ever)
49. Reda doesn't mind travelling by bus. (used)
50. They finished cleaning the kitchen then they got home. (By the time)
51. She first finished cooking then she sat to watch television. (until)
52. When I saw the accident, I was working in the garden (while)
53. When he was younger, he went to the cinema every week. (used)

NEGATION النفي

(١) عند نفي to be - to have أو الأفعال الناقصة نضع بعدهم **not**

am - is - are - was - were

have - has - had

will - shall - would - should

can - could - may - might - must

→ + not

affirmative إثبات

1. He is clever.

2. Ali may come.

3. She can play music.

negative نفي

He **is not** clever.

Ali **may not** come.

She **cannot** play music.

affirmative

used to

اعتاد أن

need to

يحتاج إلى

ought to

يجب

dare to

يجرؤ

negative

used not to / didn't use to

need not to

ought not to

dare not to

1. They **used to** ride animals.

They **used not to** ride animals.

They **didn't use** to ride animals.

2. They **dare to** speak openly

They **dare not to** speak openly

(٢) نفي المضارع والماضي والمستقبل (شرح في الأزمنة)

1. She **sleeps** early.

She **does not sleep** early.

2. They **play** football.

They **do not play** football

3. They **walked** a long road

They **did not walk** a long road.

4. They **will come** early

They **will not come** early

(٣) عند نفي some تستعمل no أو any - not

1. He **gave me** some books

He **gave me no** books

or, He **did not give me any** books.

affirmative إثبات

negative نفي

| affirmative | | negative |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Something | → | nothing |
| Every one | some one any one | no body |
| Each one | sombody everybody | no one |
| somewhere | → | nowhere |
| 1. Everybody/Everyone/Eachone | | Nobody/No one/Not any |
| is asleep. | | body/Not anyone is asleep. |
| 2. There is somebody/somone | | There is nobody/no one |
| at home. | | at home. |
| 3. There is something here. | | There isn't any thing/is |
| Did you go somewhere | | nothing here |
| / anywhere yesterday? | | I went nowhere yesterday. |

(٥) عند نفى all تستعمل not all أو none of التي تعتبر مفرد أو جمع .

| affirmative | negative |
|-------------------------|---|
| All pupils are present. | Not all pupils are present. |
| | or None of the pupils is / are present. |

يلاحظ عند استعمال (none of) يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع

(٦) عند نفى and تستعمل or إذا كانت تعطف أفعالا .

1. We went to the cinema **and enjoyed** the film. affirm

We **did not go** to the cinema **or enjoy** the film. neg

تتغير and إلى or إذا كانت تعطف أفعالا وعندما تستعمل or بدلا من and يستعمل مصدر الفعل الثاني كما في المثال السابق.

(٧) عند نفى both-and تستعمل neither - nor

Both Ali and Ahmed are late. affirm.

Neither Ali nor Ahmed is/ late. neg

يلاحظ في الجملة السابقة أن الفعل مع neither - or يوضع في المفرد

(٨) either - or عند النفي تستعمل neither - nor

1. **Either he or his sister must** go. affirm

Neither he nor his sister must go. neg

(٩) كلمة never تنفي الكلمات الآتية :

always - often - sometimes - usually - generally

1. She **always** helps in the kitchen. affirm

She **never** helps in the kitchen. neg

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| 2. We often visit the museum. | affirm |
| We never visit the museum | neg |
| 3. We sometimes play football | affirm |
| We never play football | neg |

not - either عند النفي تستعمل **too** أو **also** (١٠)

They will go to the theatre **too**.

They will **not** go to the theatre **either**.

ينفي الفعل بالطريقة العادية وتُستبدل كلمة **too** أو **also** بكلمة **either**

and so عند النفي تتحول إلى **and neither** مثال ذلك (١١)

She went to Aswan **and so** did her friend. **affirm**

She did not go to Aswan **and neither** did her friend. **neg**

as - as عند النفي تتحول إلى **not as - as** أو **not so - as** (١٢)

1. He is **as** clever **as** his friend. **affirm**

He is **not as** clever **as** his friend **neg**

or He is **not so** clever **as** his friend **neg**

(١٣) عند نفي الأمر نستعمل (المصدر + **Don't**) مثال ذلك :

Leave your book. **affirm**

Don't leave your book. **neg**

(١٤) عند نفي جملة المضارع التام التي تحتوى على

Just, recently, already, presently

تستعمل **not yet** بعد حذف الكلمات السابقة

1. I have **already** seen this film. I have **not** seen this film **yet**.

2. He **has just** arrived. He **has not** arrived **yet**.

15. We can make a statement negative by using a broad negative.

Broad negatives are adverbs like "**rarely**" and "**seldom**" which are used to make a statement almost totally negative.

1. The estimated sales **will hardly** cover the cost of making the film.

2. We **were scarcely** able to move.

16. When you use a broad negative with a verb group which contains an auxiliary verb, you put it after the first word in the verb group and in front of the main verb.

1. I could scarcely believe my eyes.

2. Mr. Al-Fayed **is rarely photographed** with his family.

3. His eyes **had hardly closed**.

17. If you want to say that a past situation does not exist in the present you can use "no longer" or a negative with "any longer" or "any more".

Examples:

1. She was **no longer** content with a handful of coins.

2. They didn't know **any longer** what was funny and what was entertaining.

3. They **don't live** together **any more**.

Ex. (16 A) Change into negative :

1. She went to the market and bought some vegetables.

2. I want some sugar and tea. 3. He was both rich and clever.

4. Play and waste your time. 5. Somebody told him the answer.

6. He always pays attention and learns his lessons.

7. I asked him to lend me some money.

8. Both Azmi and Ahmed are late. 9. Sami felt ill and so did I.

10. He does his best to succeed. 11. All men are honest

12. Everyone has good health.

13. I can swim across the river and so can my brother.

14. He likes to play football and so does his brother.

15. Have you ever seen the Pyramids ?

16. Father bought a car. 17. He spends his time foolishly.

18. Bring me your book. 19. He put the book on the desk.

20. He laid his book on the table.

Ex. (16B) Choose the correct answer :

1. I can't find the book.....

a) nowhere

b) everywhere

c) anywhere

d) somewhere

2. She hardly ever eats.....potatoes.

a) neither bread or

b) bread or

c) either bread

d) neither bread nor.

3. Janet doesn't like oranges and.....Mary.

a) neither does b) so doesn't c) so does d) so either

4. Nagi likes walking in the country and
a) so does Mary b) so Mary does
c) Mary either d) Mary likes also
5. He doesn't.....English.
a) neither speak nor write b) speak or write
c) either speak or write c) speak or write.
6. to finish quickly.
a) No every student wants. b) Nor every student wants
c) Not every student wants. d) Neither every student wants
7. of the girls came on the trip.
a) Not all b) None c) No body d) No one of
8. This problem does not concern him, nor..... it you.
a) is concern b) does.....concern
c) do concern. d) is concerning
9. She didn't go to school.....any lessons.
a) didn't attend b) nor attend
c) or attend d) neither attend
10. He..... attention.....learn his lessons.
a) never pays b) neither pays.....nor
c) does not pay.....or d) doesn't pay nor.
11. Don't let distrub me.
a) anyone b) someone c) everyone. d) some body
12. Nagi didn't feel tired and
a) so did I b) neither did I c) also did I d) me too
13. He doesn't want a new suit.....
a) also b) too c) either d) neither
14. I asked him to give me.....ink.
a) some b) any c) not any d) also
15. Both Ali and Ahmed.....at the cinema yesterday.
a) was b) were c) have been d) are being
16. Neither Samira nor Nadiawell.
a) answers b) answer
c) are answering d) have answered
17. None of the players.....absent today.
a) are b) is being c) was d) have been

كيفية تكوين السؤال How to make a question

١ - يوضع المضارع أو الماضي للأفعال **to be - to have** أو الأفعال الناقصة قبل الفعل لتحويل الجملة إلى صيغة السؤال.

جملة خبرية Statement

1. Animals are useful to man.
2. Samy has a motor car.
3. He was clever.
4. He can speak English.
5. He must work hard.
6. He ought to be careful.
7. He used to stay here.

سؤال Question

- Are** animals useful to man ?
- Has** Samy a motor car ?
- Was** he clever ?
- Can** he speak English ?
- Must** he work hard ?
- Ought** he to be careful ?
- Did** he use to stay here ?

(٢) إذا كان الفعل في الجملة في زمن المضارع المستمر أو الماضي المستمر أو المضارع التام أو المستقبل البسيط عند تحويل الجملة إلى سؤال يوضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفعل.

جملة خبرية Statement

1. He is writing a letter.
2. He has written a letter.
3. He will come tomorrow.
4. He had completed the project.

سؤال Question

- Is** he writing a letter ?
- Has** he written a letter ?
- Will** he come tomorrow ?
- Had** he completed the project ?

(٣) في المضارع البسيط نستعمل **do** أو **does** قبل الفاعل مع الفعل في المصدر أما في الماضي البسيط نستعمل **did** قبل الفاعل مع الفعل في المصدر.

جملة خبرية Statement

1. Ali writes a letter.
2. Ali wrote a letter.
3. They play football.

سؤال Question

- Does** Ali write a letter ?
- Did** Ali write a letter ?
- Do** they play football ?

(٤) تحول **some** إلى **any** في صيغة الاستفهام.

Statement

1. Ali bought **some** books.
2. You have **some** money.

Question

- Did Ali buy **any** books ?
- Have you **any** money ?

أشوات الاستفهام Interrogative Words

(١) السؤال عن الفاعل العاقل نستعمل (من **who**) مثل ذلك :

1. **Who** discovered America ? **Columbus** discovered America.

2. **Who** led Egypt to victory ? **President El Sadat** led Egypt to victory

(٢) للسؤال عن المفعول به العاقل نستعمل (whom من) مثال ذلك :

1. **Whom** did you meet yesterday? I met **my friend** yesterday.

2. **Whom** will you see tomorrow ? I shall see **my teacher** tomorrow

(٣) للسؤال عن الملكية نستعمل (Whose من) مثال ذلك :

1. **Whose** car is this ? It is **my** car.

2. **Whose** house is this ? It's **my uncle's** house.

(٤) للسؤال عن الأشياء نستعمل (What ماذا) مثال ذلك :

1. **What** is the time now ? It is **half past ten**.

2. **What** is your age ? I am **30 years old**.

3. **What** is the height of the room? It is **three metres high**.

4. **What** is your name ? My name is **Samir**.

5. **What** is your father ? He is **a teacher**.

6. **What** else has he read ? He's read **another book**.

7. **What** else will the sofa serve? It will serve as **a bed**.

8. **What** else does he study? He also studies **German**.

(٥) نستعمل (Which أي) للأشخاص والأشياء مثال ذلك :

1. **Which** present do you like ?

2. **Which** boy came late ?

3. **Which** do you prefer, English or French ?

ملحوظة : حرف الجر يمكن وضعه قبل أداة الاستفهام أو بعد الفعل مثال ذلك :

1. **About whom** were you speaking ?

2. Whom were you speaking **about** ?

3. **Of what** did you complain ?

4. What did you complain **of** ?

(٦) نستعمل (Where أين) للسؤال عن المكان مثال ذلك :

1. **Where** did you spend last summer ? I spent it at **Ras El Bar**.

2. **Where** do you live ? I live **in Aswan**.

3. **From where** have you come ? I have come **from Tanta**.

(٧) نستعمل (When متى) للسؤال عن الوقت (الزمن) مثال ذلك :

1. **When** will you travel abroad ?

I will travel abroad **next spring**.

2. When do you usually get up ? I usually get up at **seven**.

(٨) نستعمل (لماذا Why) للسؤال عن السبب مثال ذلك :

1. **Why** were you late today ?
I was late **because I was rather tired.**
2. **Why** did you stay at home ?
I stayed at home **because I was ill.**
3. **Why** do you go to school?
I go to school **to learn.**

(٩) نستعمل (كيف How) للسؤال عن الطريقة أو الحالة مثال ذلك :

1. **How** do you come to school ? I come to school **by bus.**
2. **How** do you feel today ? I feel **better.**

يمكن استعمال (How) مع بعض الصفات مثال ذلك :

1. **How many** (كم عدد) books do you have ? للسؤال عن العدد
I have **twenty books.**
2. **How much** (كم للثمن) did you pay for this book ?
I paid **one pound** for it. للسؤال عن القيمة
1. **How often** do you go to the cinema ? للسؤال عن عدد المرات
Once a week.
2. **How old** are you ? I am **eighteen years old.**
4. **How far** (كم للمسافة) is it from Cairo to Alexandria?
It is **200 kilometers from Cairo.**
5. **How long** (طول المدة) have you been studying?
Three weeks.
6. **How high** (كم للارتفاع) is the Pyramid ?
It is **two hundred meters high.**
7. **How tall** (لطول الأشخاص) is Ali ? He is **five feet tall.**
8. **How deep** (كم للعمق) is the sea ? It is **forty feet deep.**
9. **How heavy** (كم للوزن) is this fruit ? It is **five pounds.**
10. **How wide** (كم للعرض) is this street ?
It is **twenty metres wide.**
11. **How big** (كم حجم أو مساحة) is the room ? It is **rather small.**

Exercise (17A) : Form the questions to which the words black typed are the answer. The correct interrogative words are given :

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Last week I met my cousin. | (When) |
| 2. We remained three hours in the cinema. | (How long) |
| 3. The street is 40 metres wide. | (How wide) |
| 4. She died on this very spot . | (Where) |
| 5. He goes to the cinema twice a week . | (How often) |
| 6. He is looking for his dictionary . | (What) |
| 7. Magdy is five feet tall. | (How tall) |
| 8. The girl with the red Jacket answered well. | (which) |
| 9. The Sea is 80 feet deep. | (How deep) |
| 10. Your wife telephoned you. | (Who) |
| 11. I have four suits . | (How many) |
| 12. It cost three pounds . | (How much) |
| 13. It was my fault | (Whose). |
| 14. The tower is sixty metres high. | (How high) |
| 15. He could not come because he was ill . | (why) |
| 16. It is 80 kilometres to Fayoum. | (How far) |

Ex.(17B) Make questions for which the following would be reasonable answers. Ask about the words in black type.

- They went to **New York**.
- It takes **four hours** to get there.
- He earns **twenty five pounds** a week.
- He comes to Cairo **once** a month.
- My room is **five metres by four**.
- They left the country **ten years ago**.
- I've been here **for two months**.
- They went to **the museum** yesterday.
- The clerk made him **fill up a form**.
- I bought **another** suit.
- We got in **by climbing over the wall**.
- I smoke **forty** cigarettes a day.
- I've had this cough **since the beginning of October**.
- I'd like to speak to **Mr. Kamal** please.
- This is **Tom's**.

16. I've been waiting **for half an hour**.
17. I threw it away **because I was tired of it**.
18. I bought **the big** one.
19. He's coming **at the end of the week**.
20. It (the concert) began **at eight p.m.**

Ex. (17C) Choose the correct answer :

1. How have you been to America ?
 a) much time b) many times
 c) far away. d) long ago.
2. Where yesterday ?
 a) were you b) are you
 c) have you been d) you were
3. How here ?
 a) long you stay b) long will you stay
 c) often will you stay. d) far will you stay.
4. How is it from here to Alexandria ?
 a) long way b) long c) far d) much
5. Why ? It's not as bad as all that.
 a) you complain b) do complain
 c) you complained d) are you complaining.
6. open the door for you ?
 a) Would you like b) Do you want that I
 c) Shall I. d) Would you like me.
7. Do you know when ?
 a) does the game start b) will the game start
 c) the game starts d) would start
8. Did she tell you what ?
 a) does the man find b) did the man find
 c) had the man found d) the man had found
9. any body else want to buy one of these ?
 a) Does b) Do c) Was d) Is.
10. there much evidence to show what happened ?
 a) Are b) Is c) Has d) Have

11. Do you know thefrom here to the nearest hospital ?
 a) how far b) distant c) distance. d) how long
12. How is this fruit ?
 a) long b) heavy c) much. d) far
13. How..... do you go to the library ?
 a) often b) many c) long d) much
14. looks after the baby ?
 a) What b) Who c) When d) Whom
15. How..... is the lake ?
 a) heavy b) far c) deep d) long
16. do you usually get up ?
 a) Where b) What c) When d) Which
17. do you prefer orange or apples ?
 a) Which b) What c) Who d) When
18. the boys listening to music now ?
 a) Are b) Have c) Do d) Does.
19. did you meet a few minutes ago.
 a) Which b) What c) Whom d) Whose
20. is Janet ?
 a) How long b) How high c) How far d) How tall.
21. From..... house did the thief steal the money ?
 a) who b) whose c) whom d) which
22. is your father ?
 a) What b) Who c) Which d) Whom
23. is the mountain ?
 a) How long b) How high
 c) How far c) How fall
24. does this suit cost ?
 a) How much b) How many
 c) How far d) How often
25. could he not go ?
 a) When b) Why c) What d) Where

Question Tags

A question tag is a short phrase that is added to the end of a statement to turn it into "Yes / No" . You use question tags when

you want to ask someone to confirm يؤكد or disagree with what you are saying, or when you want to sound more polite. Question tags are rarely used in formal written English.

There are three single rules for question Tags in English

1. Affirmative Statement, Negative Tag :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Negative statement, | Affirmative Tag. |
| Laila is here, isn't she ? | Laila isn't here, is she ? |

2. Helping verbs are repeated in the tag.

الأفعال المساعدة تتكرر عند تكوين السؤال مثال ذلك :

You **will come**, **won't you ?** You **won't come**, **will you ?**

3. Other Verbs have, do, does or did in the tag.

تستخدم بعض الأفعال مثل **do** أو **does** أو **did** لتكوين السؤال مثال ذلك :

1. He **left** yesterday, **didn't he ?**
2. They **listen** well, **don't they ?**
3. He **did not** leave yesterday, **did he ?**

Special forms of questions:

1. "I am" usually has the tag, **aren't I ?**
2. **Need and dare** do not occur in the affirmative with question tags. When they do, they behave as full verbs
 - a) We need to ask first, **don't we ?**
 - b) We needn't ask first, **need we ?**
3. "**Used to**" normally takes "**did**" in spoken English.
They **used to** play together, **didn't they ?**
4. You'd better go, **hadn't you ?**

had better = 'd + better

لاحظ أن

5. You'd rather stay, **wouldn't you ?**

would = 'd + rather + infinitive

لاحظ أن

You'd stay long, **wouldn't you ?**

6. He'd finished the work, **hadn't he ?**

had = 'd + p.p

لاحظ أن

7. They have a car, **don't they ?**

have فعل رئيسي نستعمل **don't**

8. He had an accident, **didn't he ?**

had فعل رئيسي الماضي لـ **have**

9. They've been busy, **haven't they** ?

10. He's bought a car, **hasn't he** ?

's + p.p. تعني **has + p.p.**

He's busy, isn't he?

11. When you use the imperative الأمر, you can be more polite by adding one of the following question tags :

will you won't you should you

See that she gets safely back, **won't you** ?

Look at that, **would you** ?

12. When you use a negative imperative, نفى الأمر, you can only use "will you" as a question tag.

Don't tell Mary, will you ?

"will you" and **"won't you"** can also be used to emphasize ليؤكد anger الغضب or impatience عدم الصبر **"can't you"** is also used in this way Oh, hurry up, **will you** ?

For goodness sake, be quick, **can't you** ?

13. You use the question tag "shall we" when you make a suggestion اقتراح using "let's".

Let's forget it, **shall we** ?

You use the question tag **"shall I"** after **"I'll"**.

- **I'll tell you, shall I** ?

Let / me / him = allow يسمح

Let him come with us, **will you / won't you?**

14. You use "they" in question tags after "any body" "

Everybody "" everyone "" somebody "" nobody "" no one" or "someone"

1- Everyone will be leaving, **won't they** ?

2- Nobody had bothered to plant new ones, **had they** ?

15. You use "it" in question tags after "anything"

"everything" "nothing" or "something".

1- Nothing matters now, **does it** ?

2- Something should be done, **shouldn't it** ?

16. You use **"there"** in question tags after **"there is"** **"there are"** **"there was"** **"there were"**.

Example : **There's** a new course out now, **isn't there ?**

17. You can use affirmative tag if your statement contain a broad negative such as **"scarcely, hardly, barely, rarely and seldom"** or a negative adverb or a negative pronoun.

Examples:

1- I could **scarcely** believe my eyes, **could I ?**

2- Examiners were **seldom** unkind, **were they ?**

3- You've **never** been to London, **have you ?**

4- **Nobody** had bothered to plant new ones, **had they ?**

5- It happens so **rarely**, **does it ?**

6- The bonds show **barely** any interest, **do they ?**

Ex. 18 A Add question Tags to the following sentences:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Everyone was there, | 16. Somebody had made a mistake, |
| 2. Nobody was watching, | 17. The office was hardly empty, |
| 3. Everybody knew, | 18. You didn't do it |
| 4. Nothing really matters, | 19. Nagi rarely felt hungry, |
| 5. Something really happened, | 20. I'll see you tomorrow, |
| 6. There was nobody there, | 21. Don't do it again, |
| 7. There's no time to spare, | 22. They seldom met, |
| 8. Nobody understands, | 23. She's hardly the right person for the job, |
| 9. Every thing is all right, | 24. You should drive slowly, |
| 10. Everyone has arrived, | 25. They needn't worry, |
| 11. You've met Nagi, | 26. He'd rather stay here, |
| 12. They won't be late, | 27. We'd better go, |
| 13. Janet left a mango for me, | 28. Let's go for a walk, |
| 14. There isn't time for another game. | 29. She used to live here, |
| 15. Something is wrong, | 30. You seldom see that sort of thing these days |

Ex. (18 B) Choose the correct answer :

1. You've met Fady, (**did you - didn't you - haven't you - have you**) ?
2. They won't be late, (**will they - would they - won't they - wouldn't they**) ?

3. Mary left a message, (**did she - didn't she - hadn't she - had she**) ?
4. There isn't time for another game, (**is there - isn't there - was there - wasn't there**) ?
5. Nobody saw what happened, (**did he - didn't he - didn't they - did they**) ?
6. Something's wrong, (**does it - is it. isn't it - doesn't it**) ?
7. Don't do it again, (**will you - don't you - haven't you - did you**) ?
8. Everybody is in agreement, (**isn't he - aren't they - don't they - doesn't he**) ?
9. I'll see you tomorrow, (**will I - won't I - shall I - wouldn't I**) ?
10. It's impossible to park here, (**is it - isn't it - is there - isn't there**) ?
11. They'd better leave early, (**hadn't they - wouldn't they - had they - would they**) ?
12. It rarely rains in summer, (**doesn't it - does it - did it - didn't it**) ?
13. He hadn't enough money, (**had he - didn't he - would he - did he**) ?
14. He's always busy, (**is he - isn't he - has he - hasn't he**) ?
15. She's no longer happy, (**isn't she - is she - hasn't she - did she**) ?
16. The results were scarcely encouraging, (**were they - weren't they - wasn't it - was it**) ?
17. They'd hardly recovered from the shock, (**would they - hadn't they - had they - wouldn't they**) ?
18. Nobody heard the news, (**did he - didn't they - did they - did anybody**) ?
19. Everybody enjoyed the match, (**did he - didn't they - did they - didn't anyone**) ?
20. He hardly read anything, (**does he - did he - didn't he - does he**) ?

Pronouns الضمائر

١ - ضمير المتكلم ويمكن أن يكون فاعل ومفعول به

1. **We**

1. **I** am a teacher فاعل

Listen to **me** مفعول به

2. **We** learn English فاعل

He teaches **us** مفعول به

You

٢ - ضمير المخاطب ويمكن أن يكون فاعل ومفعول به

You are a pupil فاعل

I saw **you** yesterday مفعول به

He, She, It, They

٣ - ضمير الغائب ويمكن أن يكون فاعل ومفعول به

1. **He** works hard فاعل

The teacher helps **him** مفعول به

2. **They** are pupils فاعل

The teacher teaches **them** مفعول به

3. **She** is clever فاعل

Her father helps **her**. مفعول به

It

٤ - ضمير غائب لغير العاقل وهو فاعل ومفعول به

It is الملكية بالنسبة لـ **It** فهي **Its** وهي تختلف عن **It's** التي هي اختصار

4. Look at the **bird**, **it** always comes to this window. فاعل

Do you give **it** anything to eat? Yes I always feed **it** مفعول به

5. The mouse has gone back to **its** hole. الملكية

لستعمالات أخرى لـ **It**

"**It**" is used in expressions of time, distance, weather, temperature.

١ - تستعمل في عبارات الوقت "المسافة والطقس ودرجة الحرارة".

1. **It is** hot / cold / quiet / noisy in this room.

2. **What time is it? It is** six o'clock.

3. **How far is it** to Alexandria. **It is** 200 kilometres.

4. **It is** raining. **It is** fine today. **What day is it?**

It is Monday.

5. **What is the date? It is** the third of March.

6. **It is** better to be early. **It is** easy to understand.

7. **It will be** possible to reach the planets.

٢ - تستعمل في جمل معينة مثل :

It is strange that he hasn't returned yet.

It is hoped that he will pass the exam.

It is time to go لقد حان الوقت **It is** useless to deny.

It seems. **It** appears.

Kinds of Pronouns أنواع الضمائر

1. **Reflexive Pronouns** الضمائر الشخصية العاكسة التي تعود على المتكلم أو المخاطب أو الغائب والتي تنتهي بـ **self** مثال ذلك :

myself – yourself – yourselves – himself – herself – itself – oneself - themselves

Examples :

2. Be careful or **you** will hurt **yourself**.
3. **Salah (He)** helped **himself** to cakes.
4. **Mary (She)** dressed **herself** carefully for the party.
5. **One** must be allowed to please **oneself**.
6. The **kitten (It)** القطّة الصغيرة can now feed **itself** تطعم.
7. We taught **ourselves** to swim.
8. **The boys** hurt **themselves**.

Ex. (19 A) Put reflexive pronouns into the spaces :

1. Father cut when he was shaving.
2. Mary saw in the mirror.
3. We saw in the mirror.
4. The kitten tried to bite me, and bit by mistake.
5. One can easily lose in the woods.
6. I taught to play the piano.
7. We lost when we were walking there.
8. The boys helped to cakes.
9. If you would like some cakes, help.....
10. There are plenty of cakes here Sami, help

II- Emphasizing Pronouns ضمائر التأكيد

Study the following examples

أدرس الأمثلة الآتية

Ali washed **himself** (I know he did).

I saw him **myself**. "you" **yourself** said "he looked clean and **Ali himself** said he had a wash.

himself الأولى من الواضح أنها تعود على (Ali) والضمير **himself** نفس الشيء ولكن الضمائر الأخرى مختلفة ويمكن حذفهم وتؤدي الجملة معنى ولكن هذه الضمائر وضعت لكي تؤكد الحدث لذلك تسمى ضمائر التأكيد.

ضمائر التأكيد أحيانا تعنى (alone) بمفرده وأحيانا نأخذ by معها.

1. I went there all **by myself (alone)**.
2. This is the engine that goes **by itself**.
3. Samy made that model aeroplane all **by himself (alone)**.

Reflexive & Emphasizing Pronouns

| | Singular | Plural |
|---|-----------------------------------|------------|
| 1 st person (I, we) | myself | ourselves |
| 2 nd person (you) | yourself | yourselves |
| 3 rd person (he, she, it, one) | himself-herself itself-oneself | themselves |

Ex. 19 B) Put Emphasizing Pronouns into the blank spaces

1. He did the work all by
2. I saw him do it
3. Mary sewed those women dresses.....
4. One cannot see a tree like that by
5. You, children must tidy that room.....I am not going to help you.
6. The children tidied the room.....(يرتب tidy).
7. Do you think Mary, that you can cook the dinner by
8. We cooked the dinner entirely **تماما** by
9. This machine works by
10. You and Ali can do that job.....

III- Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية

1. That seat **مقعد** is not **yours**. It is **mine**.
2. Lend me your bicycle **دراجة** **hers** is no good.
3. He is wearing a hat **قبعة** It is **his**.
4. That cat is **ours**.

هذه الكلمات لا تضاف الأشياء ولكنها توضع الملكية **Yours, mine, ours, hers, his**

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------|------|--------------------|---------|
| 1. yours | means | تعنى | your seat | مقعدك |
| 2. mine | means | | my seat | مقعدي |
| 3. hers | means | | her bicycle | دراجتها |
| 4. ours | means | | our cat | قطتنا |

ملحوظة : دائما نجد ضمائر الملكية تستعمل مع **of**

1. He is a friend **of mine** (not a friend of me).
2. The dog **of yours** has been fighting again.

3. There is Azmi, and a friend **of his**, is going to play tennis.

جدول يبين صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية

| No | Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية | Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية |
|----|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 | This is my book. | This book is mine. |
| 2 | This is your book. | This book is yours. |
| 3 | This is his book. | This book is his. |
| 4 | This is her book. | This book is hers. |
| 5 | This is our book. | This book is ours. |
| 6 | This is their book. | This book is theirs. |

Study these idioms:

- 1- **Enjoy yourself** = have a good time.
- 2- **Behave yourself** = be good.
- 3- **I like being by myself** = I like being alone.
- 4- **She lives by herself** = she lives on her own / alone.
- 5- **By myself, by yourself, by himself** = on my own, on your own, on his own = alone.
- 6- **Help yourself to coffee** = you're welcome to take some coffee if you want some.
- 7- **Do it yourself** = do it without being helped.
- 8- **Make yourself at home** = feel comfortable.
- 9- **Make yourself heard** = speak loudly enough to be heard by others.
- 10- **Make yourself understood** = make your meaning clear.

Possessive adjectives / pronouns express possessions.

Possessive adjectives go before nouns. whereas possessive pronouns do not go before nouns.

eg: This is **my** diary. **It's** mine.

Sometimes possessive pronouns go at the beginning of a sentence.

Theirs is the blue car.

- 1) We use **the** rather than a possessive adjective with parts of the body after prepositions. **Verbs used in this**

pattern: include, hit, kiss, punch, slap, bite, touch, pat, sting etc.

→ She kissed **the** baby on the cheek.

→ He punched me on **the** nose.

2) **Own** is used with possessive adjectives to emphasise the fact that something belongs to one person and no one else.

→ **She's got her own** chauffeur or she's got a chauffeur of her own.

Fill in the blanks with a possessive adjective or a possessive pronoun. The first sentence is done for you

1- This is (**I**) bag but that one over there is (you).

→ This is **my** bag but that one over there is yours.

2- (**She**) score was better than (**I**).

3- (**They**) holiday starts the week after (**we**).

4- Can we have (**you**) suggestion first and then we'll hear (**he**)?

5- I didn't bother going to (**he**) party and he won't be coming to (**I**).

6- (**We**) flight was delayed but (**they**) took off on time.

7- I wish (**I**) voice was as good as (**she**).

8- Unfortunately (**they**) team played better than (**we**) so we lost the match.

9- If you're a friend of (**he**), then you're a friend of (**I**) too.

10- We'll leave (**she**) house after dinner, so we should be at (**you**) before 10.00.

Ex. (19 c) In the following sentences use the verb (to be) instead of the verb (belong to) **ينتمي** (Make any necessary change) follow the example.

That house **belongs to** me. That house **is** mine.

1. These gloves belong to her.

2. That new house belongs to him.

3. These gloves belong to you.

4. That picture belongs to me.
5. That motor car belongs to us.
6. Those flowers belong to them.
7. Does that toy belong to you ?
8. Does that toy belong to her ?
9. Do these chocolates belong to them ?
10. Did these chocolates belong to them ?

Ex. (19 d) Choose the correct answers :

1. That manner of **(you-yourself-yours)** is not as good as it should be.
2. That book which you are reading is **(mine-me-myself)** not **(him-his-himself)**.
3. **(My-mine-myself)** horse is not so strong as **(yourself-your-yours)** or **(he-him-his)**.
4. The poet prefers **(him-his-himself)** own poem to **(yourself-yours-your)** or **(herself-her-hers)**.
5. He did the exercises all by **(him-his-himself)**.
6. I saw **(myself-me-mine)** in the mirror.
7. I met **(themselves-them-theirs)** by chance.
8. What he calls **(him-himself-his)** property is not **(his-him-himself)**.
9. That face of **(herself-her-hers)** looks more wrinkled than **(my-myself-mine)**.
10. One must be honest with **(himself-him-oneself)**.
11. I wish I had seen that letter of **(you-yourself-yours)** I posted **(my-me-mine)**.
12. You boys, must answer these exercises all by **(yourself-yourselves-yours)**.
13. We tidied that room **(our-ourselves-ours)**.
14. They made that camp all by **(them-their-themselves)**.
15. We taught **(ours-ourselves-our)** to fight.

IV. Indefinite Pronouns الضمائر غير المحددة

Indefinite pronouns refer to **people or things** **تشير إلى** without saying exactly who or what they are. The **indefinite pronouns are:**

| | | | |
|----------|------------|---------|-----------|
| anybody | everybody | nobody | somebody |
| anyone | everyone | no one | someone |
| anything | everything | nothing | something |

Note that "no one" is written as two words or sometimes with a hyphen "no-one".

1. You use indefinite pronouns when you want to refer to people or things without saying exactly who / what they are. The pronouns ending in **"body"** and **"one"** refer to people, and those ending in **"thing"** refer to **"things"**.

1. I was there for over an hour before **anyone** came.
2. It had to be **someone** with a car. Janet said nothing for a moment.
3. When an indefinite pronoun is the subject, it always takes a singular verb, even when **حتى عندما** it refers to more than one person or thing.

1. **Everyone** knows the truth.
2. **Everything** was fine.

When you refer back to indefinite pronouns, you use plural pronouns or possessive and a plural verb.

Ask **anyone**, **they'll** tell you.

Has **anyone** eaten as much as they want ? You can't tell **somebody** why they have failed.

4. You can add apostrophe's ('s) to indefinite pronouns that refer to people.

She was given a room in **someone's** studio.

That was **nobody's** business but mine.

5. You use indefinite pronouns beginning with "some" in affirmative clauses and in questions expecting answer "yes".

- a) I want to introduce you to **someone**.
- b) Would you like **something** to drink ?

c) Can you get **someone** to do it ?

6. You use indefinite pronouns beginning with "any" as the subject or object in statements.

1. **Anyone** knows that you need a licence.
2. You still haven't told me **anything**.
3. I haven't given **anyone** their presents.

In both affirmative and negative questions :

1. Does **anybody** agree with me ?
2. Won't **anyone** help me?

7. If you use an indefinite pronoun beginning with "no" you must not use another negative word in the same clause. You don't say "There wasn't nothing."

1. There was **nothing** you could do.
2. **Nobody** left, **nobody** went away.

8. You use the indefinite adverbs "anywhere" "everywhere" "nowhere" and "somewhere" to talk about places in a general way. "Nowhere" makes a clause negative.

1. I thought I had seen you **somewhere**.
2. **No – one** can find Hisham or Fady **anywhere**.
3. There was **nowhere** to hide.

9. You can use "else" after indefinite pronouns and adverbs to refer to people, things or places other than those that have been mentioned.

1. **Everyone else** is downstairs.
2. I don't like it here. Let's go **somewhere else**.

Ex. 20A : Complete the following sentences by using one of the indefinite pronouns given in brackets.

1. The box was completely empty. There was in it. **nothing – anything**).
2. I heard a noise, but I didn't see **(anyone – no one)**
3. I'm sorry, but there's at home. **(anybody – nobody)**
4. It's too late. We can't do ... to help. **(anything – othing)**
5. No, I don't want , thanks. I'm not hungry. **(nothing – anything)**

6. It was very disappointing. Absolutely ... happened. (**anything – nothing**)
7. I don't meet new. (**anybody – nobody**)
8. He claimed to be an expert, but he knew almost about it. (**anything – nothing**).
9. knew what to do next. (**Anybody – Nobody**)

Ex. 20B : Choose the correct answer:

1. (**Everybody – Anybody – Somebody – Nobody**) arrived in good time and the meeting started promptly at 3,30.
2. (**Everyone – No one – Someone – Anybody**) in the village went to the party but they didn't enjoy it.
3. When the show finished, there was complete silence. (**Everyone – Anyone – No one – Someone**) clapped.
4. Mohamed Ali is (**everybody – nobody – somebody – no one**) I have always admired.
5. Who shall I give this one to ? You can give it to (**somebody – someone – anybody – nobody**). It doesn't matter.
6. That's a very easy job (**nobody – somebody – someone – anybody**) can do it.
7. Excuse me, you've dropped (**nothing – everything – something – anything**), Yes, look, it's your passport.
8. I agree with most of what he said, but I don't agree to (**something – nothing – everything – anything**).
9. It's all finished. I'm afraid there's (**something – nothing – anything – everything**) left.
10. Did you turn the oven off ? I think I can smell (**anything – nothing – something – everything**) burning.
11. Is there (**nothing – anything- something- everything**)I can do to help you.
12. There is (**anybody – nobody- somebody – someone**) in the office today. It's Friday .
13. I can hear (**anyone- no one- everyone – someone**) knocking at the door.

It is / There is

The use of it is

1. **Distance** المسافة How far **is** it to Alexandria ?
It is 200 Kilometres.
2. **Price** الثمن How much **is it** ? (What does it cost ?)
It is two pounds.
3. **Weather** الطقس It **is** hot / cold / wet / windy.
4. **Time and Date.** What time **is it** ? It **is** eleven o'clock.
What is **the date**. It **is** December 8.

It is / was + adjective :

It **is lovely** to see so much open country. It is easy to criticize. ينقد

It **was dreadful** for him to find himself alone in such a place.

It is / was + adjective + of you / him + to + مصدر

It's a pity the weather is not better for our outing today.

It **is good** of you to help me. It **was clever** of him to find his way.

It **is easy** for you to talk, you haven't got to make a decision.

It **was too hot** to do anything, he couldn't do anything.

It **was brave** of the policeman to tackle the armed man.

There is / was + noun

1. There was **a storm** / **a lot** of rain last night.
2. There was **a hard frost** last winter.
3. There is **a policeman** at the door.
4. There is **time** for you to go home and come back.
5. There is **a long way** to go still.
6. There is **enough** for everyone.

Ex. (21A) Use there is / are, or it is in an appropriate tense and form :

1. How far.....to Benha ? 30 Kilometres.
2. very stormy last night. Yes ... storms all over the country.
3. As.....sunny she decided to take the children to the sea.
4. Why don't you go for a walk ? a pity to stay in when so nice outside.

5. not any glass in the windows, that is why so cold in the room.
6. a lot of rain last week, floods everywhere.
7. a thick fog last night,several accidents on the way.
8. foolish to drive fast,foggy.
9. Come on children, time to get up ! nearly breakfast time.
10. ... all sorts of stories about Robin Hood, but **(not)** known exactly who he was and what he did.
11. said that if you break a mirror you'll be unlucky for 7years.
12. a guard outside the door and on the windows impossible to escape.
13. We've done all we can, nothing to do but wait.
14. Just cross out that word and go on, **(not)** necessary to begin again **(or no need to begin again).**
15. He thought that better to say nothing about his change of plan.

Ex. (21B) Choose the correct answer :

1. **(It is - There is - There are)** nothing in this medicine that can hurt you.
2. **(It is - There is - There are)** dangerous to play with fire.
3. **(It is - There is - There are)** much danger in playing with fire.
4. **(It is - There is - There are)** a gentleman wanting you on the phone.
5. If **(it is - there is - there are)** any difficulty, let me know.
6. Last night **(it was - there was - there were)** a big fire.
7. If **(it is - there is - there are)** time to go, let us go !.
8. **(It is - There is - There are)** a little pleasure in observing the foolishness of man.
9. Who ? **(It is - there is - there are)** Mr. Kamal who wants to speak to you.
10. **(It is - There is - There are)** many things in the universe we don't understand.

Articles

أدوات النكرة والمعرفة a / an / the

a man, a table, a boy

تستعمل **a** قبل الاسم الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن.

كذلك تستعمل **a** قبل أسماء تبدأ بحرف متحرك **a, e, o, u, i**

لكنها تنطق كحرف ساكن **a university**

تستعمل **an** قبل الأسماء التي تبدأ بحرف متحرك **(a, e, o, u, i)**

an egg, an apple, an elephant

أو أسماء تبدأ بحرف ساكن لكنها تنطق كحرف متحرك مثل :

an hour, an honorable man

تستعمل **a** قبل الأسماء في الحالات الآتية :

1. Before a singular countable noun اسم مفرد يمكن أن يعد

1. A dog is an animal 2. A cat can catch a mouse.

2. Before a singular countable noun which is used as an example of a class of things.

1. A cow has horns (i.e, all cows have horns).

2. An elephant never forgets.

3. Before names of professions المهنة and a noun complement

1. He is a doctor.

2. She is a teacher.

3. He became a great man. 4. She is a good girl.

4. In certain numerical expressions عبارات عددية معينة

a couple زوج , a dozen دسنة half a dozen, a score (20)

a gross (144) a hundred, a thousand, a million, a lot of, a great deal of.

5. In expressions of price ratio والسرعة speed , عبارات الثمن

five pence, a kilo, ten pence, a dozen, sixty kilometres, an hour, four times a day.

6. With few and little :

a few = a small number of. a little = a small amount of

7. An exclamation تعجب before singular countable nouns

What a hot day ! What a pretty girl ! Such a pity !

8. A can be placed before, Mr./Mrs./Miss surname اسم العائلة

a Mr. Smith, a Mrs. Smith, a Miss. Smith.

Mr. Smith means **a man called** يسمى **Smith** and **implies** تدل على that he is a stranger to the speaker.

The indefinite article a or an is not used :

1. Before plural nouns. e.g - a dog - dogs أسماء الجمع

The following nouns are singular مفرد and uncountable لا تعد
English, advice نصيحة, information معلومات, news أخبار, baggage
luggage أمتعة, furniture أثاث. **They are preceded by** مسبقة بـ
some, any, a little, a lot of, a piece of, e.g.

1. I will give you **a piece of advice**.

2. There isn't any news. They need **some more furniture**.

"**Knowledge**" is also considered uncountable, but when used in a particular sense it takes an article. بمعنى خاص

a. **A knowledge** of languages is always useful.

b. He has **a good knowledge** of mathematics.

3. **Materials** مواد glass, wood, iron, stone, paper, cloth قماش wine
coffee, tea, etc. are considered uncountable. نبيذ

But many of these nouns can also denote تدل على
one particular thing and then take an article.

a. Windows are made of glass, but. Have **a glass of Coca cola**.

b. We write on paper. but I bought **a paper**.

Iron is metal but I use **an electric iron** مكواة

4. Before abstract nouns الأسماء المعنوية أو المجردة e.g. beauty الجمال

happiness السعادة, fear الخوف, hope الأمل, death - etc

except. ما عدا when they are used in a particular sense.

He was pale with **fear**. Some children suffer from **a fear** of the dark.

5. Before names of meals الوجبات except ما عدا when preceded
by **an adjective** صفة يسبقها.

We have **breakfast** at eight. He gave us **a good breakfast**.

نستعمل الأداة a / an عندما تكون وجبة خاصة للاحتفال بشيء ما أو لتكريم شخص ما مثل :

I was invited to **a dinner** at their house.

I was invited to **a dinner** given to welcome the new
ambassador السفير

6. With uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns we use (some) instead of a / an.

We need **some flour** and **some sugar**.

They bought **some stamps** .

The definite article "The".

تستعمل قبل الأسماء المفرد والجمع للمذكر والمؤنث ولغير العاقل

The boy, the boys, the girl, the girls, the book, the books.

1. Before nouns of which there is only one or which are considered one.

قبل الأسماء التي منها واحد فقط أو التي تعتبر واحد.

The earth, the sea, the sky, the weather, the north pole. القطب الشمالي.

2. Before a noun which has become definite as a result of being mentioned a second time
بسبب ذكره مرة ثانية

His car struck **a tree**, you can still see the mark on **the tree**.

3. Before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or clause.
أسم أصبح معروفا بإضافة عبارة أو جملة

The boy that I met, **the place** where I met him.

The girl in blue, **the man** on the horseback.

4. Before adjectives of quality used as plural nouns.
good/bad/poor/rich, healthy/sick, young/old, living /dead.

1. **The poor** الفقراء are usually generous to each other.

2. After the battle, they buried **the dead** الموتى.

3. **The old** الكبار receive pensions. معاشات

5. Before Superlatives صفات التفضيل القصوى and first / second and used as adjectives or pronouns :

Mont Blanc is **the highest mountain** in Europe.

August is **the hottest month** of the year.

6. Before names of seas, rivers, chains سلسلة of mountains, group of islands and plural names of countries. The Atlantic ocean.

The Thames. The Alps. The U.S.A. The Sudan.

7. Before musical instruments : الآلات الموسيقية

She learnt to play **the piano, the violin الكمان, the drum, the guitar.**

8. With the type of meal.

The dinner given to celebrate their victory cost 200 pounds.

لا تستعمل **the** في الحالات الآتية :

1. Before countries, towns and proper nouns.

Mr. Nabeel returned to Cairo and bought a house in Alexandria exceptions باستثناء **The U.S.A. The Sudan, The U.S.S.A.**

The Strand (in London) **the High Street, the Smiths** = Mr. and Mrs. Smith and family.

2. Before names of meals :

The Egyptians have meat for dinner, but **the wedding dinner** was held in her father's house.

3. Before parts of the body and articles of clothing, as these normally prefer a possessive adjective:

Raise your hand, Take off your clothes.

عندما تستعمل كلمة **home** بمفردها أي لا تسبقها صفة أو تتبعها جملة وصفية

تُحذف **the** مثال ذلك :

He went home, They left home. They got home late.

ولكنه عندما تسبقها صفة أو تتبعها عبارة وصفية فإنها تعامل كأنه أسم.

We went to **the bride's home.**

A mud hut was **the only home** he had ever known.

5. Chapel, Church, market, college, school, hospital, court, prison, work, sea and bed. These words are used without "The" when they are visited or used for their primary purposes.

People go to **church** to pray, to **market** to buy and sell.

People go to **school** to study, to **hospital** as patients.

People go to **college** to study, to **prison** as prisoners.

People go to **bed** to sleep, to **court** as litigants. مدعى ومدعى عليه

People go to **sea** as sailors, to **work** as workers.

٦- هناك مجموعة من الكلمات لابد أن تأخذ **The.**

Cathedral, office, cinema, theatre.

He is at **the office**. She is going to **the theatre**.

Ex. (22A) Insert a / an/ some or the when necessary :

1. She is Indian but her husband is European.
2. Take chair and make yourself at home. I shall be back in minute and we'll havechat.
3. supper is last meal of day.
4. In England traffic keeps to left, but in Egypt it keeps to right.
5. little thought may save lot of time.
6. Alps are..... highest mountains in Europe.
7. poor man we met yesterday had..... little food and few clothes.
8. They charge three pounds..... day for good room in hotel that mentioned.
9.dictionary is great help to students with bad memories.
10. He asked for bread and butter, loaf of former and pound of latter.
11. I sawnice trousers and lovely dress in a shop today .
12. Would you like.....fruit? Yes please I'll have orange.
13. Can you give me advice? You should take.... holiday
14. That's unusual ring . I know It's.....antique.

Ex. (22B) Choose the correct answer :

1. I dislike **(the - a - no article)** towns, but I love **(a - the - an)** countryside.
2. Where is **(a - an - the)** hat that I bought yesterday.
3. Nagi, **(a - the - an)** man you met yesterday is **(a - an - the)** honest man.
4. He crossed **(a-the-an)** Atlantic in **(a - an - the)** record time.
5. It's **(an - a - the)** shame ! There won't be another train for at least **(an - a - the)** hour.
6. Take **(a - an - no article)** little tea. It will do you **(a - an - the)** lot of good.

7. What (a - an - no article) nonsense! What (a - an - no article) pity, you can't write (a - an - no article) essay.
8. (A - An - No article) help came at (the - a - no article) last and (the - a - an) unfortunate bathers were rescued.
9. He works all (a - an - the) day and every day from (a - an - the) early morning till late at (a - no article - the) night.
10. "(A - The - No article) democracy", said President Lincoln, means (a - the - an) government of (a - an - the) people by (an - the - a) people, for (a - an - the) people.
11. There was (a - an - the) knock at (a - an - the) door. I opened it and found (a - an - the) small dark man in (a - an - the) check overcoat and (a - an - the) soft hat.
12. (A - No article - An) rest and (a - an - no article) sleep in (a - the - no - article) moderation are good for (a - the - no article) health.
13. (A-An-The) more I looked at it, (a - the - an) stranger it seemed.
14. He is (a - an - the) man for (a - an - the) job ! None other can do it so well.
15. I like (a - an - the) lot of milk in my tea, and (a - an - the) few lumps of (a - an - no article) sugar.

A - An - One

١ - الصفة one لا يمكن دائما استبدالها بأدوات النكرة a/an

Any handkerchief

a handkerchief

no more than one

one handkerchief

A shotgun is no good. (i.e. It is the wrong sort of thing).

One shotgun is no good. (i.e. I need two or three).

٢ - حيث أنه لا يمكن استعمال a /an كضمائر لذلك يمكن استعمال one بدلا منهما.

One of my friends. Reserve a table and try to get near the door.

٣ - تستعمل one قبل الكلمات day/week/month etc. لتدل على زمن معين عندما يحدث شيء.

One day a telegram arrived. One night there was a terrible storm.

ولكن a/an تدل على شيء عام.

A rainy day is very common in England. We spent a night in Paris.

Ex. (23A) Insert a / an or one if necessary:

1. Mary wants doll with blue eyes
2. Most people like..... rest after hard day's work, but Salah seemed to have inexhaustible supply of energy.
3. I've told you hundred times not to come into room with hat on.
4. plate is no good, we need.....dozen.
5. You've been.....great help to me, day I will repay you.
6. He took....quick look at my car said, "Buy new....."
7. There was.....woman there. The rest were men.
8. Could you lend me dictionary, please ? I'm trying to do crossword puzzle, I'm afraid I've got.....dictionary and Tom's borrowed it.

Ex. (23B) Choose the correct answer :

1. I have (**a - an - one**) lovely flat on the top floor. You get (**an - a - one**) lovely view from there.
2. (**A - An - One**) day a new director arrived. He was (**a - an - one**) ambitious, bad-tempered man and the staff took (**a - an - one**) dislike to him.
3. He says (**a - an - one**) caravan is no good, he needs (**a - an - one**) cottage.
4. You are making (**a - an - one**) mistake after another.
5. I had (**a - an - one**) bad night last night - the people next door were having (**a - an - one**) party.
6. (**A - An - One**) day - it was (**a - an - one**) dry day with (**a - one - no article**) visibility. Nagi was driving along (**a - an - one**) country road in (**a - an - one**) borrowed car.
7. "I want volunteers for (**a - an - one**) dangerous job", said the captain. There was (**a - an - one**) long silence. "Isn't there even (**a - an - one**) man who will take risk ? "Will there be (**a - an - one**) reward" ? (**a - an - the**) voice called out.
8. (**A - An - One**) chop won't be enough for Nagi, he'll want two, he's (**a - an - one**) small man but he's got (**a - an - one**) big appetite.

Modal Verbs

The verbs *must, can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should and ought (to)* are modal verbs. They express meanings such as **obligation, necessity, certainty, ability, possibility, lack of necessity, offers, suggestions, requests, logical assumptions, permission, prohibition, advice and criticism.**

→ **Modal verbs:**

- **do not take an -s, -ing or -ed suffix**, e.g. She **must** study. (NOT: ~~She musts study.~~)
- **are followed by a bare infinitive except for ought** which is **followed by a to - infinitive.**

e.g. He **may** be ill. (NOT: ~~He may to be ill.~~) She **ought to** listen to you.

- **go before the subject in questions and are followed by not** in negations.

e.g. **Can I** talk to you? He **couldn't** speak.

- **do not usually have tenses.** They can refer to the present or the future.

e.g. You **can** call now. (present) You **can** call tomorrow, (future)

Must

obligation - necessity - duty

must = It is your duty to do sth/you are obliged to do sth.

You **must stop** when the traffic light is red. (= You **are obliged** to stop when the traffic light is red.)

Prohibition

mustn't/can't = It's forbidden to do sth/you are not allowed to do sth/It is against the rules / law

You **mustn't/can't park** here. (= You **are not allowed** to park here. It's against the law.)

strong advice

must = I strongly advise you to do sth

You **must behave** yourself at school.

(= You really **should behave yourself at school**, or you'll get into trouble.)

Logical assumptions

a) Positive logical assumptions must = I am sure/certain

b) For negative logical assumptions we usually use can't.

a) They **must** be the boy's parents.

(**I'm sure** they **are the** boy's parents.)

b) They **can't be the boy's** grandparents.

(I'm **sure they are not** the boy's grandparents.)

- Must can only be used to talk about the present or near future.

We use have to when we need to use other tenses.

e.g. He **had to work** late yesterday, so he didn't go to the party.

present simple = must/have to

past simple = had to

present perfect == have/has had to

future simple = must/will have to

Must – Have to / Have got to

must = It is necessary to do sth

We use **must** when the speaker **decides that something is necessary**.

I **must** find a hotel to stay at tonight.

(The **young man has made the decision himself**.)

have to = it is necessary to do sth

We use have to when somebody else other than the speaker has made the decision.

I **have to wear a uniform** at work.

(**Somebody else has made the decision**.)

Questions and negations with have to are formed with do, does or did.

- Must and have to have different meanings in questions.

Compare the following examples:

Must I do my homework now?

The boy wants to know whether his mother insists on his doing his homework right away.)

Do I have to type these letters now?

(The secretary wants to know whether it is necessary for her to type the letters right away.)

Have got to has the same meaning as **have to**, and it is usually used in everyday speech.

e.g. 'Sorry! **I've got to go** now. My bus leaves in a few minutes.'

mustn't = **it is forbidden to do** sth/you are not allowed to do sth

We use mustn't to express prohibition.

He **mustn't skateboard** in the street.

(Skating in the street is **forbidden**.)

needn't = **it isn't necessary to do** sth

We use needn't to express lack of necessity.

We can also use **don't/doesn't need to** or **don't/doesn't have to** for the same purpose.

The farmer **needn't/ doesn't need to/ doesn't have to** buy any eggs. (= **It isn't necessary** for the farmer to buy any eggs.)

Ex 24 A) Fill in the gaps with mustn't or needn't/don't have to. The first sentence is done for you

- 1) A: Shall I help you with your shopping?
B: No, you **needn't/don't have to**. I can manage by myself.
- 2) A: You play football inside the house.
B: I'm sorry. I'll go outside.
- 3) A: Do you want anything from the supermarket?
B: No, you get me anything today, thank you. I'm going out myself later.
- 4) A: You be late for work tomorrow morning.
B: I know. I'll try to arrive early.
- 5) A: You take these books out of the library.
B: I know. It's forbidden.

6) A: Shall I make an appointment for you at the dentist's?

B: No, you I'll do it myself next week.

Ex 24 B) Rewrite the following sentences using must, mustn't, needn't, has to or doesn't have to. The first sentence is done for you

1- You **aren't allowed to park your car** in the college car park.

→ You **mustn't park** your car in the college car park.

2- I strongly advise you to speak to your parents about your decision.

3- It isn't necessary for Mary to attend tomorrow's staff meeting.

4- Jack is obliged to wear a suit and a tie at work because the manager says so.

5- I'm sure Antonio is from Milan.

6- It's necessary for Roger to find a job soon.

7- It's forbidden to use mobile phones inside the hospital.

8- Susan is obliged to work overtime because her boss says so.

Didn't need to – Needn't have done

- **didn't need to + Infinitive = It was not necessary to do sth**

It shows that an action did not happen in the past because we knew It was not necessary.

- **needn't have + past participle = it was not necessary to do sth, but It was done**

It shows that an action happened in the past, even though It was not necessary.

You **needn't have bought me flowers**.

= It wasn't necessary for someone to buy her flowers, but they did.

Ex 24 c) Rewrite the following sentences using must, mustn't, needn't, has to or doesn't have to. The first sentence is done for you

1- It wasn't necessary for him to wash the car. It wasn't dirty.

→ ...He didn't need to wash the car.....

2- It wasn't necessary for her to buy so many oranges, but she did.

- 3- It wasn't necessary for us to take an umbrella. It wasn't raining.
- 4- It wasn't necessary for us to turn on the light. It wasn't dark.
- 5- It wasn't necessary for him to call me today, but he did.
- 6- It wasn't necessary for you to make sandwiches for me, but you did.
- 7- It wasn't necessary for them to make reservations at the restaurant, but they did.

Ex 24 d) Rewrite the sentences using the word in bold follow the example:

1- It **isn't necessary** for Nagi to buy new clothes for the reception.

Nagi **doesn't need** to / needn't buy new clothes for the reception.

- 2- You aren't allowed to pick these flowers. (**must**)
- 3- Sarah is obliged to type her compositions at university. (**has**)
- 4- It wasn't necessary for Janette to make the beds. (**need**)
- 5- It is your duty to obey the law. (**must**)
- 6- It wasn't necessary for Usama to wait for me, but he did. (**need**)
- 7- It is forbidden to throw litter on the beach. (**must**)
- 8- I'm sure Ashraf is at home. (**must**)
- 9- It wasn't necessary for Julie to bake a cake for the party. (**need**)
- 10- * It **wasn't necessary** for George to stay at work late last night, but he did. (**have**)

Can / Could

- ability in the present

can = I am able to (He can fly a helicopter.)

- ability in the past

could = used to be able to (past repeated action)

I could ski very well when I was young.

asking permission

Can / Could / May / Might I ? = Do you / Would you mind if ?

We use these structures to ask permission to do something.

Could and may are more polite than can. Might is formal.

- a) (informal) Can **I go swimming?** No, **you can't.**
- b) (more formal) **Could / May / Might I have** a look at this report?

We normally reply with 'Certainly / Of course / Why not / No, I'm afraid you can't.'

-Giving/refusing permission

can / may = you are allowed to do sth.

May is more formal than can.

Can't / mustn't / may not = you are not allowed to do sth.

May not is formal and is usually used in written notices.

Dad, can we go to the park today?

No, I'm afraid you can't but you can go tomorrow.

YOU MAY NOT LEAVE YOUR LUGGAGE HERE.

Offers

Can / Could / Shall I ...? = Would you like to ...?

We use these structures when we offer to do something.

Can / Could / Shall I call a taxi for you?

Suggestions

**We can / could ... / Shall we ...? = Let's / How about ... ?
/ What about ...? / Why don't we ...?**

What shall we do today?

We can / could go fishing.

Requests

Can / Could / Will / Would you ...?

We use these structures when we ask somebody to do something for us. Would and could are more polite than can and will.

Can/Could/Will/Would you help me with my French homework, please?

We normally reply with 'Certainly' / 'Of course' / 'I'm sorry, but I can't.'

Possibility

a) **could/may/might + present infinitive = It is possible/It is likely/ perhaps**

John is late. He could be stuck in traffic.

b) **could/might + perfect infinitive possible, but It didn't happen.**

e.g. Yesterday, there was a terrible accident.

The driver could have been killed. (Luckily, he wasn't.)

Can is used in the present. Could is the past tense of can. We use be able to form all the other tenses.

e.g. **I will be able to get a job when I finish school.**

present simple: can, am/is/are able to

past simple: could, was/were able to

present perfect: have/has been able to

past perfect: had been able to

future simple: will be able to

future perfect: will have been able to

Ex 25 A) Fill in the gaps with an appropriate modal verb. The first sentence is done for you

1) A: **...May/Can/Could I borrow** your pen, please?

B: No, you I'm using it.

2) A: I'm bored. What shall we do?

B: We go for a walk.

A: No, we because it's raining.

B: Let's watch a video, then.

3) A: My parents told me I go to the party tonight.

B: Never mind, I go either. We stay at home together, though.

4) A: Sir, I speak to you for a moment please?

B: Certainly, but later today; I'm busy now.

5) A: Excuse me?

B: Yes?

A: you tell me where the post office is, please?

B: Certainly. It's on the main road, next to the school.

6) A: Is anyone sitting on that chair?

B: No, you take it if you want to.

Could – Was able to ability in the past

We use was/were able to (= managed to do) to show that someone **had the ability to do** something in a particular situation in the past (**past single action**).

e.g. She was able to climb to the top of the mountain.

(= She managed to climb to the top of the mountain.)

We use could to show that someone had the ability to do something repeatedly in the past (past repeated action).

e.g. He could run very fast when he was young.

He had the ability to do this repeatedly in the past.)

- **We use could rather than was/were able to with the verbs see, hear, feel, smell, taste, understand, remember and guess.**

e.g. They **could see** the storm coming.

(NOT: ~~They were able to see~~)

- **We use the negative form couldn't for both cases.**

e.g. My little sister **couldn't wash** herself when she was two.

(past repeated action)

Mark tried, but he couldn't find out what was wrong with the computer, (**past single action**)

Ex 25 B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1- John was a very talented child.

'I know. He play the piano well when he was seven.'

a) couldn't b) could c) can d) will

2- 'I've just taken a loaf out of the oven.'

'Oh, that's why I smell fresh bread when I came home.'

a) was able to b) can't c) could d) would

3- 'How was the test?' 'Easy. All the children pass it.'

a) were able to b) could c) can't d) couldn't

4- 'What are you doing this summer?'

'I hope I'll go on holiday with my friends.'

a) could b) be able to c) can d) may

Ex 25 c) Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning. The first sentence is done for you.

1- Do you mind if I leave the door open for a while?

Can I leave the door open for a while?

2- You're obliged to take notes during the lecture. (have)

3- I'm sorry, but you aren't allowed to enter this room. (must)

4- Jack managed to unlock the door. (able)

5- It wasn't necessary for Ann to cook dinner, but she did.

(need)

6- Let's play a game of chess.

(could)

7- I'm certain Sarah is bored with her work.

(must)

8- I strongly advise you to take up sport.

(must)

9- I'm certain Julie isn't interested in your ideas.

(can't)

10- You may take the car tonight if you want.

(can)

Ex 25d) Study the situations and respond to each one using an appropriate modal verb. The first sentence is done for you.

1- You want to go on holiday with your friends this year. Ask your parents for permission.

... Can I go on holiday with my friends this year? ...

2- You are at a job interview. You type fast, you use computers and you speak two foreign languages. Tell the interviewer about your abilities.

- 3- Your brother is trying to decide what to buy your mother for her birthday. You suggest a box of chocolates.
- 4- Your jacket is dirty and you want to wear it next week, It is necessary to take it to the dry cleaner's.
- 5- You want to have a day off work next week. Ask for our boss's permission.
- 6- You are in the car with your uncle, it's hot and you want him to open the window. Make a request.
- 7- Your mother is going to the shops. She asks you if you want anything, you tell her it isn't necessary to get anything for you.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| Present inf. | I'm sure he is Spanish. I'm sure you aren't a doctor. | He must be Spanish. You can't be a doctor. |
| Present cont. inf. | I'm certain they're hiding. I'm sure they won't be leaving tomorrow. | They must be hiding. They can't be leaving tomorrow. |
| Perfect inf. | I'm certain she has left. I'm sure she didn't lie. I'm certain he hadn't phoned. | She must have left. She can't have lied. He can't have phoned. |
| Perfect cont. inf. | I'm sure they were waiting. I'm certain she has been crying. I'm certain he hadn't been trying hard. | They must have been waiting. She must have been crying. He can't have been trying hard. |

Ex 26 A) Complete the sentences using must or can't, follow the example.

- 1- I'm certain they go to bed early on Sunday nights. They **must go to bed early on Sunday nights.**

2- I'm sure John didn't stay late at the office. John **can't have stayed late at the office ...**

3- I'm certain he hasn't arrived yet. He

4- I'm certain they are working together. They

5- I'm sure Haidy hasn't finished her homework. Haidy

6- I'm certain she was having a bath when I rang. She

7- I'm sure he hasn't won the prize. He

8- I'm sure she is looking for a new house. She

9- I'm certain Nagi didn't invite Mervat to the party. Nagi

10- I'm certain you have been planning the project. You

11- I'm sure she was writing a letter. She

12- I'm certain they hadn't paid the bill. They

13- I'm sure he had been fixing the pipe. He

May / Might possibility (present/future)

may/might/could + present infinitive

= It is possible/It is likely/perhaps

e.g. a) Where's Aunt Julia?

b) She **may / might / could still** be at work.

= It's possible that she's still at work

possibility (past) may/might/could + perfect infinitive

= It was possible, perhaps

a) We use these structures to refer to a past action which was possibly true.

e.g. 'The lights are still on.'

Engy may/might/could have/forgotten to turn them off.'

(**Perhaps** Engy **forgot/has forgotten** to turn them off

b) We also use them to refer to things which were possible but did not happen. May is not normally used in this case.

e.g. Why did you run across the road?

You **might/could have been** killed, (Luckily, you weren't killed.)

→ **Study the following negative sentences:**

a) She may/might not know about these changes.

(Perhaps she doesn't know about changes – expresses possibility.)

She can't/couldn't know about these changes.

(It is certain that she doesn't know - expresses certainty.)

b) He may/might not have left yet.

(Perhaps he hasn't left yet - expresses possibility.)

He can't/couldn't have left yet.

(I'm certain that he hasn't left yet (expresses certainty.)

Asking permission

May/Might I...? =; Would you mind if I...?

We use these structures to ask permission when we do not know the other person very well.

e.g. **May/Might I ask** you another question? Of course.

Study the following examples:

e.g. **'Can I take** this book?'

Yes, of course.' (informal)

'Could I talk to you for a minute?'

'Certainly.' (more polite than can)

Giving/refusing permission

a) **may/can** = you are allowed to do sth.

We use **may** and **can**, but not **might** or **could**, to give permission. **May** is very formal and is not used in everyday speech.

e.g. You **can** sit here if you like. (everyday speech)

Passengers **may** take only one item of hand luggage on board, (written notice)

Note We use **Could /...?** to ask permission, and **can** or **may**, but not **could**, to reply.

e.g. **'Could I leave** a little earlier?'

'Yes, you can.' / **'Yes, you may.'**

b) **can't/may not** == you are not allowed to do sth

We use **can't** and **may not**, but not **couldn't**, to refuse permission.

e.g. Students **may not wear outdoor** shoes on the basketball court. (= **Students aren't allowed to...**)

I'm sorry, but you can't park here.

(NOT: I'm sorry, but you couldn't park here.)

Request

May/Might/Can/Could I ...?

We use these structures to ask for something politely. **Might** /...? Is more formal than **May** /...? and is not often used.

May/Can/Could I have a pen and some paper, please?

Here you are.

Study these examples:

| | | |
|--------------------|--|---|
| present inf. | Perhaps she is a nurse. It's possible he will come early. | She may be a nurse. He might come early. |
| present cont. inf. | Perhaps they are having a break. It's likely we will be moving house soon. | They could be having a break. We may be moving house soon. |
| perfect inf. | Perhaps he left yesterday. It's possible she has locked the door. It's likely he had gone out. | He might have left yesterday. She could have locked the door. He may have gone out. |
| perfect cont. inf. | It's possible they were sleeping. Perhaps it has been raining there. | They might have been sleeping. It could have been raining there. |

Ex 26 B) Rephrase the following sentences in as many ways as possible, follow the example:

1- **Perhaps** they are at work.

They may/might/could be at work.

2- Perhaps he is waiting outside.

He

3- It's possible she will work late tonight.

She

4- It's likely he was driving too fast.

- He
- 5- It's possible they made a mistake.
They
- 6- Perhaps he has missed the bus.
He
- 7- It's possible she has been playing in the snow.
She
- 8- It's likely we will be leaving tomorrow.
We
- 9- It's likely he will stay there.
He
- 10- Perhaps she had been trying to call you.
She
- 11- It's likely they had seen the film already.
They
- 12- It's possible he is studying in the library.
He

Shall

Shall / Can / Could I ...? = Would you like me to ...?

We use these structures when we offer to do something.

e.g. **Can/Could/Shall I help you** choose Mary's present?

That's would be great.

suggestions:

Shall/Can/Could we ...? = Why don't we ...? / How about ...? / What about ...? / Let's ...

We use these structures to make a suggestion.

e.g. **Shall/Can/Could we go to the beach today?**

I'd rather not.

- asking for suggestions or instructions:

We use shall when we ask for suggestions or instructions.

e.g. Where shall we go next?

We can/could go to the centre.

Will / Would

Will/Would/Can/Could you ...?

We use these structures when we ask somebody else to do something for us.

Would and could are more polite than will and can.

e.g. Will/Can you do me a favour, please?

Of course.

Compare the following examples:

e.g. Can/**Will** you post this letter? (informal, less polite than could or would)

Could / Would you post this letter? (more polite than can or will)
We often reply with: 'Yes, I'd (**would**) be happy / glad to.' Or 'Certainly.'

e.g. Can you call Jack for me?

Certainly.

Should / Ought to

should / ought to = I advise you to / you had better do sth.

e.g. **You should / ought to** be more careful.

(= **I advise you to / You had better** be more careful.)

Must expresses strong advice.

Compare

You **should** talk to your lawyer. (= It **would** be a good idea to ...)

You **must** talk to your lawyer. (= I **strongly** advise you to ...)

ought to / should + perfect infinitive = it would have been better if you had ...

We use these structures to show that somebody did the wrong thing in the past.

e.g. You all **should / ought to** have tried harder.

(... but you didn't, so your team lost.)

Ex 26 c) Fill in shall or will:

- 1- **Shall** I help you with the washing-up?
- 2- we have pizza for dinner tonight?
- 3- you carry this for me, please?
- 4- What we buy for Bob's birthday?
- 5- you answer the phone, please?
- 6- Where we sit in the classroom?
- 7- you take the rubbish out for me, please?
- 8- we have a barbecue next weekend?

Ex 27A) Rephrase the following sentences in as many ways as possible, follow the example:

1- **You had better book** your flight early.

... **You ought to/should/must book** your flight early. ...

2- Would you like me to draw the curtains for you?

3- Why don't we go to a Japanese restaurant for a change?

4- I strongly advise you to see a doctor as soon as possible.

Can you call Greg for me, please?

6- You ought to have checked the battery before you left.

7- Everybody is obliged to pay taxes.

8- You don't need to go to the supermarket today.

9- It wasn't necessary for Betty to call a taxi because I gave her a lift.

10- They managed to get to the theatre in time, despite the heavy traffic.

11- You aren't allowed to keep pets in the building.

12- Do you mind if I take the rest of the day off?

Ex 27 B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1- 'You be late for work.

'I know, I'm leaving now.'

a) needn't b) must c) mustn't d) won't

2- 'Jim lose some weight. His doctor said so'

'Then he must go on a diet.'

a) mustn't b) can c) has to d) will

3- 'I go to the bank today. I have enough money.'

'Well, I'll go alone, then.'

a) needn't b) have to c) must d) can't

4- 'Did you deliver that parcel to me?'

'No, I find the house, so I've come back to get a map

a) can b) could c) couldn't d) will

5- 'I clean the house, today. It's dirty.' 'I'll help you.'

a) needn't b) must c) mustn't d) could

6- 'I... feed the dog at lunchtime. My brother did it in the morning.'

'You can do it this evening, then.'

a) didn't need to b) needn't have
c) need d) should

7- 'Do you need any help?'

'Yes, I open the window. It's stuck.'

a) could b) am able to c) can't d) won't

8- 'I swim until I was ten.'

'Well, I didn't learn until I was eleven.'

a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) may

9- 'Can I talk to you, please?'

'Sorry, I go now. I'm late for a meeting.'

a) mustn't b) has to c) must d) will

10- 'Is Tom good at languages?'

'Yes, he already speak French, German and Italian.'

a) can't b) can c) could d) may

11- 'The test was too difficult for me.'

'Oh dear, I do it quite easily.'

a) was able to b) can't c) can d) would

12- 'Where's Tom?'

'He's not at work, so he be at the library.'

a) must b) can't c) can d) will

13- '..... we go shopping today?'

'No. I'd prefer to go tomorrow.'

a) Ought b) Shall c) Will d) May

14- 'Sorry, Mum. I've broken a plate.'

'You be more careful.'

a) may b) should c) might d) ought

15- 'Where's your father?'

'He be in the garage.'

a) might b) can c) mustn't d) will

المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول Active & Passive Voice

جملة خبرية Statement

لتحويل جملة خبرية إلى Passive نكتب الآتي :

- ١ - يوضع المفعول به (بعد الفعل مباشرة) في أول الجملة.
- ٢ - نحدد زمن الفعل ونضع (to be) في هذا الزمن بما يلائم الفاعل الجديد + التصريف الثالث
- ٣ - نضع by بعد التصريف الثالث عند الضرورة.
- ٤ - يوضع الفاعل بعد by (ضمائر الفاعل تتحول إلى ضمائر المفعول) عند الضرورة.
- ٥ - إذا كان الفعل في الجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط عند تحويل الجملة إلى Passive نستعمل (am أو is أو are + past participle)

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1. She cleans the room. | Active |
| The room is cleaned by her | Passive |
| 2. He prepares the lessons | Active |
| The lessons are prepared by him | Passive |
| 3. I have a car. | Active |
| A car is had by me. | خطأ xxx |

عند تحويل to have بمعنى يملك كفعل رئيسي إلى Passive نستعمل P.P للفعل
possess أو own

A car **is owned** by me فنقول

Or, A car **is possessed** by me.

A car **belongs** to me. ويمكن نفس الجملة تقال بطريقة أخرى

ملحوظة : إذا كان الفعل في الجملة مضارع منفى يوضع To Be في النفي مثال ذلك.

He **does not break** the law. Active

The law **is not broken** by him Passive

٢- إذا كان الفعل في الجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط عند تحويل الجملة إلى Passive تستعمل
(was or were + Past Participle)

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1. They took the man to the hospital. | Active. |
| The man was taken to the hospital | Passive |

ملحوظة : إذا كان فاعل الجملة معروف مثل كلمة People لا داعي لاستعمالها بعد by

2. The doctor **examined** the patients carefully. Active

The patients **were examined** carefully. Passive

ملحوظة : إذا كان الفعل ماضي منفى يوضع To Be ماضي منفى مثال ذلك.

They **did not carry** out the project.

Active

They project **was not carried** out.

Passive

٣ - إذا كان الفعل في الجملة معه أحد الأفعال الناقصة الآتية :

Shall - should - will - would - can - could - may - might - must - ought to - have to - has to - had to.

أو إحدى التركيبات الآتية : (am - is - are + going to) :

عند تحويل الجملة إلى Passive نضع الأفعال الناقصة أو التركيبات السابقة كما هي + P.P + be

1. They **will punish** him for his mistakes.

Active

He **will be punished** for his mistakes.

Passive

2. The pupil **could solve** the problem.

Active.

The problem **could be solved** by the pupil.

Passive

3. We **ought to defend** our country

Active.

Our country **ought to be defended**.

Passive

4. We **have to respect** the law

Active

The law **has to be respected**.

Passive

بلاحظ في الجملة السابقة أن **have to** تحولت إلى **has to** لأن المفعول به **the law** مفرد

5. Everyone **has to follow** the orders.

Active

The orders **have to be followed**.

Passive

بلاحظ أيضا في الجملة السابقة **has to** تحولت إلى **have to** لأن المفعول به **orders** جمع

6. They **are going to carry** out the new project.

Active

The new project **is going to be carried** out.

Passive

نلاحظ **are** تحولت إلى **is** لأن المفعول به **project** مفرد

7. I **am going to prepare** the new lessons. Active

The new lessons **are going to be prepared**.

Passive

٤ - إذا كان الفعل في الجملة في زمن المضارع المستمر الذي يتكون من

(am أو is أو are + infinitive المصدر + ing)

عند تحويل الجملة إلى Passive يستعمل (am-is - are + being + P.P.)

1. They **are building** a new house.

Active

A new house **is being built**.

Passive

2. She **is cleaning** the rooms.

Active

The rooms **are being cleaned**.

Passive

٥ - إذا كان الفعل في الجملة في زمن الماضي المستمر الذي يتكون من

(was أو were + infinitive المصدر + ing)

عند تحويل الجملة إلى **Passive** نستعمل **(was/were+being+Past Participle)**

1. We **were attacking** the enemy. **Active**
The enemy **was being attacked**. **Passive**
2. He **was making** arrangements ترتيبات for the trip **Active**
Arrangements **were being made** for the trip. **Passive**

٦ - إذا كان الفعل في الجملة في زمن المضارع التام الذي يتكون من

(have أو has + Past Participle)

عند تحويل الجملة إلى **Passive** نستعمل **(have been أو has been+P.P.)**

1. We **have conquered** Israel. **Active**
Israel **has been conquered**. **Passive**
2. Our army **has captured** many of the enemy soldiers. **Active**.
Many of the enemy soldiers **have been captured**. **Passive**

٧ - إذا كان الفعل في الجملة في زمن الماضي التام الذي يتكون من **(had+ P.P.)**

عند تحويل الجملة إلى **Passive** تستعمل **(had been + P.P.)**

1. The ancient people **had left** many monuments **Active**
Many monuments **had been left** by the ancient people. **Passive**
2. The boys **had eaten** some of the cakes. **Active**
Some of the cakes **had been eaten**. **Passive**

ملحوظات هامة :

١ - إذا كان فاعل الجملة مجهول الشخصية مثل كلمة **Somebody** أو **Someone** لا يستعمل عند تحويل الجملة إلى **Passive** مثال ذلك :

1. **Someone stole** her jewels yesterday. **Active**
Her jewels **were stolen** yesterday **Passive**

كذلك إذا كان فاعل الجملة ضمير لا يتحتم استعمالها عند التحويل.

٢ - إذا كان الفاعل يأخذ مفعولين يمكن تحويل الجملة بطريقتين مثال ذلك :

1. They **gave me a present**. **Active**
I **was given** a present. **Passive**
or A present **was given** to me. **Passive**

يلاحظ عند استعمال المفعول به المباشر توضع **to** قبل المفعول به غير المباشر.

٣ - إذا كان فاعل الجملة **no body** لا تستعمل بعد **by** عند التحويل ولا بد من نفي الفعل مثال ذلك :

- Nobody **has attacked** him yet. **Active**

He **has not been attacked** yet.

Passive

٤ - إذا استعمل في الجملة ظرف حالة **Adverb of Manner**

يكتب هذا الظرف قبل التصريف الثالث وإذا كان هناك حرف جر يوضع بعد التصريف الثالث مثال ذلك :

1. Mother **cooks** the food excellently.

Active

The food **is excellently cooked**.

Passive

2. People **speak** well of her.

Active

She **is well spoken of** .

Passive

٥ - أحيانا من الضروري كتابة الفاعل لتوضيح معنى الجملة مثال ذلك :

An earthquake **destroyed** the town.

The town **was destroyed** by an earthquake.

٦ - عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ **People say** عند تحويلها إلى **Passive** نقول **It is**

said مثال ذلك :

People say that peace will prevail soon.

Active

It is said that peace will prevail soon.

Passive

3. People **said** that he **was** jealous of her.

Active

It was said that he was jealous of her.

Passive

Or **He was said** to be jealous of her.

Passive

4. People think, consider, know that he is clever.

Active

It is thought, considered, known that he is clever.

Passive

Or **He is thought, considered, known** to be clever.

5. People **knew** that he was miser

Active

It was known that he was miser.

Passive

Or **He was known** to be miser.

6. People **believed** that he was strong

Active

It was believed that he was strong

Passive

Or **He was believed** to be strong.

People **say** that elephants have good memories.

Active

It is said that elephants have good memories.

Passive

Elephants are said to have good memories.

Passive

أفعال تتبع هذه القاعدة :

declare – estimate – consider – think – know – believe –
expect – say – reveal – suppose – report – assume يدعي أو يؤكد

٧- إذا كان الفعل في الجملة معه هذه التركيبات الآتية :

could have – would have – will have – must have – should have – may have + PP.

للتحويل إلى passive نضع been قبل التصريف الثالث للفعل.

- | | |
|---|---------|
| - They may have given him the car. | Active |
| He may have been given the car. | Passive |
| - They could have done the work. | Active |
| The work could have been done . | Passive |
| - He shouldn't have given them permission. | Active |
| They shouldn't have been given permission. | Passive |

٨- الأفعال make, hear, help, see تتبع به المصدر + to

- | | |
|---|---------|
| - They helped him tidy the garage | Active |
| - He was helped to tidy the garage | Passive |

It + passive verb + to infinitive

- | | |
|--|---------|
| - The committee agreed to support the idea. | Active |
| It was agreed to support the idea. | Passive |
| - I wanted them to play the match. | Active |
| I wanted the match to be played . | Passive |

Perfect to + infinitive

- | | |
|---|---------|
| They expect to have played the match. | Active |
| They expect the match to have been played by them. | Passive |

Gerund

- | | |
|---|---------|
| They left without playing the match. | Active |
| They left without the match being played . | Passive |

Perfect Gerund

- | | |
|---|---------|
| They left without having played the match. | Active |
| They left without the match having been played . | Passive |

١٣ - عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول واحد وهذا شائع مع أفعال مثل Like – hate

Let - نستعمل ضمير عاكس يعود على الفاعل مثال :

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| 1. Don't let people hear you. | Active |
| Don't let yourself be heard . | Passive |

2. He let people cheat him.

He let **himself be cheated**.

3. He likes people to praise him.

He likes himself **to be praised**.

Active
Passive
Active
Passive

Ex. (28A) Put the following into the Passive Voice :

1. They gave my little sister a ticket, too.
2. People will show the visitors the new buildings.
3. Someone has already paid the electrician for his work.
4. They promise us higher wages.
5. Someone ordered the prisoners to stand up.
6. Somebody recommended me to another doctor.
7. Someone taught him French and gave him a dictionary.
8. They will ask us all several questions.
9. They pay me by the hour.
10. Someone will read another chapter next time.
11. They requested the stranger to leave the meeting.
12. They still deny women the right to vote in some countries.
13. Someone is showing Mary how to bathe a baby.
14. No one has heard of this surgeon.
15. Our soldiers were bravely driving the enemy away.
16. Some readers don't like these books.
17. A clever burglar has stolen the jewels.
18. The baker will send us some bread this evening.
19. The police are questioning several people.
20. They may have to cancel the meeting.
21. They could have prevented the disaster.
22. Someone should water the plants once a day.
23. They were making good progress.
24. They have forgotten the incident.
25. Warships are shelling the harbour.
26. The cook was roasting the meat.
27. The fog ought to have delayed the plane.
28. I shall supervise the whole thing personally.

29. They ought to fry the fish.
30. They decided to postpone the meeting.
31. They have to deliver the letter by hand.
33. He would have received the parcel.
34. People must leave bicycles in the hall.
35. Members may keep books for three weeks.
36. People are spending far more money on food now.
37. The government has called out the troops.
38. You ought to have paid this bill weeks ago.
39. No one has taken out the cork.
40. Someone seems to have made a terrible mistake.
41. People know that he is armed.
42. You needn't have done this.
43. He likes people to call him "Sir"
44. I'd like someone to clear this rubbish.
45. Don't let the others see you.
46. People generally assume that money brings happiness.
47. People no longer say that anyone inhabits Mars any more than the moon.
48. No one has ever taken me for an Englishman.
49. They gave the thief fair trial and sent him to prison.
50. They can't put you in prison if they haven't tried you.

Questions

عند تحويل سؤال إلى **Passive** يتبع الآتي :

- ١ - يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية بمعنى أن يوضع الفاعل قبل الفعل وتحذف علامة الاستفهام.
- ٢ - تحول الجملة الخبرية إلى **Passive** بالطرق السابقة.
- ٣ - توضع الجملة الخيرية المحولة إلى **Passive** في صيغة الاستفهام بمعنى أن يوضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل.

1. Do people speak English all over the world? (Active)

- a) People speak English all over the world.
- b) English is spoken all over the world.

- c) Is English spoken all over the world ? (Passive)
 2. Does she break the plates? (Active)
 a) She breaks the plates. b) The plates are broken.
 c) Are the plates broken ? (Passive)
 3. Did someone print **يطبع** this book in London? (Active)
 a) Someone printed this book in London.
 b) This book was printed in London.
 c) Was this book printed in London. (Passive)
 4. Can anyone answer this question? (Active)
 a) Anyone can answer this question ?
 b) This question can be answered.
 c) Can this question be answered ? (Passive)
 5. Were they attacking the enemy fiercely? (Active)
 a) They were attacking the enemy fiercely.
 b) The enemy was being attacked fiercely.
 c) Was the enemy being attacked fiercely ? (Passive)
 6. Has anybody broken the window? (Active)
 a) Anybody has broken the window.
 b) The window has been broken.
 c) Has the window been broken ? (Passive)

Active & Passive voice with the Questions words

١ - إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام **who** تحول إلى **By whom** مع إتباع الخطوات السابقة.

1. Who killed the cat? (Active)
 a) The cat was killed. c) Was the cat killed.
 b) By whom was the cat killed ? (Passive)
 2. Who will carry out the project? (Active)
 a) The project will be carried out.
 b) Will the project be carried out.
 c) By whom will the project be carried out ? (Passive)

٢ - إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام **Whom** تحول إلى **who** مع إتباع الخطوات السابقة.

1. Whom did the teacher punish yesterday? (Active)
 a) The teacher punished (the boy) yesterday.
 b) (The boy) was punished by the teacher yesterday.

- c) Who was punished by the teacher yesterday ?
 2. Whom did the thief rob last week? (Active)
 a) The thief robbed (him) last week.
 b) (He) was robbed last week ?
 c) Who was robbed last week ? (Passive)

جميع أدوات الاستفهام الأخرى تبقى كما هي دون تغيير مثال ذلك :

1. Where did they hide the treasure? (Active)
 a) They hid the treasure. b) The treasure was hidden.
 c) Where was the treasure hidden ? (Passive)
 2. How could they overcome the problem? (Active)
 a) They could overcome the problem ?
 b) The problem could be overcome.
 c) How could the problem be overcome ? (Passive)

الأمر Order

عند تحويل أمر إلى Passive تستعمل (Let + المفعول به + be + P.P.)

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------|
| 1. Open the door | Active |
| Let the door be opened | Passive. |
| 2. Study this lesson. | Active |
| Let this lesson be studied | Passive |
| 3. Clean the room | Active |
| Let the room be cleaned. | Passive |

Ex. (28 B) Change into Passive :

- Do they teach you shorthand at college?
- Has anyone sent you the details?
- Where has he published the new book?
- Why did they neglect the homework?
- Who collected the examination papers?
- Why must they keep these books?
- Who has already paid the carpenter?
- Whom did they give the best present?
- Who asked both boys to leave?
- Why did not they tell me the truth?

11. When did they fight the battle?
12. Who has cooked the food?
13. Did anyone carry the little boy to bed?
14. Has anybody answered your question?
15. Will they allow us five minutes break?
16. Did they offer you promotion?
17. Are they considering the new problem?
18. Who made that mistake?
19. What did he tell you?
20. What did he write it with?
21. Have they sold you a faulty one?
22. Did they follow the regulations?
23. Is Ali sending the telegram now?
24. Why does Nagi buy the book?
25. Have they promised you a prize?
26. Prepare this exercise.
27. Write this lesson in ink.
28. Carry this basket home.
29. Give this book to Emad.
30. Take this man to the police.

Changing the Passive into Active

لتحويل جملة من **Passive** إلى **active** نتبع الخطوات الآتية :

- ١ - نضع الفاعل (بعد **by**) في أول الجملة وإذا كان محذوفاً عليك أن تستنتجه أو تخمنه من معنى الجملة.
- ٢ - تحدد زمن **to be** وتضع الفعل الأصلي (الذي تجده في التصريف الثالث) في هذا الزمن بما يلائم الفاعل الجديد.
- ٣ - تحذف **by + to be** أن وجدت.
- ٤ - تضع المفعول به (أول الجملة) بعد الفعل مباشرة.

1. The lesson is written by Mary.

Passive

Mary writes the lesson.

Active

to be في الجملة السابقة مضارع بسيط لذلك يوضع (**Written**) الفعل الأصلي في زمن المضارع البسيط ولأن الفاعل **Mary** مفرد يضاف (**s**)

2. The lesson is explained.

Passive

في هذه الجملة لا يوجد فاعل وبالإستنتاج نضع فاعل **the teacher** فنقول :

The teacher explains the lesson.

Active

3. The mirror **was broken**.

Passive

| | |
|--|---------|
| The servant broke the mirror. | Active |
| 4. The books will be collected. | Passive |
| The teacher will collect the books. | Active |
| 5. The difficulty could be overcome. | Passive |
| They could overcome the difficulty. | Active |
| 6. The house is being cleaned. | Passive |
| The servant is cleaning the house. | Active |
| 7. Many houses have been built. | Passive |
| The government has built many houses. | Active |
| 8. They had been conquered forever. | Passive |
| We had forever conquered them. | Active |

Questions

عند تحويل سؤال من Passive إلى Active تتبع الآتي :

- ١ - يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية.
- ٢ - تحول الجملة الخبرية إلى active بالطرق السابقة.
- ٣ - الجملة الخبرية المحولة إلى active توضع في صيغة الاستفهام.

1. Is the house cleaned? (Passive)
 - a) The house is cleaned.
 - b) The servant cleans the house.
 - c) Does the servant clean the house ? (Active)
2. Is the house built by the men? (Passive)
 - a) The house is built by the men.
 - b) The men build the house.
 - c) Do the men build the house ? (Active)
3. Was the enemy attacked yesterday? (Passive)
 - a) The enemy was attacked yesterday.
 - b) Our army attacked the enemy yesterday.
 - c) Did our army attack the enemy yesterday ? (Active)
4. Is a match being played now? (Passive)
 - a) A match is being played now.
 - b) They are playing a match now.
 - c) Are they playing a match now ? (Active)

5. Could the problem be solved?

(Passive)

a) The problem could be solved.

b) They could solve the problem.

c) Could they solve the problem ?

(Active)

6. The books have been collected.

(Passive)

a) The books have been collected.

b) The teacher has collected the books.

c) Has the teacher collected the books ?

(Active)

1. By whom was the dog killed ?

(Passive)

Who killed the dog?

(Active)

في الجملة السابقة **by whom** يتحول إلى **who** و **to be** في الماضي **was** لذلك وضعنا **killed** في زمن الماضي البسيط ثم وضعنا المفعول به **the dog** بعد الفعل مباشرة بعد حذف **To be**.

2. By whom will the lecture be given?

(Passive)

Who will give the lecture?

(Active)

3. Who was punished by the headmaster ?

The headmaster punished. (Ali).

Whom did the headmaster punish?

(Active)

4. Who was caught by the police ?

(Passive)

The police caught. (the thief). Whom did the police catch?

5. Why was the work neglected ?

(Passive)

a) The work was neglected (by the boys).

b) The boys neglected the work ?

c) Why did the boys neglect the work ?

(Active)

6. When will the patient be examined?

(Passive)

a) The patient will be examined (by the doctor).

b) The doctor will examine the patient.

(Active)

c) When will the doctor examine the patient ?

الأمر Order

عند تحويل الأمر من Active إلى Passive

نحذف **Let + be** وتبدأ الجملة بالفعل في المصدر مثال ذلك :

1. Let my mistakes be forgotten. Forget my mistakes.

2. Let my shoes **be** polished. **Polish** my shoes
3. Let the fire **be** put out. **Put** out the fire

Ex. (28 c) Change from Passive to Active :

1. This signpost has been tampered — يعبثُ with.
2. The damaged ship was drawn to harbour.
3. Last year a profit of two million pounds was made.
4. Evening dress will be worn.
5. Someone will have to be found to take her place.
6. This rumour must have been started by our enemies.
7. This scientific theory has now been proved to be false.
8. Were the police informed ?
9. Your money could be put to good use.
10. For a long time the earth was believed to be flat.
11. Is service included ?
12. This copy hasn't been read. The pages haven't been cut.
13. The spare parts are made by a company.
14. Why were cars being stopped at road blocks ?
15. The picture was painted by a famous artist.
16. It can be understood by any student.
17. The exhibition will be opened by the Minister of Art.
18. The plan has been approved of.
19. He will be given an injection.
20. I might be offered a job by an advertising agency.
21. We are shown photographs of the criminal.
22. Are you given a lot of homework?
23. Should all the questions be answered ?
24. We've been lent some money.
25. Was the shop opened yesterday?
26. Can it be changed now?
27. Where were the missing keys found?
28. Let the letter be copied quickly.
29. Let the table be laid.
30. Let the house be cleaned now.

Ex. (28 d) Put the verbs in brackets into the right form :

1. The storyteller (**ask**) to tell the story again.
2. English (**speak**) in many countries.
3. A game (**play**) now.
4. Laws (**must respect**) by everyone.
5. I sat down for a rest while the repairs (**do**).
6. While the tea (**pour**) out, the handle came off the pot.
7. Poor Laila (**run**) over by a bus yesterday.
8. Improvements (**recently, carry**) out.
9. Look, nothing (**do**) ! Everything is in confusion.
10. The poor boy (**kill**) by lightning.
11. No prizes (**win**) by bad pupils.
12. Nothing (**do**) before we came in.
13. These customs (**will do**) away with.
14. Today free meals (**give**) to poor people.
15. The patients (**examine**) just now.
16. This story (**recently hear**) of.
17. My new book (**publish**) next month.
18. At last the problem (**solve**) to everyone's satisfaction.
19. Yesterday all our fish (**steal**) by hungry cats.
20. What tune (**play**) when we came in?

Ex. (29A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Don't think the window.....yet ?
a) was being repaired b) was repaired
c) is being repaired d) has been repaired.
2. During the storm twelve houses.....
a) destroyed b) were destroyed
c) were destroying d) are being destroyed
3. . I noticed this morning that some new houses.....on the land next to my uncle's house.
a) were being built b) are being built
c) are built d) were built
4. . Don't sit on that seat, it.....

4. . Don't sit on that seat, it.....
- a) **has just painted** b) **just has been painted**
 c) **has just been painted.** d) **have just been painted**
5. . Mount Everest.....to be the highest in the world.
- a) **was known** b) **is being known**
 c) **is known** d) **was being known**
6. Do you think the thieves.....soon?
- a) **are caught** b) **will be caught**
 c) **were caught** d) **are being caught**
7. . This room for a fortnight.
- a) **was not cleaned** b) **has not cleaned**
 c) **is cleaned** d) **has not been cleaned**
8. Students.....at the end of the year.
- a) **are going to examine** b) **will examine.**
 c) **are going to be examined.** d) **will be examining**
9. The prisoner escaped but.....a few hours later.
- a) **was caught** b) **caught**
 c) **is caught** d) **was being caught.**
10. The thief.....before he left the country.
- a) **has been arrested** b) **was arresting**
 c) **had been arrested** d) **had arrested**
11. The whole idea.....since he travelled abroad.
- a) **was neglected.** b) **has been neglected**
 c) **had been neglected** d) **was neglecting**
12. . The project in three years' time
- a) **will be carried out** b) **is being carried out**
 c) **will have been carried out** d) **was carried out**
13. . Many new schools.....since 1965.
- a) **were being built** b) **have been built**
 c) **were built** d) **have built**
14. This letter.....three days ago.
- a) **was being written** b) **was written**
 c) **has been written** d) **is being written**

15. This mistake

a) could avoid

c) could be avoided.

b) could be avoiding

d) could be avoid.

16. The rich man hid the money but it.....

a) were stolen

c) were being stolen.

b) was stolen

d) is stolen

17. No announcement about the results so far.

a) is made

c) was made

b) has been made

d) had made

18. The play was said because the lead actor was ill.

a) to be cancelled

c) to having cancelled

b) to have cancelled

d) to have been cancelled

19. The news at six o'clock last night.

a) are announced

c) was announced

b) is announced

d) were announced

20. A lot of children to boarding schools in the old days.

a) were sent

c) have been sent

b) were being sent

d) sent

21. Her feet ache. She all day.

a) has stood

c) was standing

b) has been standing

d) stood

22. "This room looks very nice." "Thank you. We ... last week."

a) had it decorated

c) had decorated it

b) have it decorated

d) are having it decorated

23. "Nagi is a lovely person." "Yes, I consider him ... the nicest person."

a) be

b) is

c) to be

d) being

24. I took the bus to work because my car at the moment.

a) was being serviced

c) is serviced

b) is being serviced

d) was serviced

25. The new bridge next week.

a) will be opened

c) will be opening

b) will open

d) will have opened

26. The thief was made his pocket by the police.

a) to empty out

b) empty out

c) emptied out

d) emptying out

27. Where after the hijacking?

a) did the hostage take

b) the hostages were taken

c) have the hostages taken

d) were the hostages taken

28. Has the rubbish been collected yet? Well, it's not here now so it

a) must collected

b) must have collected

c) must have been collected

d) must be collecting

29. Tom said someone stole his car, is that true? – No, it

I've just seen him driving it.

a) can't have been stolen

b) can be stolen

c) can't have stolen

d) can have been stolen

30. The car seems repaired.

a) having been

b) to have been

c) to having been

d) been

31. My horse needs five times a day.

a) to be fed

b) to being fed

c) been fed

d) to feeding

32. The thief for an hour but he hasn't been caught yet.

a) had chased

b) has chased

c) has been chased

d) was chased

33. By the time I got home, Nagi

a) has left

b) has been leaving

c) had already left

d) left

34. Dinner by Nagi tonight.

a) cooks

b) is cooking

c) is cooked

d) will be cooked

35- The plants watered .

a) is needing

b) need

c) needing

d) need to be

Ex. (29B) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I can't allow anyone to beat me. (myself)
2. Someone should have told us. (been)
3. I was sure someone was following me. (being)
4. We understand the minister is on his way to the airport. (The minister)
5. She doesn't mind people asking her awkward questions. (being)
6. Doctors believe that cigarettes cause cancer. (cigarettes)
7. They should never have allowed the plan to go ahead. (been)
8. Japan introduced the "Bullet train" service some years ago. (was)
9. Walt Disney created the cartoon character Mickey Mouse. (by)
10. We shouldn't give a child everything. (be)
11. The police have recaptured the escaped prisoner. (been)
12. People knew that aspirin help prevent heart disease. (known)
13. I hate people disturbing me. (being)
14. You can answer only four questions. (Only)
15. Your opinion wouldn't be accepted. (No one)
16. I wasn't surprised at the news. (The news)
17. A guide was showing the visitors round. (being)
18. People allege that the bridge is useful (to be)
19. Did they build the garage at the same time as the house? (was)
20. He was said to be the escaped criminal. (People)
21. People say a cigarette had caused the fire in the cinema. (to have)
22. You think that other people upset you. (thought)
23. We need to clean our seats before the interview. (be)
24. You have to answer three questions out of five. (be)
25. You shouldn't have done that. (been)
26. That traffic policeman is watching us. (being)
27. You think the owner of the house is abroad. (to be)

28. He was not allowed to see the contract. (No one)
29. It's necessary to educate children. (be)
30. I can't stand anyone laughing at me. (myself)
31. Please don't leave your car unlocked. (be)
32. Bad people ought to be punished. (The law)
33. Some people consider liberty as more important than anything else. (considered)
34. No one has signed this cheque. (been)
35. People think pollution is much worse. (to be)
36. No one has told my future. (been)
37. She hates people staring at her. (herself)
38. They presented the winners with gold medals. (were)
39. People won't obey the law unless you enforce them. (be)
40. He loves people taking his photograph. (being)
41. Someone has already thought of that idea. (been)
42. Let's wait, someone might offer us a lift. (be)
43. We have to pay for the seats in advance. (paid)
44. The police think the explosion was caused accidentally. (The explosion)
45. People believe that drinking water is contaminated. (to be)
46. You need to polish these boots. (be)
47. Your meals can be brought to your room. (The waiter)
48. Can this drug prolong human life? (be)
49. Your opinion wouldn't be accepted. (no one)
50. He was not allowed to see the contract. (no body)
51. Ali hates people interrupt him (him self)
52. They let me go to the rock concert last week (allowed)
53. Our boss insisted that we all wear a uniform (made)
54. No one knows whether there are any survivors (it)
55. The custom official made us empty our suitcases (were)

The Causative Form

The Causative Form is used when we do not do something ourselves, but we arrange for someone else (usually an expert) to do it for us.

Formation

| | | | | | | |
|---------|---|----------|---|---------|---|------------------|
| Subject | + | Have/Get | + | Object | + | Past Participle |
| ↓ | | ↓ | | ↓ | | ↓ |
| He | | had | | his car | | served last week |

Verb forms in the Causative Form

| | Active Voice | Causative Form |
|---|---|--|
| Verb forms | | |
| <u>Present Simple</u> | We <u>paint the house</u> every year. | We <u>have the house painted</u> every year. |
| <u>Present Progressive</u> | Mary <u>is washing her car</u> . | Mary is <u>having her car washed</u> . |
| <u>Past Simple</u> | He <u>typed</u> three letters yesterday. | He <u>had three letters typed</u> yesterday. |
| <u>Past Progressive</u> | <u>She was cleaning the carpet</u> when I arrived. | She <u>was having the carpet cleaned</u> when I arrived. |
| <u>Future "Will"</u> | We <u>will install</u> the lights next week. | We <u>will have the lights installed</u> next week. |
| <u>Future Progressive</u> | <u>I'll be planting</u> some trees, in the garden tomorrow morning. | <u>I'll be having some trees planted</u> in the garden tomorrow morning. |
| <u>Present Perfect Simple</u> | The <u>girls have repaired</u> their bicycles. | The girls <u>have had their</u> bicycles repaired. |
| <u>Present Perfect Progressive</u> | We <u>'ve been importing</u> clothes from Italy since we opened the shop. | We've <u>been having clothes</u> imported from Italy since we opened the shop. |
| <u>Past Perfect Simple</u> | He <u>had organised the meeting</u> before I called. | He <u>had had the meeting</u> organised before I called. |
| <u>Past Perfect Progressive</u> | They <u>had been photocopying</u> a book | They <u>had been having a book photocopied</u> |

Present
Infinitive
-ing form

when the manager
arrived.
He **managed to repair**
the roof.
I **remember taking**
my blood pressure.

when the manager
arrived.
He **managed to have**
the roof repaired.
I **remember having**
my blood pressure
taken.

Modal verbs

You **should fix the**
leakage in the tank.

You **should have the**
leakage in the tank
fixed.

Imperative

Clean the table,
please.

Have the table
cleaned, please.

Attention

Questions and negations are formed as in the Active Voice: with the auxiliaries do/does in the Present Simple and did in the Past Simple.

- When **did you last have** your eyes **tested**?
- We can use **get** instead of **have**, especially in informal style.
- I **have to get the house painted** this year.

The Causative Form is often used instead of the Passive Voice to express an accident, a misfortune or something that had not been arranged:

- They **had their house broken** into last week.
- Ahmed **had his leg broken** in the car crash.

If we want to mention who performs the action, we can add by + agent at the end of the sentence.

- She always **has her hair dyed by a hairdresser.**

Note

have someone do something = make someone do something, cause them to do it

Mrs. Smith **had her husband** do the shopping

get someone to do something = persuade someone to do something.

Mrs. Smith got **her husband to do** the shopping.

Ex 30A) Choose the correct answer and complete:

- 1) Brian will by the dentist tomorrow.
a) get his teeth polished b) polish his teeth
c) have his teeth polish d) be polishing
- 2) When your new carpet fitted?
a) had you b) did you have
c) you had d) have you
- 3) He often at the dry cleaner's.
a) has his suits cleaned b) has cleaned his suit
c) cleans his suits d) is cleaning
- 4) Debbie knows how to sew and herself.,
a) has all her dresses made
b) gets all her dresses made
c) makes all her dresses
d) is having dresses made
- 5) Please the accounts checked by the accountant first thing tomorrow morning.
a) you have b) have c) will have d) had
- 6) Nagi his passport renewed last week.
a) didn't have b) hadn't
c) doesn't have d) not had
- 7) We postponed because we didn't have enough money.
a) having painted our house
b) have painted our house
c) having our house painted
d) our house painted
- 8) She while shopping yesterday.
a) had stolen her wallet b) stole her wallet
c) has her wallet stolen d) had her wallet stolen
- 9) The teacher the board.
a) had John clean b) had John cleaned
c) had John to clean d) is John cleaning
- 10) If you feel dizzy, you should
a) your blood pressure have checked
b) have your blood pressure checked
c) checked your blood pressure
d) be having your blood pressure checked
- 11) I always to my friends living abroad because I like to keep in touch with them.
a) have letters wrote b) write letters
c) have letters written d) having letters written

12) I would like to for me, as I'm an awful cook.

- a) **having my cooking done**
- b) **have done my cooking**
- c) **have my cooking done**
- d) **be doing my cooking**

13) Janette her organize a party at her house.

- a) **got me helping**
- b) **got me helped**
- c) **got my help**
- d) **got me to help**

14) your newspaper delivered to your house every morning?

- a) **Have**
- b) **Do you have**
- c) **Will have**
- d) **Do you**

15) Here are your photos. We at the photographer's.

- a) **got them developed**
- b) **develop them**
- c) **got developed them**
- d) **got them develop**

16) We have had the roof of our house

- a) **to replace**
- b) **replace**
- c) **been replaced**
- d) **replaced**

Ex 30 B) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Please arrange for these parcels to be posted as soon as possible. (have)

2- My car will need servicing before I go on holiday. (having)

3- They've asked a carpenter to build a woodshed in their backyard. (They will)

4- An optician must test your eyesight before you take your driving test. (tested)

5- Someone broke Gary's front teeth while he was playing football. (had)

6- A plumber is repairing my dishwasher this afternoon. (repaired)

7- Our trip was organized by a travel agency. (had)

8- Nagi hasn't visited the dentist since last year. (checked)

9- Someone has stolen my handbag and I'm very upset. (had)

10- Julie, does the cleaner clean your house twice a week? (have)

11- A bank clerk was cashing my cheque when the robbers entered the bank. (cashed)

12- You should have someone paint your house this summer. (painted)

13- Someone has stolen my bike. (had)

14- She is getting a friend to make the cake. (made)

Direct & Indirect Speech

ينقسم المباشر والغير المباشر كالآتي :

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Statement | ١- الجملة الخبرية |
| 2. Question | ٢- السؤال |
| 3. Command and request | ٣- الأمر والطلب |
| 4. Exclamation | ٤- التعجب |

الجملة الخبرية Statement

يوضع الكلام المباشر بين قوسين

ولتحويل جملة خبرية من Direct إلى Indirect نتبع الآتي :

١ - خارج الأقواس

المباشر Direct

says

says to

shall say

said

said to

غير المباشر Indirect

says-declares

tells-declares

shall say-shall declare

said-declared

told-declared.

٢ - تحذف الأقواس وتربط بـ that

٣ - الضمائر داخل الأقواس تستبدل بضمائر تعود على الفاعل والمفعول به خارج الأقواس.

٤ - إذا كان الزمن خارج الأقواس مضارع بسيط أو مضارع مستمر أو تام لا يتغير الزمن داخل الأقواس.

٥ - إذا كان الزمن خارج الأقواس ماضي بسيط أو ماضي مستمر أو ماضي تام يتغير الزمن داخل الأقواس حسب الجدول الآتي :

Direct

Present Simple

Past Simple

Present Prefect

Present continuous مضارع مستمر

will-shall-can-may

must-ought to

Indirect

Pas Simple ماضي بسيط

Past Perfect ماضي تام

Past Perfect ماضي تام

Past Continuous ماضي مستمر

would-should-could-might

must(had to)-ought to

جدول الكلمات التي تتغير عند التحويل من Direct إلى Indirect

Direct

now

Indirect

then/immediately, at that time

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| this | that |
| these | those |
| here | there |
| thus | so |
| to day | that day/the same day |
| tomorrow | the next day or the following day |
| next week | the following week/the week after |
| tomorrow morning | the following morning |
| yesterday | the previous day or the day before |
| yesterday afternoon | the previous afternoon |
| last night | the previous night or the night before |
| a year ago | a year before or the previous year |
| the day before yesterday | two days before |
| the day after tomorrow | in two day's time |
| come | go |
| bring | take |

هذه الكلمات لا تتغير إذا كان الزمن خارج الأقواس مضارع أو مستقبل.

Examples:

1. He says "I am very happy today" Direct
He says **that the is very happy today.** Indirect
 2. He said "I am very happy today" Direct
He said **that he was very happy that day.** Indirect
- في الجملتين السابقتين لاحظ الفرق بين استعمال المضارع و الماضي خارج الأقواس كما نلاحظ تغير الضمائر داخل الأقواس حسب المعنى بما يعود على الفاعل خارج الأقواس.
3. He says to us "I am a student" Direct
He tells us **that he is a student.** Indirect
 4. The boy said to me "I am in the class and am writing" Direct
The boy told me **that he was in the class and was writing.** Indirect
 5. Mary said to me "Our train will arrive tomorrow" Direct
Mary told me **that their train would arrive the next day.** Indirect
 6. She said, "I was at Port Said yesterday". Direct

- She said **that she had been at Port Said the day before.**
Indirect
7. Ali said, "I am preparing the lesson now".
Direct
- Ali said **that he was preparing the lesson then.** Indirect
8. I said to the boys, "You have neglected your duties"
Direct
- I told the boys **that they had neglected their duties.**
Indirect
9. He said to me, "This pupil can answer these questions"
Direct
10. He told me that that pupil could answer those questions.
Indirect

ملحوظة هامة :

١ - عند ربط جملتين بين الأقواس والفاعل واحد بالنسبة للجملتين تستعمل **and that** أو **and added that** مثال ذلك :

"I prepared my passport yesterday", Mary said.
"Tomorrow I shall travel abroad".
Direct

Mary said that she had prepared her passport the day before **and added that (and that)** the next day she would travel abroad.

Indirect

٢ - إذا وجدت جملتين خبريتين داخل الأقواس لكل منهما فاعل تربطهم بـ **and** ثم تضع كل فاعل أمام جملة ونضع **that** أمام كل جملة مثال ذلك :

He said, "I found this book". "It is my book" said Mary.
Direct

He said that he had found that book **and** Mary said that it was her book
Indirect

٣ - إذا كان المخاطب داخل الأقواس عند التحويل يخرج من الجملة الرئيسية مثال ذلك
I said, "I want to speak to you Ali"
Direct

I told Ali that I wanted to speak to him.
Indirect

٤ - الحقائق توضع في زمن المضارع البسيط مهما كان الزمن خارج الأقواس مثال ذلك :

He said, "The earth is round".
Direct

He said that the earth is round.
Indirect

5. Would, should, ought, had better, might, used to, could and must.

هذه الكلمات لا تتغير في التحويل من Direct إلى Indirect

1. He said, "I **might be** there".
Direct

He said that he **might be** there.

Indirect

2. She said, "I **would help** him if I could.

Direct

She said that she **would help** him if she could.

Indirect

الجملة الشرطية النوع الثاني تبقى كما هي :

6. **It is time, used to, wish, would rather.** كذلك الأفعال التي تأتي بعد.

1. He said, "If my children were older, I would emigrate".

He said that if his children were older, he would emigrate.

2. He said, "I wish I knew.

Direct

He said that he wished he knew.

Indirect

3. She said, "I'd rather Ali went".

Direct

She said that she'd rather Ali went.

Indirect

Ex. (31 a) Put the following into indirect (reported) speech.

1. "I have something to show you", I said to her.
2. "He said, "My wife has just been made a judge".
3. "I'll come with you as soon as I am ready", she said to me.
4. "I have made a mistake that I must correct at once". he said.
5. "I'll bring you some tea when you have finished" he said to them.
6. "I'm going away to-morrow, mother", he said.
7. "It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday", I remarked.
8. They said, "We have a lift but very often it doesn't work".
9. "I'll sit up till she comes in, but I hope she won't be late" she said.
10. "You've got my umbrella", I said to Samy. "Yours is in your bedroom".
11. "We like working on Sundays because we get double pay" they said.
12. "I can't live on my salary", said Kamal, "I'll have to offer to do overtime".
13. "We were waiting for the school bus", said the children "It's late again".
14. "I'd like to come to the phone". said Mary "but I'm bathing the babies and they will drown if I leave them alone in the bath".

15. "I'm sure your son will do very well at the university Mrs.Laila"
Said the headmaster. "He's done very well here".
16. "I found an old Roman coin in the garden yesterday" , he said
"and I'm going to the museum this afternoon".
17. He said, "My wife wants to take a job but I'd rather she
concentrated on our home".
18. The captain said, "If it rains this afternoon it will be too
wet to play the match to morrow".
19. My brother said, "You may take my car if you like, I shan't be
needing it to morrow or the day after?".
20. I shall say to him, "There is no room for you in the house"
- 21 Everyone says, "This man did not steal the money".
22. He says, "Nagi has written me a long letter".
23. I said, "You sing nicely Mary".
24. My father said "I have been to my office today".
25. "I don't know what your father will say when he sees what a
mess your puppies have made of this five pound note" said
my mother.

في حالة التحويل من indirect إلى direct اتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة :

Ex:(31 B) Change into direct speech :

1. The newsboy said that he had sold all his papers.
2. The papers say that an earthquake has taken place in
Japan.
3. The boy told me that he had been ill the day before.
4. He says that he may come tomorrow.
3. The father told his daughter that he had visited Paris long
time before.
4. He said that the war was over and people could return to
their home.
7. No one told me that I had to be present.
8. They said that that man was not guilty of theft.
9. He told me that he would return that day if he could.
5. The station master said that the train had gone and that
there was not another until the next day.
11. Sherin told me that I should have a rest today.

Questions

لتحويل سؤال إلى **Indirect** اتبع الآتي :

| Direct | Indirect |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| say | ask-enquire, want to know |
| shall say | shall ask, shall enquire, |
| said (said to) | asked-enquired, |
| asked | wanted to know |

٢- إذا بدأ السؤال داخل الأقواس بـ : **verb to be – to do – to have**
أو إحدى الأفعال الناقصة الآتية :

shall - should - will-would - can - could - may - might - must - ought to.

عند التحويل إلى **indirect** تحذف الأقواس وتربط بـ **whether** أو **If**

٣- إذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام مثل :

How - when - why - who - which - whom - whose - what - How many - How much , etc.

عند التحويل إلى **indirect** تحذف الأقواس وتوضع آداة الاستفهام كما هي (تعتبر أداة ربط)

- ٤- يحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية بمعنى أن يوضع الفاعل قبل الفعل.
- ٥- تستبدل الضمائر داخل الأقواس بضمائر أخرى تعود على الفاعل والمفعول به خارج الأقواس حسب معنى الجملة.
- ٦- إذا كان الزمن خارج الأقواس مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام أو مضارع مستمر أو مستقبل لا يتغير الزمن داخل الأقواس.
- ٧- إذا كان الزمن خارج الأقواس ماضي بسيط أو تام يتغير الزمن داخل الأقواس حسب الجدول السابق
- ٨- يتبع جدول الظروف والصفات السابق في الجملة الخبرية.
- ٩- تحذف علامة الاستفهام.

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. He says, "Is the weather good today?" | Direct |
| He asks if the weather is good today. | Indirect |
| 2. He said, "Is the weather good today?" | Direct |
| He asked if the weather was good that day? | Indirect |
| 3. I said to Ali, "Do you believe this story?" | Direct |
| I asked Ali if he believed that story. | Indirect |

لاحظ الفرق بين استعمال المضارع والماضي خارج الأقواس.

في المثال السابق لاحظ الفعل معه **(do)** كأداة استفهام لذلك يكون مضارع بسيط وفي التحويل إلى **indirect** يوضع في زمن الماضي البسيط وتحذف **do**

4. I said to Ali "Don't you believe this story?" **Direct**
I asked Ali if he did not believe that story. **Indirect**
 في المثال السابق لاحظ **Don't** أداة نفى للمضارع البسيط تحول إلى **did not** وهي نفى الماضي البسيط؟

5. I said to her "Did you believe this story?" **Direct**
I asked her if she had believed that story. **Indirect**
 في المثال السابق **did believe** في الماضي البسيط يحول إلى **had believed** ماضي تام عند التحويل إلى **Indirect**

6. I said to the boys, "Are you busy today?" **Direct**
I asked the boys, if they were busy that day. **Indirect**
 7. I said to the boys, "Were you busy yesterday?" **Direct**
I asked the boys if they had been busy the day before. **Indirect**

8. He said to me, "Can you solve this problem?" **Direct**
He asked me if I could solve that problem. **Indirect**
 9. I said to him, "Where will you spend the holiday?" **Direct**
I asked him where he would spend the holiday. **Indirect**

10. I said to him, "When do you go abroad?" **Direct**
I asked him when he went abroad. **Indirect**

ملحوظة : إذا وجد سؤالين بين الأقواس أحدهما بأداة استفهام والآخر يبدأ بـ **verb to do – to be – to have** أو إحدى الأفعال الناقصة تستعمل أداة الاستفهام كدالة ربط وتستعمل **whether** أو **if** في الجملة الأخرى مثال ذلك:

I said to the boys, "Where did you go yesterday?"
"Can you answer this exercise?" **Direct**

I asked the boys where they had gone the day before and if they could answer that exercise. **Indirect**

١- إذا وجد بين الأقواس سؤال وجملة خبرية يوضع قبل السؤال **asked** وقبل الجملة الخبرية **said** أو **told** ويحول السؤال بطريقة السؤال وتحول الجملة الخبرية بطريقة الجملة الخبرية.

I said to Ali "You can solve all your problem"

"Will you follow my advice?"

I told Ali that he could solve all his problems and asked if he would follow my advice. **Indirect.**

٢- **Yes** أو **No** توجد في الكلام المباشر ردا على سؤال بالنفي أو الإثبات عند التحويل إلى **indirect** تأتي هذه التعبيرات إلى الجملة الخبرية التي تمثلها مثال ذلك :

1. He said to me, "Did you answer this exercise?"

I replied, "Yes". or I replied, "No".

Direct

2. He asked me if I had answered that exercise.

I replied that I had answered it. or I replied that I had not answered it.

Indirect

٣- هناك أسئلة تعبر عن الطلب مثال ذلك :

"What shall I say mother?" she said

Indirect

She asked her mother what she would say.

(request for advice)

٤- أسئلة تعبر عن الغرض

Shall I bring you some tea?

Direct

He offered to bring me some tea.

Indirect

٥- أسئلة تعبر عن الاقتراح

"Shall we meet at the theatre?"

Direct

He suggested meeting at the theatre.

Indirect

٦- هناك أسئلة تبدأ بـ **will you / would you / could you** ولكنها تعبر عن

الأمر والطلب .

1. He said, "Will you help me please?" (request)

Direct

He asked me to help him.

Indirect

2. He said, "Will you have lunch with me tomorrow?"

Direct

He invited me / asked me to have lunch with him the following day.

Indirect

3. "Will you post the letter?" he said.

Direct

He asked if I would post the letter.

Indirect

Or He told me to post the letter.

4. "Could / would you wait a moment?" he said.

Direct

He asked me to wait a moment.

Indirect

5. He said "Could you come to dinner to morrow?" (invitation)

He asked her to dinner the next day.

Indirect

6. "Could I have a drink?" he said

Direct

He asked for a drink.

Indirect

7. "Would you mind waiting?" he said

Direct

He asked me to wait.

Indirect

Ex. (32 A) Put the following into indirect (reported) speech :

1. "Why are you looking through the keyhole?" I said to him.
2. "Why did you travel first class?" I asked him.
3. . He said "Where am I supposed to go now?"
4. "Can you read the last line on the chart?" the oculist asked her.
5. "Did they understand what you said to them?" He inquired.
6. "Who left the banana skin on the front doorstep?" said my mother.
7. "Have you gone completely mad?" I asked "Do you want to blow us all up?"
8. "Have you been to the British Museum?" ,he said.
9. "Could I speak to Mrs. Pitt?" said the caller.
10. "Where were you last night, Mr. Jone?" he said.
11. "What else did you see?" I asked the boy.
12. "When will you decorate the kitchen ?" ,she said
13. Have you done this sort of work before?" said his employer.
14. "Could I have a cup of coffee?" he said.
15. "Would you mind looking inside your bag. Madam?" said the policeman.
16. "Are you going to see him at the station?" I asked her.
17. "Shall I help you?" he said to me.
18. "Could I have your name and address, please?" said the travel agent to my friend.
19. "Could I have five pence, please?" said the boy "I want to buy an ice-cream".
20. "Shall I send it round to your hotel, sir?" the shop assistant asked the tourist. "I'm not staying in the town" said the tourist "I'll take it with me".
21. "Would you like a lift?" Mary said. "Which way are you going?" I said.
22. "Could we see the manager, please?" said two men "Have you an appointment?" I said
23. Did any of you actually see the accident happen?" said the policeman.

24. "Why aren't you taking the exams?" said Nagi.
25. "Where can I park my car?" she asked the policeman.
26. Who do you want to speak to?" said the telephonist.
27. "How many sleeping pills have you taken?" He asked her.
28. "How much did you pay for your bicycle?" I said to Nagi.
29. The headmaster said "Were they present yesterday?"

Ex. (32B) Change into direct :

1. He asked me if I had a passport.
2. The policeman inquired if I knew my way.
3. They asked whether I had seen the thief.
4. The gardener asked me when he ought to sow the seeds.
5. I asked him if he would return as I had no money.
6. The tourist asked the policeman where the museum was.
5. The headmaster asked why so many boys were absent that day.
6. The teacher asked the student why he wanted to learn English.
9. They all inquired what the doctor had done to save his life.
10. The tourist inquired if there was room in the train for himself and his family.
11. The teacher asked me why I had not yet completed my composition.
12. I asked the builder when the house would be finished.
13. The people asked the speaker why he had wasted their time speaking about matters of no interest.
14. We asked him if he had brought the money or not.
15. The judge asked by whom he had been robbed and how much he had lost.

الأمر والطلب Command and Request

- ١- يبدأ الأمر والطلب بالفعل في المصدر.
- ٢- إذا كان الكلام بين الأقواس من شخص أعلى رتبة إلى شخص أقل تحول
commanded أو ordered إلى said to
- ٣- إذا كان الكلام بين الأقواس نصيحة تحول
advised إلى said to
- ٤- إذا كان الكلام بين الأقواس رجاء وعادة ما يبدأ بكلمة please تحول
please begged أو prayed ثم تحذف please

٥- إذا كان الكلام بين الأقواس من شخص إلى آخر مساو له تحول

said to إلى **asked** أو **requested** أو **told**.

٦- عند التحويل إلى **indirect** تحذف الأقواس ونستعمل (المصدر + **to**) الذي تبدأ به الجملة.

٧- إذا بدأ الأمر أو الطلب بالنفي **Don't** تحذف وتربط بـ (المصدر + **not to**)

٨- تستبدل الضمائر داخل الأقواس حسب الفاعل والمفعول به خارج الأقواس.

٩- إذا وجدت جملة خبرية مع الأمر والطلب تحول بطريقة الجملة الخبرية أي يسبقها **that**.

وإذا وجد سؤال يحول بطريقة السؤال أي يسبقه **asked**

Study the following examples.

أدرس الأمثلة الآتية :-

1. I said to the servant. "Clean the room and shut the door"

Direct

I ordered the servant to clean the room and shut the door.

Indirect.

2. The teacher said to the boys, "Write your answers clearly"

Direct

The teacher advised the boys to write their answers clearly.

Indirect

2. The pupil said to the teacher, "Please explain this point again".

Direct

The pupil begged the teacher to explain that point again.

Indirect.

4. Ali said to his friend "Give me your bicycle for half an hour"

Direct

Ali asked his friend to give him his bicycle for half an hour.

Indirect

5. The mother said to the child, "Don't be afraid"

Direct

The mother told the child not to be afraid.

Indirect

6. The doctor said to me, "Stay in bed and take this medicine.

I will visit you tomorrow"

Direct

The doctor advised me to stay in bed and take that medicine and said that he would visit me the next day.

Indirect

في المثال السابق توجد نصيحة وتوجد جملة خبرية الأولى تسبقها **advised** وتربط بـ **to** والثانية تسبقها **said** وتربط بـ **that** وتحول بطريقة الجملة الخبرية.

6. The poor man said to me "Please give me some food to eat,

Will you help me cross the road?"

Direct

The poor man begged me to give him some food to eat and asked if I would help him cross the road. Indirect

في المثال السابق يوجد رجاء يبدأ بكلمة **please** ويوجد سؤال الجملة الأولى (رجاء) يسبقها **begged** وتربطها بـ **to** والسؤال يسبقه **and asked** ويحول بطريقة السؤال.

يدعو **invite** يحذر **warn** يذكر **remind** يحث **urge** يوصي **recommend** تستعمل هذه الكلمات في الأمر أو الطلب. **boast of / about + verb + ing** يتفاخر

1. She said, "Remember to thank Mr. Samy when you are saying goodbye". Direct

- She reminded them to thank Mr. Samy when they were saying goodbye. Indirect

2. "Don't go near the water children" she said. Direct

- She warned the children not to go near the water. Indirect

3. "Go on, Nagi, hit him" She said. Direct

- She urged Nagi to hit the other boy. Indirect

Let's, Let him / them.

Let's عادة ما تعبر عن اقتراح وتحول إلى **Suggest**

1. He said, "Let's leave the case at the station" Direct

He suggested that they / we should leave the case at the station.

or He suggested leaving the case at the station. Indirect

2. He said, "Let's not say anything about it till we hear more facts". Direct

He suggested not saying anything / saying nothing about it till they / we heard more facts. Indirect

أحيانا تستعمل **Let's** ردا على اقتراح مثبت وعند التحويل تستعمل.

3. He opposed the idea. or was against it.

"Let's sell the house" said Samy. "Let's not" said Nagi. Direct

Samy suggested selling the house but Nagi was against it. Indirect

تستعمل **Let him / them** للاقتراح أيضا.

1. He said "Let them go to their consul" Direct

He suggested their going to their consul.

He suggested that they should go to their consul.

Indirect

permit & allow

Let أيضا تعني

2. "Let him come with us, mother, I'll take care of him" I said.

Direct

I asked my mother to let him come with us and promised to take care of him.

Indirect

Ex. (33 A) Put the following into indirect (reported) speech.

1. He said, "Get out of my way".
2. "Climb in through the window" he ordered him.
3. "Open your bag, please," said the store detective.
4. "Don't worry about anything, Mrs. Pitt", said her lawyer "Leave it all to me".
5. "Follow that car" the detective said to the taxi driver.
6. "Have confidence in me" urged the doctor.
7. "Take me up to the 3rd floor" I said to him.
8. "Don't argue with your father" I said to him.
9. "Don't make a sound" he said in a whisper.
10. "Wait for me at the bridge" said the young man.
11. "Make good use of your time. You won't get such an opportunity again" he said to us.
12. "Go and get me a paper, and come straight back" he said to me.
13. "Don't bathe when the red flag is flying" said the life guard to them.
14. "Don't shelter under a tree in a thunderstorm" he said to me.
15. "Read for yourself if you don't believe what I say", he told me
16. "Stand by the window and tell me if anyone goes into the house opposite", I said to her.
17. "Let's go to the cinema" Mary said to them.
18. The police officer said "Let's leave the wrecked car here for a bit. "It may remind other drivers to be more careful".
19. "Salah made this mess, Let him clear it up" said his father.
20. "Let me explain", she said, "Don't be in such a hurry".

Ex. (33 B) Change into direct :

1. I ordered him to leave the place quickly.
2. He begged the headmaster to allow him enter the school the next day.
3. They advised me to travel by plane.

4. My friend told me to look carefully before I answered.
5. The doctor advised the patient to give up smoking.
6. The policeman ordered the driver to stop and to give him his licence.
7. He told me not to go away before I had permission.
8. He begged his father to forgive his mistake and that he would not do it again.
9. The servant begged his master to give him permission to visit his village.
10. He asked the guide to be ready at five o'clock.
11. I begged him to find the place of the thief.
12. He begged me to help him with some food.
13. He suggested giving her medicine.
14. He suggested that Ali and I should go ahead and get the tickets.
15. She told me to look where I was going as the road was full of holes and very badly lit.

Exclamation التعجب

التعجب عبارة عن جملة خبرية ولكنها توضح الدهشة و الندم أو الأسف أو الفرح و يطبق عليها تقريبا نفس قواعد الجملة الخبرية مع شئ من التغيير البسيط.

1. Study the following examples carefully.

1. The girl said, "What a beautiful flower!". **Direct**

لاحظ في الجملة السابقة أن **what** هنا ليست للسؤال ولكن للتعجب والجملة بين الأقواس تعنى (يا لجمال الزهرة) وعند تحولها إلى **indirect** نقول

The girl exclaimed that the flower was very beautiful.

يلاحظ أننا نستعمل **that** للربط كذلك إذا لم يوجد فعل نضع من عندنا **To Be** في الزمن المناسب كما وضعنا **very** قبل الصفة لتوضح المعنى.

2. The tourist said, "What a great Pyramid!". **Direct**

The tourist exclaimed that the Pyramid is very great. **Indirect**

3. The boys said "Hurrah! We have taken a prize" **Direct**

They boys **said with joy** that they had taken a prize"

Indirect

يلاحظ أن كلمة **Hurrah** تعبير عن الفرح تتحول إلى **with joy** وبقية الجملة تحولت كالخبرية تماما.

4. The pupil shouted, "Hurrah! I have succeeded" **Direct**

The pupil **shouted with joy** that he had succeeded. **Indirect**

5. The man said, "**What a fool** I have been!" **Direct**
 The man **said with regret** that he had been a fool. **Indirect**
 لاحظ استعمال **with regret** (بندم) لأن معنى الجملة يعطى الدليل على الندم
6. My friend said to me, "**What a wonderful suit** you have!" **Direct**
 My friend **told me with admiration** that I had a wonderful suit. **Indirect**
 نلاحظ في الجملة السابقة أن الكلام بين الأقواس يدل على الإعجاب لذلك استعملنا عبارة **with admiration** بإعجاب.

- | Direct | Indirect |
|--|---|
| 1. He said "Thank you". | He thanked me. |
| 2. He said "Curse the wind" | He cursed the wind |
| 3. He said "Good morning" | He greeted / wished me good morning. |
| 4. He said :Happy Christmas" | He wished me a happy Christmas. |
| 5.He said "Congratulation" | He congratulated me |
| 6. He said "Liar" | He called me a liar. |
| 7. She said " Ugh! It's a Snake . Don't get near it children." | |

Direct

She **exclaimed with disgust** باستياء that it was a snake and told the children not to get near it

Indirect

Ex. (33c) Change the following into indirect (Reported) Speech :

1. He shouted, "What a mistake I have made!"
2. My friend said to me , "How beautiful your flat is!".
3. One of the enemy soldiers said, "Alas ! there is no hope in resistance".
4. He shouted, "What a noise you are making!".
5. "What a wonderful idea you have". said my friend.
6. The tourist said, "What an astonishing monument you have!".
7. The girl said, "Hurrah! We have conquered our enemy".
8. The people said, "Hurrah ! We have won the battle."
9. The poor man said, "Alas! I have lost my only child".
10. The lazy boy said, "What a great chance I have missed!".

11. "Hurrah, I've passed my exam !" he cried "Congratulation" I said to him.
12. "Many returns of your birthday" we said "Thank you", said the boy.
13. "Welcome home, my dear" said his wife.
14. "Could you come to tea to night" he asked "Thanks very much "I'll love to.
15. "What a nuisance ! I'll have to do it all over again" he exclaimed.

Ex. (34A) Choose the correct answer :

1. He asked me to stay.

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| a) how long I was going | b) how far I was going |
| c) how long was I going | d) how long I am going. |
2. I want to know what

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) do those two boys do | b) are those two boys doing |
| c) those two boys are doing | d) those too boys do |
3. I told him about what had happened.

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| a) not to worry | b) not worrying |
| c) not to have worried | d) not worried |
4. He promised that he as soon as he could

| | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| a) will do | b) would do |
| c) would have done | d) will be doing |
5. The pupils keep asking me if they the examination.

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| a) can pass | b) could pass |
| c) could be passing | d) could have passed |
6. They asked me whether I the news.

| | |
|----------------|---------------|
| a) was hearing | b) have heard |
| c) had heard | d) hear |
7. My friend told me that I rest that day.

| | |
|---------------|--------------|
| a) would have | b) will have |
| c) shall have | d) can have |
8. The teacher asked if they there the next week.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|-----------|---------|
| a) will be | b) would be | c) can be | d) were |
|------------|-------------|-----------|---------|

9. The teacher asked the student why he to learn English.
a) wants b) wanted
c) has wanted d) was wanting
10. They advised me my time.
a) not to waste b) don't waste
c) should not waste d) waste not
11. The police ordered the driver.....
a) to stop b) stopping
c) that he should stop d) that to stop
12. The captain ordered his sailors the robe.
a) to let go b) to go let c) to let d) let go
13. He exclaimed that the match very interesting.
a) is b) was c) has been d) was being
14. The pupils asked the teacher when
a) will the holiday begin
b) the holiday would begin
c) would the holiday have begun
d) does the holiday begin
15. My boss wanted to know whether ... the documents or not.
a) had I sent b) if I sent
c) if I had sent d) I had sent
16. They suggested the archaeological site.
a) that visit b) visiting c) to visit d) to visiting
17. He warned us not the dog.
a) stroke b) to stroking
c) to stroke d) stroking
18. Paul asked Sally when go out with him.
a) would she b) will she
c) she will d) she would
19. He said he out the previous night.
a) has gone b) had gone
c) would go d) could go
20. She said she back the next year.
a) would come b) will come
c) is coming d) has come

21. He me to see a doctor.
a) permitted b) suggested
c) advised d) explained
22. She said she ... forward to the party the following weekend.
a) would be looking b) has been looking
c) was looking d) is looking
23. The policeman asked the driver
a) whether he has been speeding
b) if he had been speeding
c) whether had he been speeding
d) if he is speeding.
24. He that the meal was very lovely.
a) exclaimed b) complained
c) apologized d) ordered
25. He of being the strongest of all.
a) apologized b) ordered
c) boasted d) complained

- 1- "Are you going to the post office?" (asked)
- 2- She apologized she had wasted much time. (said)
- 3- He complained that he had lost his money the previous day. (said)
- 4- He wondered whether I had bought a new car. (said)
- 5- She wanted to know if I would help her with her homework (said)
- 6- Salwa felt sorry she didn't phone earlier. (apologized)
- 7- He said to me, "Did you have a good day at school"? (whether)
- 8- "How long have you been waiting?" (asked her)
- 9- I said to her, "You must talk to your parents about your problems." (advised)
- 10- "Let's play a game." Ali said . (suggested)
- 11- "Don't forget to come half an hour early tomorrow, Samy" (reminded)

- 12- "Please, don't make an official complaint." he said
(persuaded)
- 13- "I don't think you should go to England in winter," my father said to me.
(advised)
- 14- "You're late again Engy." I said
(blamed)
- 15- He said he wouldn't lend her any money.
(decided)
- 16- I'll bring the book back tomorrow.
(promised)
- 17- Why don't we go to a restaurant for our dinner.
(suggested)
- 18- He said he had made a terrible mistake.
(apologized)
- 19- He said he wouldn't answer any question.
(refused)
- 20- He said he would bring back the book the next day.
(promised)
- 21- Why don't we put a better lock on the door?
(suggested)
- 22- I wasn't there when the accident happened.
(denied)
- 23- I'll carry your case for you.
(offered)
- 24- I am very pleased that we shall meet again soon.
(looking)
- 25- He felt sorry because he couldn't answer your letter.
(apologized)
- 26- I told Samy not to forget to take his passport.
(reminded)
- 27- Nagy made up his mind to leave the place quickly.
(insisted)
- 28- The teacher said the pupils didn't pay attention to what he had said.
(accused)
- 29- The teacher was angry that Omer neglected his work.
(blamed)
- 30- My father expressed his pleasure when I passed my exams.
(congratulated)
- 31- Sameh felt sorry he missed the chance for a prize.
(regretted)
- 32- Mother told her kids that they shouldn't touch the electric wires.
(warned)
- 33- He carried my suitcase, I thanked him.
(carrying)
- 34- Can I borrow your camera?
(mind)
- 35- They told him it was fascinating that he had won the first prize.
(congratulated)
- 36- Mary says she is happy to work as a hostess.
(mind)
- 37- I'm sorry, I didn't join the Faculty of Medicine.
(regret)
- 38- I am very pleased that we shall spend the mid-year holiday in Aswan.
(looking)
- 39- I'm sorry, I arrived late.
(Excuse me)

- 40- Do you think you could possibly close the window? **(mind)**
 41- He said he thought it would be a good idea to ask the tourist information center. **(suggested)**
 42- You can choose where to go in Europe with this ticket. **(can go)**
 43- Do you have any objection to my smoking? **(object)**
 44- You ought to check the weather before driving to Alexandria. **(better)**
 45- Really, I'll go with you to the dentist. **(She promised)**
 46- My father says that he isn't angry to do this kind of work. **(mind)**
 47- You shouldn't drive alone at night. **(better)**
 48- We went to the movie, but it was a bad movie. We wasted our time and money. **(shouldn't have)**
 49- Your father is upset because you didn't write him a letter. **(should have)**
 50- It was my habit to get up early in the morning but now I get up late. **(used)**

Infinitive And Gerund

The Infinitive المصدر

الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها المصدر مع to

Learn, remember, forget ينسى promise يعد swear يقسم
 consent يوافق agree يقبل neglect يهمل refuse يرفض propose
 يفشل fail يحاول attempt يحاول ويسعى try endeavor
 regret يندم regret يفترح
 care, hope, hesitate يتردد prepare, decide, determine يتعهد
 cease ينظم يرتب arrange يبدو seem يشرف على- يتمكن manage

- 1- He **promised** to obey me. 2- We **hope** to start to morrow.

١- الأفعال الناقصة يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون to

٢- أفعال يأتي بعدها المصدر أو المفعول + المصدر

want, wish, love, hate يكره like, prefer يفضل ask, help, expect
 ينوي يقصد intend يقصد ويعنى mean يبرجو beg يتوقع

- 1- I **want** to go I **want** you to go.

- 2- I **asked** to speak to the manager. I **asked** her to speak to the manager

3. They **helped** to push the car. They **helped** us to push the car.

4. I **expect** to be there I **expect** him to be there.

٣- أفعال يأتي بعدها المفعول به + المصدر

tell, order يجبر compel يلزم يدعو - allow يسمح permit يسمح
 urge يحث advise, tempt يغري encourage يشجع invite, oblige,
 teach, instruct يعلم warn يحذر request يطلب forbid يمنع show
 how, remind يذكر

1. He **told us to meet** him here.
2. She **showed them how to open** the safe.

كذلك المبني للمجهول.

1. We **were told to meet** him here.
2. They **were shown how to open** the safe.

٤- أفعال الشعور يأتي بعدها المفعول به + المصدر بدون to

see, feel, hear.

watch, make, let, bid يطلب يأمر -

كذلك الأفعال

1. I **heard her leave** the house.
2. I **saw him pick** it up.
3. They **made us work** all night.
4. He **let them go**.

٥- العبارات
 would rather, would sooner, rather than
 sooner than, had better. to يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون

Mary, You **had better tell** him that you have lost it.
 Nagi, I **would rather / sooner wait** a few days, it may turn up.
 you **had better not be** late

Rather / sooner than see it wasted, his mother ate it herself
 (= She didn't want to see it wasted so she ate it)

٦- حروف الجر but - except يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون to

1. There was nothing to do **but wait** till he came back.
2. He will do anything **except lend** you money.

٧- يستعمل المصدر للتعبير عن غرض.

1. He **went to London to learn** English.
2. They **came in quietly so as not to** wake the children.

٨- يستعمل المصدر بعد

The first, the second, the third (etc.)
 1. He loves parties, he is always **the first to come** and the
last to leave (the first who comes and the last who leaves).

2. He is **the second man to be killed** in this way.
3. She was **the only one to survive** the crash.

٩- يمكن استعمال المصدر بعد الأسماء أو الضمائر ليوضح كيف تستخدم الأسماء أو الضمائر.

1. I have **letters to write** (= that I must write).
2. Would you like **something to drink**?

3. He said "I can't go to the party.

I haven't **anything to wear** (= that I can wear).

4. **A house to let** = a house that the owner wants to let.

١٠- المصدر يأتي بعد الصفة + اسم أو ضمير.

1. It is **good of you to help me**.

2. It was **clever of him to find** his way here.

3. That's **a stupid place to park** a car.

4. It **was a strange** time to choose.

١١- يستعمل المصدر بعد الصفة.

1. I was **delighted to see** him.

2. He'll be **angry to find** that nothing has been done.

3. I'm **sorry to say** I can't find your key anywhere.

13. It is / was + adjective + infinitive.

1. It is **lovely to see** so much open country.

2. It was **dreadful to find** oneself in such a place.

١٢- يستعمل المصدر مع **too + adjective / adverb + to + infinitive**

adjective + enough to + infinitive.

so + adjective / adverb + as + infinitive.

1. You are **too young to understand** (= you don't understand because you are too young).

2. It was **too late to do** anything (= he couldn't do anything).

3. You are **old enough to know** better.

4. He was **intelligent enough to turn** off the gas.

5. He was **so foolish as to leave** his car unlocked.

١٣- يستعمل المصدر كفاعل.

1. **To obey the law** is everyone's duty.

2. **To save money** is useful.

3. **To lean out of** the window is dangerous.

يمكن أن تستعمل **It** في أول الجملة بدلا من المصدر.

1. **It** is everyone's duty to obey the law.

2. **It** is useful to save money.

2. **It** is dangerous to lean out of the window.

The gerund أسم الفاعل

verb + ing

يتكون من

e.g. running, working, speaking.

١- يستعمل كفاعل كما يستعمل للتحذير من شيء

Reading French is easier than speaking it.

No smoking, (= it's forbidden to smoke..)

No parking, (= you are not allowed to park here.)

٢- يستعمل بعد حرف جر عندما يوضع الفعل مباشرة بعد حرف جر يجب استعمال اسم

الفاعل مثل.

1. He insisted on seeing the new film.
2. I have no objection to hearing your story.
3. Can you touch your toes without bending your knees?
4. He is good at telling lies.
5. She is fond of climbing.
6. He was accused of smuggling. التهريب
7. They were charged with driving them to the public danger.
8. He was fined for being found drunk. وقعت عليه غرامة
9. He prefers reading to watching T.V.
10. Do you feel like going for a swim?
11. His wife raised money by selling her jewellery.
12. He is thinking of emigrating.
13. I'm sorry for keeping you waiting.
14. We had a lot of difficulty in finding the house.
15. She's keen on riding horses.

٣- عندما تستعمل to بعد الفعل تصبح حرف جر ويتبعها اسم الفعل خاصة العبارات الآتية

look forward to - take to - be accustomed to - be used to.

1. I am looking forward to seeing you.

2. I am used to getting up early.

لاحظ الفرق بين used to تدل على عادة في الماضي ولا بد أن تأتي بعدها المصدر.

They used to burn coal. (Now they burn oil fuel).

I am used to فأنيها تعني I am accustomed to بمعنى familiar

with فإنه يأتي بعدما أما اسم الفعل أو اسم مثال ذلك :

1. I am used to the cold. (it doesn't worry me).

2. He is used to working at night (he doesn't mind it).

٤- يجب أن يستعمل اسم الفاعل بعد الأفعال الآتية :

stop, finish, dread يفرح - يرهب, detest يكره, prevent يمنع,

deny ينكر, admit يعترف يسمح بالدخول, risk يخاطر, avoid يتجنب,

recollect يتذكر, resent يستاء من, delay يعطل, postpone يؤجل,

defer يؤجل يرجى , enjoy, fancy يتخيل , imagine يتخيل , forgive يعفو عن ,
 pardon يعفو - يصنع , excuse (= pardon) suggest يقترح keep on
 understand , mind (= object) يعترض consider, miss,
 involve, , resist يقاوم (save oneself the trouble of) anticipate يتوقع
 can't stand (= endure) يتحمل can't help (= prevent avoid)
 يدرك -

و بعد العبارات الآتية:

It is no use, It is use, It is no good, be busy, it's worth

1. He didn't want to **risk getting** wet as he had only one suit.
2. Try to **avoid travelling** in the rush hour. ساعة الذروة.
3. He **denied having** been there.
4. He **resented being punished** (passive).
5. They tried to **prevent** the river (from) **flooding** the town.
6. Forgive **my interrupting** you/Forgive me for **interrupting** you.
7. She **suggested waiting** till dawn.
8. I **couldn't help laughing**.
9. It's **no use looking** through the keyhole.
10. I **couldn't resist buying** one.
11. **Fancy having** to get up at 5 a.m. every morning.
12. She **dreads getting** old.
13. Most women **enjoy shopping**.
14. **Would you mind waiting** a few minutes ?
15. I can't **understand his resigning** (= I can't understand why he resigned).
16. I don't **anticipate meeting** any opposition. معارضة.
17. He **postponed making** a decision.

Ex. (34A) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (Gerund or infinitive) :

1. Would you mind **(lend)** me ten piastres. I want **(make)** a telephone call.
2. If you go on **(let)** your dog **(chase)** cars he'll end by **(be)** run over.
3. I advise you **(start)** **(look)** for a flat at once.
4. She likes her children **(go)** to the dentist every six months.

5. I suggest **(telephone)** the hospitals before **(ask)** the police **(look)** for him.
6. After **(hear)** the conditions, I decided **(not enter)** for the competition.
7. He postponed **(make)** a decision till it was too late **(do)** anything.
8. By **(offer)** enormous wages, he is persuading men **(leave)** their present job.
9. Imagine **(have)** **(get up)** at five a.m. everyday !
10. Try **(forget)** it, it isn't worth **(worry)** about.
11. At first I enjoyed **(listen)** to him but after a while I got tired of **(hear)** the same story again.
12. It is usually easier **(learn)** a subject by **(read)** books than by **(listen)** to lectures.
13. Please forgive me for **(interrupt)** you, but would you mind **(repeat)** that last sentence ?
14. Most people prefer **(spend)** money to **(earn)** it.
15. . Why do you keep **(look)** back? Are you afraid of **(be)** followed?
16. Do you feel like **(go)** to a film or would you rather **(stay)** at home?
17. The police accused him of **(set)** fire to the building.
18. The hill is low enough **(climb)**.
19. Please let him **(go)** now.
20. Can't you make him **(obey)** you?
21. The exercise is too difficult for us **(do)**.
22. I'm very sorry for **(be)** late. It was very good of you **(wait)** for me.
23. I liked **(listen)** to the wireless much better than **(watch)** television.
24. I'd hate **(be)** beside a volcano when it started **(erupt)**.
25. You don't need **(ask)** him permission every time want **(leave)** the room.

Ex. (35B) Choose the correct answer :

1. I am looking forward to **(see - seeing - to see)** you.

2. He urged us (**work - working - to work**).
3. I wish (**to see - see - seeing**) the manager.
4. It's no use (**to wait - wait - waiting**).
5. Don't forget (**to lock - lock - locking**) the door before (**go - going - to go**) to bed.
6. He was fined for (**exceeding - to exceed - exceed**) the speed limit.
7. He gave up (**smoking - smoke - to smoke**).
8. Try to avoid (**make - making - to make**) him angry.
9. I am prepared (**to wait - waiting - wait**) here all night if necessary.
10. They don't allow (**to smoke - smoking - smoke**) in this theatre.
11. I don't enjoy (**to go - going - go**) to the dentist.
12. I couldn't help (**to overhear - overhear - overhearing**) what you said.
13. He decided (**to disguising - disguising - to disguise**) himself.
14. I hate (**to borrow - borrow - borrowing**) money.
15. He urged us (**work - working - to work**).
16. I tried (**persuade - to persuade - persuading**) him (**agree - to agree - agreeing**) with your proposal.
17. People used(**to make-make-making**)fire by (**rub-rubbing - to rub**) two sticks together.
18. He wore dark glasses (**to avoid - avoid - avoiding**) being recognized.
19. She offered (**mend - mending - to mend**) his socks.
20. You'll never regret (**to do - do - doing**) a kind action.
21. Would you mind (**write - writing - to write**) your address on the back of the cheque?
22. Do you feel like (**to dine - dine - dining**) out or would you rather (**have - having - to have**) dinner in a restaurant?
23. I'd like (**to go - going - go**) out. I always enjoy (**to have - having - have**) dinner in a restaurant ?

24. We'd better (**start - to start - starting**) early. We don't want (**risk-risking - to risk**) (get - to get - getting) caught in a traffic jam.
25. It isn't good for children (**to eat - eat - eating**) too many sweets.
26. Can't you see I am busy (**write - to write - writing**)?
27. My daughter is keen on (**reading - read - to read**) stories.
28. We're really looking forward (**entering - enter - to entering**) the competition.
29. The girl admitted (**to lie - be lying - to have lied**) to her teacher.
30. The robber was made (**to confess - confessing - to confessing**) where he had hidden the money.
31. I have forgotten (**to operate-operating-how to operate**) this machine. Can you show me how?
32. It's difficult for me (**decide- to decide- to deciding**) whether I should accept the job offer or not.
33. We saw the girls (**play-playing-to play-**) football as we drove past the field.
34. I don't think the company can afford (**to employ-employing- to employing-**) any new staff this year.
35. He's a taxi driver, so he is accustomed to (**drive- driving- - to driving**) in the busy town.

Infinitive or -ing form

1. The verbs love, like, prefer, hate, begin, start, continue can take a full infinitive or an -ing form with little or no difference in meaning.

* Children **love to play** by the sea.

Children **love playing** by the sea.

* I **began to** write.

I **began** writing.

2. The verbs remember, forget, regret, stop and try can take an -ing form or a full Infinitive, but the meaning is different.

- remember, forget, regret + ing form refer to an action that has already happened.

I remember visiting Berlin in 1981. تَسِيرُ إِلَى حَدْثٍ وَقَعَ فَعَلًا

I'll never forget visiting the British Museum.

I regret saying that she was a liar.

3. • stop + ing form refers to an action that was stopped and not repeated. حَدْثٌ تَوَقَّفَ وَلَمْ يَتَكَرَّرْ

I stopped smoking two years ago.

4. • try + ing form: do an experiment.

If you have a sore throat, try drinking some hot milk.

- remember, forget, regret + full infinitive: We remember / forget / regret something before doing it.

نَتَذَكَّرُ شَيْئًا قَبْلَ وَقْعِهِ

I remembered to go to the supermarket.

Don't forget to visit the Egyptian museum.

I regret to say that I won't come to your party.

- stop + full infinitive refers to an action that was interrupted but probably continued afterwards.

حَدْثٌ تَوَقَّفَ وَمِنْ الْمَحْتَمَلِ أَنْ يَسْتَمِرَّ فِيمَا بَعْدَ

I stopped to drink a cup of coffee on my way home.

7. try + full infinitive: make an effort.

He will try to come to the dance but he isn't sure if he will be able to.

8. • Need as a main verb can take an -ing form or a full infinitive, in the Active or Passive Voice.

I need to borrow some money.

My house needs painting.

My house needs to be painted.

Note

- After the verbs see, hear, feel, smell, listen to, notice, find and watch we can use an -ing form when we witness part of an action which is taking place.

When **I looked out** of the window, I **saw him washing** his car.

• **These verbs take a bare Infinitive when we witness the whole action.**

I saw George **climb up** the tree and then come down again,

• **When these verbs are in the Passive Voice, they are followed by a full infinitive.**

George **was seen to climb up** the tree.

Ex 36A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d and

1- I'll never forget Tokyo in 1981.

a) to visit b) visit c) visiting d) visited

2- As I drove past his house, I saw him in his garden.

a) dig b) to dig c) digging d) dug

3- She was heard lies.

a) to telling b) to tell c) told d) telling

4- I regret that I can't cook for the party on Friday night.
I'm busy.

a) say b) to say c) saying d) said

5- She forgot sugar. That's why she didn't make the pie.

a) to buy b) buy c) bought d) buying

6- Before you leave the house, remember the alarm system on.

a) to turn b) turn c) turning d) turned

7- If you are absent all the time, you risk your job.

a) to lose b) lose c) lost d) losing

8- "You told me you would go to the movies with me." "I'm sorry, but I don't remember..... so.

a) saying b) to say c) say d) said

9- After Jake finished his coffee, he got in his car and left without saying anything.

a) to drink b) drinking c) drink d) drank

10- He regrets not a foreign language when he was younger.

a) to learn b) learn c) learning d) drank

11- I saw Jane her bike and ride away.

a) get on b) getting on c) to get on d) got on

12- As I drove past the bus stop, I saw Nick there.

a) waiting b) to wait c) wait d) waited

Ex36 B) Rewrite the following sentences without changing the meaning. Start with the words given. The first sentence is done for you:

1) Understanding other people's problems isn't always easy.

It's not always easy to understand other people's problems.

2) Travelling is necessary in my job.

It's necessary for me

3) He said that he had not broken the window.

He denied

4) I am accustomed to wearing a suit to work.

I am used to

5) I always cry when I see this film.

I can't help

6) Tony can't wait to visit Waltdisny land.

Tony is looking forward to

7) Don't miss seeing the Acropolis when you are in Athens.

Don't forget

8) Having a good relationship with their parents is important for children.

It's important for children

9) I hate listening to this song.

I can't stand

10) The girl made an effort to climb the fence but she couldn't.

The girl tried

11) Susan really loves to dance so she's going to join a dance school.

Susan really enjoys

12) It's not a good idea to argue with your friends.

It's better to avoid

13) "Let's go ice-skating this afternoon," Maria said

Maria suggested

14) You should work harder to pass the exams. It's worth it.

It's worth

Ex37) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- You are not obliged to come if you have something else to do. (have)

2- Shall I do the shopping for you? (like)

3- It's essential for the government to introduce new traffic restrictions. (must)

4- It wasn't necessary for you to wake up so early. (needn't)

5- I can't wait to tell Nagi the good news. (forward)

6- The boys said they hadn't broken the window. (denied)

7- It isn't necessary for her to pick us up from the airport. (needn't)

8- She never appeared on TV again after the scandal became known. (stopped)

9- He continued to interrupt me although I had told him to stop. (kept)

10- Julie didn't lock the door when she left her house. (without)

11- It was wrong of you to cheat in the exam. (should)

12- "Ashraf, is this wallet yours?" (belong)

13- It's likely to rain today. (I think)

14- It's possible that they don't know about the conference. (might)

15- "I'll carry your case for you." (offered)

- 16- "I'm very pleased that we shall meet again soon." (looking)
- 17- I wasn't there when the accident happened. (denied)
- 18- "I'm the best performer in the band." (boasted)
- 19- "I'll give you the money you want." (agreed)
- 20- I told Samy not to forget to take his passport. (reminded)
- 21- Nagi made up his mind to leave the place quickly.
(insisted)
- 22- "Could you go to the shop for me?" (mind)
- 23- He is very intelligent. He can solve any problem. (enough)
- 24- The dress is very tight. She can't wear it. (too)
- 25- He called me. He wanted to say he would be late. (only)
- 26- He isn't tall. He can't reach the top shelf. (enough)
- 27- She went out. She wanted to buy some milk. (to)
- 28- Nagi goes to the beach every day to swim. (swimming)
- 29- You should go home now. It's going to rain. (better)
- 30- He ran all the way home. He didn't want to stop. (without)
- 31- It's dangerous to drive at high speed. (Driving)
- 32- Could you pass me the salt? (mind)
- 33- Writing the composition took her all night. (spent)
- 34- My mother made me apologize for my behaviour. (was)
- 35- Do you mind moving over a little? (could)
- 36- I needed some milk, so I went to the supermarket. (get)
- 37- Learning that no-one was hurt during the fire was a great relief. (relieved)
- 38- The kidnappers forced the woman to get into the car.
(made)
- 39- Dr. Thompson studied the symptoms of the disease before anyone else. (first)
- 40- Neither of them was old enough to have a driving licence.
(Both)
- 41- It wasn't easy for her to find a place to stay on the island.
(difficulty)
- 42- The police will prevent his leaving the country. (from)

- 43- The taxi driver told me the accident was not his fault. (to blame)
- 44- Really, I'll go with you to the dentist. (promised)
- 45- Sameh felt sorry he missed the chance for a prize. (regretted)
- 46- Do you think you could possibly close the window? (mind)
- 47- You shouldn't drive alone at night. (better)
- 48- I don't think the old car is good enough to repair. (worth)
- 49- It was my habit to get up early in the morning but now I get up late. (used)
- 50- It's my habit to get up early every day. (enjoy)
- 51- It's my habit to get up early everyday. (used)
- 52- It would be a good idea to do your work now. (better)
- 53- Working long hours is nothing new to me. (used)
- 54- I feel happy when I see a comic film. (enjoy)
- 55- Mary wishes she hadn't lent him all her saving. (regretted)

Nouns

Countable Nouns

Countable nouns have two forms. The singular form refers to one thing or person. It takes a / an

الأسماء التي تعد لها شكلين المفرد يشير إلى شيء أو شخص و تأخذ a / an
a book / an apple

The plural form refers to more than one thing or person. It doesn't take : a or an

الأسماء الجمع تشير إلى أكثر من شخص واحد أو شيء واحد و لا تأخذ a or an
books – some teachers

You add "s" to form the plural of most nouns.

Book – books school – schools

1. Nouns ending in s , ss, ch, sh, x or o take es in the plural gas – gases / dish – dishes / fox – foxes / brush – brushes / inch – inches / church – churches

2. Some nouns ending in "o" add "s" and some add "es".

Photo – photos / piano – pianos / hero – heroes / potato – potatoes

3. Nouns ending in a consonant and "y" change to "ies".

Country – countries / lady – ladies / party – parties / victory – victories / baby – babies / fly – flies / army – armies / city – cities / body – bodies.

4. Noun that end in a vowel and "y" add an "s".

Boy – boys / day – days / key – keys / valley – valleys – toy – toys.

5. Nouns that end in "f" or "fe". Generally make the plural by changing the "f" or "fe" to "ves". Leaf ورقة - leaves / knife – knives / half – halves / wolf – wolves / thief – thieves.

6. Some common nouns have irregular plurals

بعض الأسماء الشائعة الجمع فيها غير عادي

child طفل - children / foot قدم - feet / man رجل - men / mouse فأر - mice / tooth سنّة - teeth / woman امرأة - women / ox ثور - oxen / goose أوزة - geese / sheep قطيع - sheep / deer غزال - deer.

7. Countable nouns can be used with numbers, one table – two cats, three hundred.

8. Singular count nouns cannot be used alone, but always with a determiner أداة تحديد such as "a" "an" "another" "every" or "the".

He was eating **another / an** apple.

She had read **every** book on the subject.

I parked **the** car over there.

9. Plural count nouns can be used with or without a determiner. They do not take determiner when they refer to things or people in general.

Does the hotel have **large** rooms?

The film is not suitable **for** children.

10. Plural count nouns do take a determiner when they refer precisely to particular محدد things or people.

Our computers are very expensive.

These cakes are delicious.

11. When a count noun is the subject of a verb, a singular count noun takes a singular verb.

My son **likes** playing football.

The address on the letter **was** wrong.

12. A plural count noun takes a plural verb.

Bigger cars **cost** more. I thought more people **were** coming.

A- "Damages" تعويض means money paid in compensation

He received **damages** for his injuries.

B- Knowledge and education can be singular when the meaning is less general.

I had a **good** education. A **knowledge** of English is essential.

C- A **help** means helpful. Thanks you have been a **great** help.

D- Work can mean "factory" . e.g: a **steel** work. A work of art.

The **works** of Nagaib Mahfouz.

13. Some nouns are the same in the singular and plural
deer - جمع deer مفرد series - series, species- species -
aircraft- aircraft, sheep- sheep, fish- fish .

14. Nouns such as people, clothes, police, goods, and all nouns that consist of two parts such as jeans, trousers,

glasses, binoculars منظار scissors مقص pliers زردية always
take a plural verb.

Rewrite the sentences in the plural:

1. A train is much quicker than a bus.
2. A lion is a dangerous animal.
3. A lawyer generally earns more than a teacher.
4. A computer is an expensive piece of equipment.
5. A student has to work hard.
6. The lady gave the child the key.
7. The leaf fell from the tree.
8. The ox pulled the branch of a tree.
9. The cat caught the mouse.
10. A woman tends to live longer than a man.

Ex 38A) Rewrite these sentences in the singular.

1. The cats catch the mice.
2. The children ride on donkeys.
3. The gentlemen fill the glasses.
4. The oxen eat the grass.
5. We saw geese and foxes.
5. The thieves stole the watches and boxes of jewels.
6. Wolves killed the sheep.
7. The boys have knives.

Uncountable Nouns

1. Uncountable nouns have only one form, and take a singular verb

الأسماء التي لاتجمع لها شكل واحد و تأخذ فعل مفرد.

2. They are not used with "a" or "an" with numbers/an, "a"

الأسماء التي لاتجمع لاتستعمل a / an

3. Some nouns can be uncount and count nouns .

Uncount noun often refer to :

a- Substances

المواد

coal قمع / food طعام / ice تَلْج / iron حديد / water ماء

b- Human qualities

صفات الإنسان

courage شجاعة / cruelty قسوة / honesty أمانة / patience صبر

c- Feelings

المشاعر

anger غضب / happiness سعادة / joy فرح / pride كبرياء / relief إحساس بالراحة
respect احترام

d- Activities أنشطة aid/help مساعدة sleep نوم travel السفر work عمل

e- Abstract ideas أفكار مجردة beauty الجمال death الموت
freedom الحرية fun الهزل luck الحظ .

Examples :

1. The donkey needed **food** and water.
2. Soon, they lost **patience** and shouted at me .
3. I was greeted with shouts of **joy**.
4. All prices include **travel** to and from London.
5. We talked for hours about **freedom**.

II. **Uncount nouns have only one form. They do not have plural form.** الأسماء التي لا تجمع لها شكل واحد و ليس لها جمع

Examples :

1. I needed **help** with my **homework** .
 2. The children had great **fun** playing with the puppets.
- Warning** تحذير some nouns which are uncount in English have plurals in other languages.

بعض الأسماء التي لا تجمع في اللغة الإنجليزية لها جمع في اللغات الأخرى.....

accomodation مكان للمعيشة advice نصيحة homework machinery

equipment المال money معلومات information أمتعة baggage الآلات

أثاث furniture أخبار news معرفة knowledge معدات

luggage سفر أمتعة سفر traffic المرور behavior سلوك bread

clothing, health صحة harm أذى housework,

damage تلف progress, thunder رعد pay(=wages) أجر

pollution تلوث jewellery مجوهرات cash, housing,

laughter leisure, lightening البرق luck حظ permission

rain مطر rice أرز thunder رعد rubbish, shopping,

luggage, transport, weather, violence عنف

III. **Some uncount nouns end in "s" and therefore look like plural count nouns. They usually refer to.**

A. **Subjects of study** مواد الدراسة Mathematics maths. physics

الفيزياء .politics economics chemistry literature

B. Activities أنشطة

Athletics الألعاب الرياضية gymnastics الجمباز

C. Games الألعاب cards كوتشينة darts رمي الرمح

D. Illnesses الأمراض measles الحصبة pumps التهاب الغدة النخامية

Mathematics is too difficult for me.

Measles is in most cases a harmless illness.

IV. When an uncount noun is the subject of a verb, it takes a singular verb.

Electricity is dangerous.

Intelligence develops very slowly in these children.

Food was very expensive in those days.

V. Uncount nouns are not used with "a"

1. They resent **having** to pay **money**.

2. My father started **work** when he was ten.

VI. Uncount nouns are used with "the" when they refer to something that is specified or known.

1. I am interested in **the education** of young children.

2. She buried **the money** that her father had given her.

3. I like **the music**, but the words were boring.

VII. Uncount nouns are not used with numbers. However you can often refer to a quantity of something which is expressed by an uncount noun by using a word like "some".

٤. لا تستعمل الأسماء التي لا تجمع مع الأعداد إلا أنك تستطيع الإشارة إلى كمية من الأشياء التي يعبر عنها الاسم الذي لا يجمع باستعمال كلمة مثل "some".

Please buy **some bread** when you go to town.

Let me give you **some advice**.

VIII. Uncount nouns are often used with expression such as "a loaf of" "packets of" or "a piece of" to talk about quantity of an item. "A bit of" is common in spoken English.

1. I bought **two loaves of bread** yesterday.

2. He gave me a **very good piece of advice**.

لاحظ أن **a piece of advice** تعني نصيحة.

They own **a bit of land** near Alexandria.

IX. Some nouns are uncount nouns when they refer to something in general and count nouns when they refer to a particular instance of something.

Victory was now assured. (**Uncount**) In 1973, Egypt won a convincing victory (**Count**)

Ex38B): Use these phrases with "the" and uncount noun to complete the sentences which follow:

the news about Bill, the furniture in the sitting room. the advice you gave me, the information you need, the strength to go on, the traffic in Cairo.

1. I like I thought it looked very smart.
2. I'd like to thank you for
3. I'm tired out. I haven't got
4. You can find in my grammar book.
5. is dreadful particularly in the rush hour.
6. Have you heard ?

Ex38 c) Choose the correct answer:

1. We've got a lot of (**luggage** – equipment – help – **electricity**) but it's not too heavy.
2. At that time my (**news** – information – knowledge – **report**) of German was limited.
3. I'd like some (**news** – knowledge – report – information) about trains please.
4. They exported a million dollar's worth of stereo (**machinery** – luggage – help – equipment).
5. If you want my (**opinion** – advice – help – report), I think you ought to start all over again.
6. There's always a lot of (**crowd** – traffic – equipment – **public**) in the rush hour.
7. Do you cook by gas or (**electricity** – fire – stove – air)?
8. You can always telephone, if you need any (**favour** – help – knowledge – traffic).
9. Money doesn't always bring (**wisdom** – strength – happiness – mind).
10. People spend their (**life** – some life – lives – living) worrying about money.

أسماء الأعلام Proper Nouns

هناك بعض الأسماء معروفة للناس أو الأماكن أو الأشياء تسمى بالإنجليزية : **Proper nouns**: أسماء الأعلام تبدأ بحرف كبير Capital letter (حرف كبير) مثال ذلك

1. Days of the week : Sunday - Monday - Tuesday etc.
2. Months of the year : January , February , March etc.
3. The names of cities and Persons : Cairo , London , New York , Ali , Ahmed , Salah , Mary , Cherin etc.
4. The names of countries : Egypt - Britain - Iraq etc.

Ex. (39a) Write out the following sentences putting the right capital letters :

1. ali lives in London.
2. alexandria is a fine city.
3. my brother's name is foad.
4. we set to america on queen mary. اسم سفينة عابرة المحيطات
5. the sudan lies in the south of egypt.
6. william shakespeare was one of england's greatest poets.
7. the nile is a longer river than the thames.
8. paris is the capital of france.

الأسماء في حالة الملكية Nouns Possessive case

١ - الملكية للاسم المفرد يضاف ('s) بعد الاسم.

Nouns

Possessive case

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. The cat of Mary. | Mary's cat. |
| 2. The house of Salah. | Salah's house. |
| 3. The foot of the girl. | The girl's foot. |

٢ - الملكية للاسم الجمع الذي ينتهي بحرف (s) يضاف إليه (') appostrophe

Nouns

Possessive case

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. The house of the boys | The boys' house. |
| 2. The hats of the girls. | The girls' hats. |

٣ - إذا لم ينته الجمع بحرف (s) تضاف ('s) مثال ذلك :

1. **Men's work** is done in fields.
2. **Women's work** is done at home.
3. **Children's work** is done in the school.

٤ - الملكية بالنسبة للأسماء تستعمل للناس والحيوانات وليست للأشياء مثال :

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. The teacher's lesson | 2. The mother's dress. |
|-------------------------|------------------------|

3. The dog's foot.

4. The lion's tail.

Ex. (39b)) Write down the possessive case of the following :

1. The hat of the man

2. The leg of the boy.

3. The home of the girl.

4. The wings of the bird.

5. The voices of the pupils.

6. The cries of the children.

5. You add apostrophe s ('s) to people's, names even when they end in "s". Could you give me Charles's address?

6. When you use two names linked by "and" you put the apostrophe s ('s) after the last name.

- They have bought Janet and Nagy's car.

7. When you want to refer to someone's home, or to some common shops and places of work, you can use apostrophe s "s" after a name or noun on its own.

One. He's round at **Hisham's**.

Two. I bought it at the **Chemist's**.

Three. She must go to the **doctor's**.

8. You can use apostrophe s ('s) with some expressions of time to identify something or to say how much time is involved.

One. Did you see the cartoon in **yesterday's** newspaper ?

Two. They have four **week's** holiday per year.

Ex.(39c) Complete the sentences by adding apostrophe or apostrophe s ('s) to the noun group in brackets.

Follow the example.

Example: 1. They are having a party on Sunday. (children)
They are having a **children's** party on Sunday.

2. This is my house.

(parents)

3. You know John? He's father.

(David and Well)

4. I borrowed bike.

(James)

5. I'll be staying in my flat.

(friends)

6. That looks like car.

(John and Jean)

7. This is coat.

(Sylvia)

8. We're going away for holiday.

(a week)

9. You need rest.

(a couple of days)

10. We usually have holiday.

(two weeks)

Ex. (39d)) Choose two of the words below as the most likely ways of completing each sentence for one

answering you need to make the word plural, and for the other you will need to make no change.

Follow the example.

Accommodation – bag – equipment – house – jewellery – job – luggage – painting – shower – sunshine – tool – work.

On the weather forecast they said there would be...this afternoon.

On the weather forecast they said there would be **sunshine / showers** this afternoon.

- 1- The waiting room was full of people and their.../....., there was nowhere to sit.
2. Repairing car engines is easy if you 've got the right...../.....
3. In Stockholm at the moment there's a fascinating exhibition of...../.....from 19th century Sweden.
4. Both my brothers are looking for...../.....
5. The price of/..... has increased by 12% this year alone.

Adjectives الصفات

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء.

1. Adjectives of quality

١- صفات النوع :

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| a fat man | a thin man | an old book | a new book |
| a heavy box | a light box | a good egg | a bad egg |

2. Demonstrative adjectives:

٢- صفات الإشارة

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. I like this car. | Singular | Plural |
| 2. I don't like that car. | this - that | these - those |

3. Interrogative adjectives :

٣- صفات الاستفهام

Examples :

1. **What** books are you reading ?
2. **Which** boy can answer this question ?
3. **Whose** house is that ?
4. **Which** house do you live in ?
5. **What** price are eggs today ?

Ex. (40a) Put Interrogative Adjectives :

1. bicycle is that ?
2. questions have you answered ?
3. time is it now ?
4. lesson do you like best ?
5. colour were the bottles on the table ?

Ex. (40b) Put Demonstrative adjectives :

1. I like flower.
2. I like flowers.
4. boys on the back seat are not working as hard as boys on the front seat.

Ex. (40c) Make the following plural :

1. This door
2. That open window.
3. This apple.
4. That boy.

Ex. (40d) Make the following singular :

1. Those boys.
2. These boys.
3. Those large fierce animals.
4. These fine new bicycles.

4. Adjective of quantity:

-٤ صفات العدد

- a) I have **two** eyes.
- b) There are **twenty** books.
- c) Have you any mango trees ? I have **six** old ones.

١- تضاف الضمائر **one , ones** عندما يتبع العدد بصفته.

٢- تستعمل **some, any** قبل الأسماء الجمع أو التي لا تعد ويمكن أن تستعمل صفة أو ضمير.

٣- تستعمل **some** في الجمل المثبتة.

I'll bring you **some** bread, shall I ?

No, thanks I've still got **some**.

٤- تستعمل **any** في الجملة المنفية.

I haven't **any** butter. He hasn't **any** friends

٥- تستعمل **any** في الجمل مع. (بالكاد) **hardly , scarcely, barely**

I have **hardly any** money. There are **scarcely any** flowers.

٦- تستعمل **any** بعد صيغة الاستفهام.

Have you any money? **Did you see any** swans?

وعندما يكون السؤال مقصودا به الدعوة أو الطلب تستعمل **some**

Will you have **some** tea? Would you like **some** cheese?

٧- في عبارات الشك بعد **if**

If you have any difficulty, ask me for help.

no / none تستعمل مع أفعال مثبتة لتعبر عن النفي بدلا من **any** للنفي.

(**any**) يمكن أن تكون ضمير أو صفة أما **no** فهي صفة فقط و**none** فهي ضمير دائما.

I haven't **any** apples صفة I have **no** apples صفة

I haven't **any** ضمير I have **none** ضمير

Many / Much

١- تستعمل **many** لتصف الأسماء التي تعد وتستعمل **much** لتصف الأسماء التي لا تعد.
We haven't **much** money, He didn't make **many** mistakes.

يمكن استعمال **much / many** كضمائر.

You have plenty of money, but I haven't **much**.

Mary gets lots of letters, but Nagi doesn't get **many**.

a great deal of , lots of , a lot of , plenty of.

٢- يمكن أن تحل محل **much / many**

The room contained $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plenty of} \\ \text{a lot of} \\ \text{lots of} \\ \text{a great deal of} \end{array} \right\}$ students / furniture

a good / a great

يمكن أن تسبق **many**

She has a **good many / a great many** books.

Little / Few

Little / a little

little تستعمل لتصف الأسماء التي لا تعد

Few / a few

few تستعمل لتصف الأسماء التي تعد

a little = a small amount of a few = a small number of

little = a very small amount of few = a very small number of.

تستعمل **few / little** لتوضح النقص في شيء ما كما أن لها قوة النفي.

There is **little** good agricultural land. There is **not much** good land.

There is **hardly any** good land.

hardly any towns

Few towns have such a market.

not many towns

٣- توجد أشكال مركبة لـ **some , any , no**

وتنطبق عليها نفس القواعد السابقة.

| | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| someone, | somebody | something |
| anyone, | anybody | anything |
| no one, | no body | nothing, |

I know something

You don't know anything.

Do you know anything?

You know nothing.

Comparison of Adjectives

١- عدد كبير من الصفات تتكون درجة المقارنة بها بإضافة (er) للصفة العادية وتتكون الصفة الأحسن القصوى بإضافة (est) للصفة العادية.

| Positive | الصفة العادية | Comparative صفة المقارنة | Superlative الصفة الأحسن |
|----------|----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| tall | طويل | taller than | the tallest |
| short | قصير | shorter than | the shortest |
| quick | سريع | quicker than | the quickest |
| old | للتاس والأشياء | older elder than | the oldest - eldest |

٢- بعض الصفات يضاعف فيها الحرف الأخير عند تكوين صفة المقارنة أو الصفة الأحسن.

| Positive | الصفة العادية | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| hot | حار | hotter than | the hottest |
| big | كبير | bigger than | the biggest |
| fat | سمين | fatter than | the fattest |
| thin | نحيف | thinner than | the thinnest |

٣- الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) يضاف إليها r لتكوين الصفة المقارنة ويضاف إليها.

| Positive | الصفة العادية | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| large | كبير | larger than | the largest |
| fine | لطيف | finer than | the finest |

٤- الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) عادة ما تتحول إلى (i)

| Positive | الصفة العادية | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| pretty | جميل | prettier than | the prettiest |
| happy | سعيد | happier than | the happiest |
| heavy | ثقل | heavier than | the heaviest |

٥- بعض الصفات يضاف إليها the most , more than

| Positive | الصفة العادية | Comparative | Superlative |
|------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| important | مهم | more important | most important |
| dangerous | خطير | more dangerous | most dangerous |
| valuable | قيم | more valuable | most valuable |
| wonderful | مدهش | more wonderful | most wonderful |
| convenient | ملائم | more convenient | most convenient |

٦- بعض الصفات الشاذة

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|-------------|-------------|
| good | better than | the best |

| | | |
|--------|--------------|--------------|
| bad | worse than | the worst |
| many | | |
| much | more than | the most |
| some | | |
| little | less than | the least |
| far | farther than | the farthest |
| | further than | the furthest |

Uses of adjectives

استعمال الصفات

١- عند استعمال الصفة الأولى نستعمل (as) قبل الصفة و (as) بعدها مثال ذلك :

Ali is **as clever as** Ahmed.

لنفي نستعمل **not as - as** أو **not so - as**

Ali is **not so clever as** Ahmed.

٢- للمقارنة نستعمل **than** بعد الصفة مثال ذلك :

Zaki is **cleverer than** Ahmed. This horse is **better than** that.

٣- بعد الصفة الأحسن (صفة التفضيل القصوى) غالباً ما تستعمل **in** للأماكن و **of** للأشخاص وقيلها **the**

Nagi is the **cleverest boy in** the class.

Nabil is **the best of** the three boys.

the + comparative adjective,

the + another comparative adverb.

The bigger, the house is, **the more money** it will cost.

The more leisure he has, **the happier** he is.

Ex. (41a) Give the Comparative and Superlative of the following :

strong - merry - wide - beautiful - difficult - good - fortunate - bad
- useful - nice - little - far - greedy - magnificent.

Ex. (41b) Fill in the missing word :

1. Ali is older Ahmed.
2. Salah is not old Fathy.
3. Ahmed is oldest the three.
4. This book is better that.
5. This book is not good that.
6. This exercise is more difficult that.
7. The weather is worse today it was yesterday.

Ex. (41c) Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form :

1. Mary is the **(clever)** girl in the class.
2. The weather is **(fine)** today than it was yesterday.
3. London is the **(big)** city in the world.
4. This sentence is **(difficult)** than the first one.
5. My dog is as **(good)** as yours.
6. My cold is **(bad)** today than it was yesterday.
7. They have **(many)** hens than we have but we get **(few)** eggs.

Ex. (41d) Complete the sentences by putting in one of the following words : some , any , one , ones.

1. Are there tickets left ? I need
2. Please put apples on the table. There are hardly left.
3. I doubt whetherof the shops are open, but if you really want milk, I can easily borrow from the neighbour.
4. She has beautiful dresses. Did you see the she wore, at the party? Which party? She wears a different .. at every party.
5. Would you like more coffee ? I'm sure you would.
6. If there are cucumbers in the shop, please buy
7. I need a dictionary. Can you recommend
8. Have you oranges ? Yes, I bought in the market.
9. I bought second hand books "Were there interestingamong them ?" "Yes, I found good"
10. There's hardly .. sugar in the house. You'd better go and buy

Ex. (41e) Complete the sentences by adding one of the following words: much , many , little , few , less , fewer.

1. How chairs will you need ?
2. I work hard all day. I have time for hobbies.
3. How flour will you need for the cake ?
4. He's a wonderful person. There are people who would do the things he does.
5. I have money than you have.
6. If you ate bread, you would put on so weight.
7. Hurry up ! We have very time.
8. We have done today than we did yesterday.
9. I have mistakes than you have.
10. Although he is a very rich man, he spends..... on clothes.

Adjectives endings in "ing" or "ed"

1. You use many "ing" adjectives to describe the effect that something has on your feelings or on the feelings of people in general. For example, if you talk about "a surprising number" you mean that the number surprises you.

alarming مزعج charming مبهر embarrassing محرج
amazing مذهل surprising مذهش exciting مثير terrifying مخيف
annoying مسبب للضيق convincing مقنع frightening
مسبب للضيق tiring متعب astonishing مذهش depressing
مزعج interesting ممتع boring ملل welcoming مرحب
disappointing مخيب للأمل shocking مسبب للصدمة worrying مقلق

A) He lives in a **charming** house just outside the town.

b. She has always a warm **welcoming** smile.

2. You use some "ing" adjectives to describe something that continues over a period of time e.g. ageing عتيق

decreasing متناقص living حي existing موجود booming
dying يحتضر increasing متزايد remaining باق

One. Britain is an **ageing** society.

Two. **Increasing** prices are making food very expensive.

3. many "ed" adjectives describe people's feelings. They have the same form as the past participle of a transitive verb and have a passive meaning for example "a frightened person" is a person who has been frightened by something.

alarmed منزعج delighted مسرور tired متعب frightened
مهيّم — surprised مذهش depressed مستاء interested مهتم
astonished مذهش satisfied راضي مقتنع troubled متعب
bored ملل excited منفعل shocked مصدوم worried قلق

One. She looks **alarmed** about something.

Two. A **bored** student complained to his teacher.

Three. She had a big blue **frightened** eyes.

Note that لاحظ أن the past participle of irregular verbs do not end in "ed" but can be used as adjectives.

One. The bird had a **broken** wing.

Two. His coat was dirty and **torn**.

4. Like other adjectives "ing" and "ed" adjectives can be used

A- in front of noun

1. They still **show amazing** loyalty to their parents.
2. This is the **most terrifying** tale ever written.
2. I was thanked by the **satisfied** customers.
4. The **worried authorities** cancelled the match.

B. After link verbs أفعال الربط

1. **It's amazing** what they can do.
2. The present situation **is terrifying**.
3. He **felt satisfied** with all the work he had done.
4. My husband **was worried**.

C-Modified by adverbials such as "Quite""Really"and Very

1. The film was **quite boring**.
2. There is nothing **very surprising** in this.
3. She was **quite astonished** at his behavior.
4. He was **very disappointed** young man.

D. In the comparative and superlative

1. His argument was **more convincing** than mine.
2. We became even **more depressed** after she died.
3. This is one of **the most boring** books I've ever read.
3. She was **the most interested** in going to the cinema.

5. A small number of "ed" adjectives are normally only used after link verbs such as "be" "become" or "feel". They are related to transitive verbs and are often followed by a prepositional phrase, a "to-infinitive" clause, or a that clause.

Convinced مقتنع interested مهتم prepared مستعد tired متعب
delighted مسرور involved مشترك / متورط في scared مرعوب
touched متأثر finished منتهى pleased مسرور thrilled مثار .

1. The Brazilians are **pleased with the results**.
2. He was always **prepared to account for his actions**.
3. She was **scared that they would find her**.

A) We use adjectives or their comparative or superlative with the following words. very + adjective

It's very cold today

B) Even / a lot / much / far / a little / slightly + comparative

He seems **much better** today

C) by far + superlative

She's **by far the most** beautiful woman **I've ever seen**.

15. He was offered the job because he was candidate.

a) the best b) good c) the better d) best

16. The sooner he moves out it will be for all of us.

a) the best b) good c) the better d) best

17. She is older than I thought.

a) fairly b) quite c) much d) rather

EX.42b) Complete the following pairs of sentences using the correct form of the verb in brackets. You must use the "ed" form for one sentence in each pair and the "ing" form for the other.

1.a. I had nothing to do . I wasand lonely (**bore**)

1.b. I had only one book with me , but I didn't read it. it was so...

2.a. I enjoyed Dr. Brown's visit. He is a very ... speaker (**interest**)

2.b. We invited them to join us, but they weren't really.....

3.a. The bad news was very (**depress**).

3.b. It was a bad day. We were all thoroughly.....

4.a. I enjoyed the film. The monster was absolutely(**terrify**).

4.b. We were told there was a bomb in the building. Everyone was absolutely.....

5.a. We were rather.....with the results (**disappoint**).

5.b. The results were very.....

6.a. We were dreadfully late. It was very..... (**embarrass**).

6.b. George made a perfect fool of himself. He was awfully.....

7.a. Jack looked even morethan he felt (**amaze**)

7.b. She is a brilliant woman. She has the mostideas.

8.a. Have you heard what's happened. Isn't it? (**excite**)

8.b. Mary looked calm, but inside she felt really.....

Ex. (42c) Complete these sentences using a superlative adjective in each one :

1. I have never heard a more ridiculous story.

That's.....I have ever heard.

2. We had never stayed in a more expensive hotel.

It waswe had ever stayed in.

3. I had never had such a tiring journey before.

It wasI had ever had.

4. I've never had such a tasty meal before.

It wasI have ever had.

5. It's years. Since I saw a game as good as that.

That's I have seen for years.

ADVERBS الظروف

دائماً الظروف تصف الفعل وهي توضح كيف وقع الحدث. مثال ذلك :

1. The old man **walked slowly** along the street.
2. The little boy **ran quickly**.
3. The fisherman **sat sorrowfully**.

١ - يتكون الظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة مثال ذلك :

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. The boy is a quick runner | adjective |
| They boy runs quickly . | adverb |
| 2. The old man was a slow walker . | adjective |
| The old man walked slowly . | adverb |
| 3. The girl's behavior was good . | adjective |
| The girl behaved well . | adverb. |

يلاحظ أن **good** تأتي صفة لاسم فقط لكن الصفة للفعل هي **well**.

كلمات تنتهي بـ (ly) وليست ظروف ولكنها صفات وهي

friendly , lovely , lonely , likely , lowly , elderly , cowardly ,
deadly , lively , ugly , silly
high , low , deep , near , far , fast , hard , early , late ,
much , little , leisurely , kindly.

هذه الكلمات يمكن أن تستعمل صفة أو ظرف.

As adjectives

As adverbs

A **high mountain**

The bird **flew high**

The **near bank**

Don't **come near**, this may explode.

The work is **hard (difficult)** They worked **hard (energetically)**
highly, lowly, deeply, nearly, hardly, lately.

لها معنى أقل من معنى الصفات المشتقة منها تستعمل **ighly** فقط بمعنى مجرد.

He was **highly placed** = he had an important office.

They **spoke very highly** of him = They praised him.

Lowly adjective means **humble** nearly = almost

Lately = recently حديثاً

deeply عاطفي

He was **deeply hurt** = his feelings were very much hurt.

We use the words way/ manner to form their adverbs

She greeted me in a friendly way

٢ - قليل من الظروف نخبرنا كيف ولكن عندما يقع الحدث مثال ذلك :

1. The wood man lost **his axe yesterday**.
2. We must come to school **tomorrow**.

٣- بعض الظروف نخبرنا عن المكان حيث وقع الحدث مثال ذلك :

I sat down **there**. I saw you **somewhere**.

Did you see my hat **anywhere**?

Where are you going? **Nowhere**?

Comparison of Adverbs

more , most

١- عادة ما تستعمل

quickly **more quickly** **most quickly**
fortunately **more fortunately** **most fortunately**

٢- الظروف التي تتكون من مقطع واحد والظروف early , est نضيف

| | | | | | |
|------|--------|---------|--------|---------|----------|
| hard | harder | hardest | high | higher | highest |
| well | better | best | badly | worse | worst |
| late | later | latest | little | less | least |
| much | more | most | far | farther | farthest |

asas

استعمال الظروف : الطرف العادي يوضع بين :

not soas Or not asas

في النفي نستعمل

1. They arrived **earlier than** she did / **than** her.
2. He eats **more than** I do / **than** me.
3. She danced **more gracefully than** the other girls.
4. They went **farther than** the other runners.
5. He worked **as slowly as** he dared.
6. He doesn't work **as / so well as** you do.

of all

الطرف في حالة التفضيل القصوى تستعمل بعده

He ran **fastest of all**.

ولكن غالبا في الاستعمال السابق ما يشير إلى أعمال أخرى لنفس الفاعل فمثلا نقول :

He likes **swimming best of all = better than** he likes **anything else**.

She works **best of all** when she is alone=**better than** other **times**.

He likes **swimming best**

ويمكن حذف **of all** فنقول

most قبل ظرف أو صفة فإنها تعني **very**

She behaved **most gracefully**.

The Position of Adverbs.

موضع الظروف

- 1- Adverb of Manner (kindly - badly - well etc)

١- الطريقة

تجيب هذه الظروف على السؤال (How) وعادة ما توضع بعد المفعول به المباشر إذا وجد وان لم يوجد مفعول به مباشر يوضع هذا الظرف بعد الفعل.

She painted that **picture here**.

و إذا وجد ظرف يدل على الطريقة (Manner) فإن ظرف المكان يأتي بعده.
He played **well there**.

some , any يستعملان بنفس الطريقة مثل **somewhere, anywhere**
I saw your hat **somewhere** , Did you see my hat **anywhere** ?
I didn't see your hat **anywhere** ?

nowhere نستعمل في الإجابات القصيرة.
Where are you going ? **Nowhere** (i.e. I'm not going anywhere).

٣- ظرف الزمان **Adverbs of time, then , yet , still ,now soon tc.**
هذه الظروف ظروف التكرار **once-twice** عادة ما توضع في البداية أو في أقصى النهاية.
He is coming **to - morrow**. He is working **now**.

I have been there **three times**. **Then** we went home.

He hasn't finished **yet**

yet يجب أن توضع في نهاية الجملة
ومن الممكن أن نقول **He hasn't yet finished** ولكن الصورة الأولى أفضل.

still عادة ما توضع قبل الفعل ولكن توضع بعد **To Be**
She **still dislikes** him. She **is still** in her bed.

4. Adverbs of Frequency.

٤- توضع ظروف التكرار قبل أي فعل ما عدا **To Be**
Sometimes , often , rarely, seldom , usually , generally etc.
He **is always** in time for meals.
They **sometimes** stay up all night.

في الأمثلة التي تتكون من أكثر من فعل توضع بعد الفعل المساعد.

5. Adverbs of degree (almost-nearly- quite - just - too etc)

٥- هذه الظروف تضيف صفة أو ظرف آخر قبل الصفة أو الظرف.
It was **too hot to** work. I know him **quite well**.

The film was **fairly good**. He played **extremely badly**.

توضع هذه الظروف قبل الفعل الرئيسي. **Almost ,nearly,quite,hardly,scarcely,just**.

I quite understand. He can **nearly swim**. I am **just going**.

Enough. يأتي قبلها أما صفة أو ظرف.

He didn't work **quickly enough**. The box isn't **big enough**.

only توضع أمام الكلمة التي نصفها سواء كانت فعل أو صفة أو ظرف أو تأتي بعد اسم أو ضمير.

1. He had **only six** apples. (i.e not more than six).

2. He **only** lent his car. (i.e. he didn't give it).
3. He lent the car to me **only**. (i.e. not to anyone else).
4. I believed **only** half of what he said.

The Meaning of Certain Adverbs of Degree

1. Fairly and Rather.

Fairly & rather نفس المعنى ولكن **fairly** أساسا مع الظروف والصفات الحسنة .
good , well , bravely , nice.

بينما تستعمل **rather** أساسا مع الصفات والظروف الغير حسنة مثل **bad, ugly, stupid**

1. Ali is **fairly** clever but Ahmed is **rather** stupid.
2. He is **fairly** rich, but she is **rather** poor.
3. You did **fairly** well in your exam, but she did **rather** badly.

تستعمل أدوات النكرة **a / an** قبل أو بعد **rather**

This is **rather** a silly book or a **rather** silly book.

ويجب أن توضع أدوات النكرة **a / an** قبل **fairly**.

a **fairly** interesting lecture.

تستعمل **rather** قبل الصفات في المقارنة مثل.

alike , like , similar , different. وتعني **slightly**

Sinese cats are **rather** like dogs in some ways.

The weather was **rather** worse than I had expected.

2. Quite.

وتعني تماما عندما تستعمل مع كلمات مثل

full , empty , finished , wrong , right , sure , certain , perfect , amazing , horrible.

كذلك عندما تستعمل مع ظروف أو صفات مثل.

The bottle was **quite** empty. You are **quite** wrong.

It is **quite** extraordinary. I can't understand it all.

وعندما تستعمل **quite** مع صفات وظروف أخرى فإن لها تأثيرا يقلل من الصفة أو الظروف فمثلا **quite good** أقل من **good** وهنا فإن **quite** تعني **fairly** تقريبا.

كذلك فإن معنى **quite** يتغير طبقا للضغط عليها أثناء الكلام فمثلا.

quite good (weak quite - strong good)

الضغط يكون أقوى على كلمة **good** ويكون الضغط ضعيفا على **quite** فهذه العبارة تعني أقل من **good** بشيء بسيط.

quite good (equal stress)

وعندما يكون الضغط في النطق متساوي للكلمتين فإن **quite** تعني (إلى حد ما).

quite good (strong quite weak good)

وعندما يكون الضغط قويا على كلمة **quite** وضعيفا على كلمة **good** العبارة **quite good**
good تعني أقل بكثير من **good**.

3. Much

في الإثبات عادة يسبقها كلمة **very**

I liked it **very much**. I enjoyed it **very much**. Thank you **very much**.

ولكن **much** لا تحتاج إلى **very** في النفي

I don't like it much. I don't much like it.

It is much better to say nothing.

ويمكن أن تستعمل كظرف

4. Hardly , Barely , Scarcely.

تستعمل **hardly** أساسا مع **any** أو **ever** ومع الفعل **can**

hardly any = very / very little / few.

hardly ever = very / very seldom.

تستعمل **hardly** مع **can** بمعنى (فقط بصعوبة)

1. I have **hardly any** money (i.e. very , very little money).

2. I **hardly ever** go out (i.e. very , very seldom go out).

3. I **can hardly** see the mark (i.e. the mark is difficult to see or I have bad sight).

hardly تعني **no more than** وعادة ما تستخدم مع صفات مثل **enough - sufficient**

1. He had **hardly enough** to eat (he was often hungry).

2. He was **hardly sixteen** (i.e. only just sixteen no older).

3. I can **hardly see it** (i.e. I almost cannot see it).

scarcely تربط بين **barely , hardly** في المعنى.

Ex. (43a) Put the Adverbs in brackets in the correct place in the sentence :

1. I go (in summer, usually , to Paris).

2. We meet (on Sunday afternoon , in the park , always).

3. I saw Salah (in the office , about an hour ago).

4. I have a cup of tea (in bed, always , before I get up).

5. I get up early (on Sunday, seldom).

6. He plays (well, in an important game, always).

7. We eat (usually, when we go to the theatre, out).

8. He spoke (very well , at the debate, last night).

9. He arrived (at the meeting, at eight o'clock).

10. We are meeting (to-morrow, at Kamal's house, at nine).

Ex. (43b) Choose the correct answer :

1 Some of the passengers were (badly, well , worsely) injured.

وعندما يكون الضغط قويا على كلمة **quite** وضعيفا على كلمة **good** العبارة **quite good** تعني أقل بكثير من **good**.

3. Much

very في الإثبات عادة يسبقها كلمة **very** **I liked it very much. I enjoyed it very much. Thank you very much.** ولكن **much** لا تحتاج إلى **very** في النفي

I don't like it much. I don't much like it.

It is **much better** to say nothing.

ويمكن أن تستعمل كظرف

4. Hardly , Barely , Scarcely.

تستعمل **hardly** أساسا مع **any** أو **ever** ومع الفعل **can**

hardly any = very / very little / few.

hardly ever = very / very seldom.

تستعمل **hardly** مع **can** بمعنى (فقط بصعوبة)

1. I have **hardly any** money (i.e. very , very little money).
2. I **hardly ever** go out (i.e. very , very seldom go out).
3. I **can hardly** see the mark (i.e. the mark is difficult to see or I have bad sight).

hardly تعني **no more than** وعادة ما تستخدم مع صفات مثل **enough - sufficient**

1. He had **hardly enough** to eat (he was often hungry).
2. He was **hardly sixteen** (i.e. only just sixteen no older).
3. I can **hardly see it** (i.e. I almost cannot see it).

scarcely تربط بين **barely , hardly** في المعنى.

Ex. (43a) Put the Adverbs in brackets in the correct place in the sentence :

1. I go (in summer, usually , to Paris).
2. We meet (on Sunday afternoon , in the park , always).
3. I saw Salah (in the office , about an hour ago).
4. I have a cup of tea (in bed, always , before I get up).
5. I get up early (on Sunday, seldom).
6. He plays (well, in an important game, always).
7. We eat (usually, when we go to the theatre, out).
8. He spoke (very well , at the debate, last night).
9. He arrived (at the meeting, at eight o'clock).
10. We are meeting (to-morrow, at Kamal's house, at nine).

Ex. (43b) Choose the correct answer :

- 1 Some of the passengers were (badly, well , worsely) injured.

2. Please, speak (**slowly, slow, more slow**) I can't understand you.
3. He works very (**slower, hard, harder**).
4. He looks rather (**strangely, strange, stranger**).
5. He looked at me (**strangely, strange, stranger**).
6. He speaks English very (**well, good, better**).
7. I'm not (**completely, complete, more complete**) satisfied.
8. He feels (**unhappy, unhappily, unhappier**) about the situation.
9. Why do you look so (**unhappy, unhappily, unhappier**)?
10. He is (**happy, happily, happiest**) married.
11. He seems (**angrily, angry, the most angry**) although he spoke (**quiet, quietly, more quiet**).
12. He will behave (**differently, different, more different**).
13. Does he (**usual, usually, as usual**) speak so (**well, good, goodly**)?
14. Please don't drive so (**fast, fastly, faster**). Be, (**careful, carefully, most careful**).
15. He answered (**perfect, perfectly, more prefect**).

Ex. (43c) Choose the correct answer :

1. Ahmed drank water because he was thirsty.
a) any b) too many c) too much d) a little
2. The room is untidy.
a) fairly b) rather c) hardly d) scarcely
3. Well, I'm afraid it will be difficult.
a) rather b) fairly c) quite d) hardly
4. like ice-cream ?
a) Every children b) Every child
c) All children d) Hardly any child
5. There are nice apples, how in a Kilo ?
a) much are there b) much are they
c) many are there. d) too many are there
6. Your homework was good this week.
a) rather b) fairly c) hardly d) scarcely
7. Mary is Salwa.
a) much more pretty that b) a lot prettier that
c) much prettier than d) fairly pretty up that

8. I gave her stockings for her birthday.
a) a pair of b) a couple of
c) a double of d) a two
9. The little boy keeps the insect in a
a) box of matches b) match box
c) box match d) match boxes
10. It's the I have ever seen.
a) most pretty b) prettier
c) prettiest d) very pretty
12. He needs a
a) a few day's rest b) little day's rest
c) few days rest d) a few days' rest
13. I'm afraid we'll arrive late for the party.
a) rather b) fairly c) quite d) hardly
14. The kept me awake for some time last night.
a) fire work's noise b) fireworks' noise
c) noise of the fireworks d) firework noise
15. Those are shoes. They are too big.
a) man's b) mens' c) men's d) mens
16. There was not traffic on that road last night.
a) a lot b) many c) much d) hardly any
17. The garden will be closed next week.
a) children's b) childrens' c) child d) children
18. In a few the bell will ring, I think.
a) moments' b) moment's c) moments d) moments'
19. He hasn't got luggage.
a) many b) much c) few d) a few
20. How are you ? I am well, thank you.
a) rather b) fairly c) quite d) hardly
21. She has gone to collect some
a) woods b) firewood c) fire woods d) wood fire
22. I can't find the bag
a) nowhere b) everywhere
c) anywhere d) somewhere

23. I have a paper in my desk.
 a) lot b) little c) little of d) few
24. A lot of letters and cards came to day, but-for you
 a) there wasn't anything b) there wasn't something
 c) it wasn't anything d) there was something
25. Janet had furniture for her room.
 a) enough b) many c) a lot d) any
26. There are people than I expected.
 a) another b) fewer c) few d) other
27. We have looked for the keys we lost.
 a) everywhere b) somewhere
 c) anywhere d) every where
28. There are so many cars nowadays.
 a) for all places b) everywhere
 c) anywhere d) for every place
29. It is the film I've ever seen.
 a) most interesting b) most interested
 c) more interesting d) more interested
30. of them knew about the plan because it was secret.
 a) Few b) Some c) None d) Not any
31. I don't think we've met before. You are confusing with
 a) someone else b) other person
 c) some other d) another
32. he earns, the more he spends.
 a) For how much b) The most
 c) The more d) The best
33. I've answered that question.
 a) already b) yet c) almost d) still
34. We work for the same firm after 30 years.
 a) already b) yet c) still d) almost
35. I work I can.
 a) as hard as b) as hardly as
 c) so hardly as d) not as hardly as
36. He was tired to go on.
 a) too b) too much c) so d) very

37. It is mountain in the world.

- a) the most high b) the highest
c) the more high d) the higher

Ex. 43d). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. I play the piano well. (good)
2. I've qualifications in English teaching. (teacher)
3. Chinese is more difficult than English. (easy)
4. A vegetarian diet is healthier than a diet with meat in it. (as as)
5. Small shops are not as cheap as big department stores. (cheaper)
6. No city in Egypt is as crowded as Cairo. (most)
7. Playing tennis is more interesting than playing golf. (less)
8. Eating out is more expensive than eating at home. (as ... as)
9. The naughty boy was given severe punishment for his bad behaviour. (punished)
10. The bus takes a bit longer time than the train, but it is a lot cheaper. (The train)
11. I don't see why he got the job instead of me. My qualifications are far better than his. (His qualification)
12. My new nieghbours are more friendly than the old ones. (less)
13. He is a more fluent speaker of English than I am. (speaks)
14. My brother is slightly older than me. (I'm)
15. You can't run nearly as fast as me. (faster)
16. My father is more intelligent than my brother. (so as)
17. No man is as handsome as my father in our city. (most)
18. No student is as active as Maged. (more)
19. This is the most comfortable hotel I've ever stayed in. (No hotel)
20. I want you to be a more careful driver. (drive)
21. Driving fast is the most dangerous thing. (Nothing)
22. My uncle is the most important man in our town. (No man)

23. We have never seen anyone more curious than Samy.

(Samy)

24. Nagi likes horses better than any other animals in the farm.

(best)

25. February is shorter than any other month of the year.

(No month)

Ex43e) Study these examples . The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- I've never seen such a boring film.

It's the most boring film I've ever seen.

- If you work more, you'll be paid more.

The more you work, the more you'll be paid.

- She is taller than her brother.

Her brother isn't as tall as her/she is.

- That table is similar to this one.

That table and this table are alike.

- She's the quickest typist of all.

No other typist is as quick as she is / her.

She's quicker than any other typist.

- He's a terrible driver.

He drives terribly.

- Tim has got the same number of books as Tom.

Tom has as many books as Tim.

- This car is much more expensive than that one.

This car is far / a lot more expensive than that one.

That car is much/far less expensive than this one.

- Ann is very friendly to everyone.

Ann behaves in a friendly way to everyone.

- He hasn't made as many mistakes as last time.

He has made fewer mistakes than last time.

Using the word given and other words complete the sentences so that the second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence. You must use between two and five words. Make sure you don't change the word given The first sentence is done for you..

1- No other gymnast is as graceful as she is.

(most)

She is the most graceful gymnast of all.

- 2-I've never heard such a ridiculous statement. (the)
That is I've ever heard.
- 3-"She cooks well," Ann said. (good)
"SheAnn said.
- 4-If you try harder, you'll do better. (the)
The you'll do.
- 5-She is always respectful towards her parents. (way)
She always towards her parents
- 6-Our house and theirs are alike.. (similar)
Our house theirs.
- 7-She is the best singer of all. (good)
No other singer is.
- 8-Don't buy as much cheese as the last time. (less)
Buy the last time
- 9-He is noisier than his brothers. (noisy)
His brothers are is.
- 11-This ring is much more valuable than that one. (far)
That ring is this one.
- 12-He is the best teacher in the school. (good)
No one else in the school is he is.
- 13-My car is not so fast as his. (much)
His car mine.
- 14-Ann is the best singer of all. (better)
Ann else.
- 15-French isn't such a difficult language as Chinese.(more)
Chinese is French.
- 16-Sue is more patient than Emily. (as)
Emily isn't is.
- 17-Sally dresses more smartly than Pam. (less)
Pam dresses Sally.
- 18-They arrived later than we expected. (as)
They didn't arrive expected.

Inversion of subject and verb after Certain adverbs

يأتي الفعل والفاعل في صيغة الاستفهام بعد ظروف معينة عندما يأتي في أول الجملة مثال:
Hardly, Scarcely when, So, such, No sonnerthan,
seldom, little, even less, nor. Neither, on no account, in no

circumstances, not only, by no means, nowhere, at no time, never.

Only بعد ظروف تبدأ بـ

Only by chance, Only then, Only when, Only to day, Only yesterday, Only with difficulty, Only on rare occasions, Only by luck.

1. **Hardly** had he finished when somebody knocked at the door.
2. **Seldom** had I heard such a beautiful voice.
3. **Nowhere** did he make a greater impression than in Paris.
4. **Little** does he realize how foolish he looks.
5. **Never** have I heard such nonsense.
6. **On no account** must this switch be touched.
7. **Only by shouting** at the top of his voice was he able to make himself heard.
8. **Only by luck** could he score a goal.

Ex.(44) Rewrite the following sentences, putting the blacktyped words at the beginning and making the necessary changes :

1. He had **hardly** had his dinner when the servant came rushing in.
2. You know **little** of what goes on behind the scene.
3. You know **even less** what the teachers are thinking.
4. He **not only** showed her how to do it but offered to help her as well.
5. I have **never** in my life seen such a sight as this.
6. There has **rarely** been such a gathering of celebrities in our house.
7. You could **nowhere** find a better adviser.
8. I heard **only by chance** that his mother had died.
9. We have **seldom** been treated in such a rude way.
10. It has **at no time** been easier to enter a university than nowadays.
11. I **only** learnt the dreadful news today.
12. He became confused to **such a degree** that he didn't know where he was.

13. He did not hear a sound (Not a sound).
 14. They did not speak a word (Not a word).
 15. And he could not understand me. (Nor).

WORD ORDER ترتيب الكلمات في الجملة

الجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية تبدأ بالفاعل + الفعل + المفعول به + ظرف الطريقة + ظرف المكان + ظرف الزمان ويمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بظرف الزمان.

1- time/subject+ verb / object + manner + place + time.
 The children played games quietly in their room yesterday.
 or Yesterday the children played games quietly in their room.

2- توضع الصفة قبل الاسم الموصوف أو بعد Verb to Be
 They built a new school. He is intelligent.

3- الظروف التي توضح الطريقة توضع بعد المفعول به المباشر وأن لم يوجد توضع بعد الفعل مباشرة.

He studies his lessons well. He walks quickly.

4- ظرف yet يأتي عادة في نهاية الجملة و still بعد to be وقبل أي فعل آخر.
 He hasn't finished yet. She still dislikes him. She is still asleep.

5- الظروف التي تدل على تكرار الحدث adverbs of frequency توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد sometimes, often, usually, always, seldom etc to be.
 He is always ready for work. He usually gets up early.

Ex. (45a) Rearrange to form sentences :

1. doing - not finished - have - they - yet - homework - their.
2. Saturdays - me - see - comes - to - he - sometimes - on.
3. will - my pen - you - gladly - lend - wish - if - I - you.
4. on - he - quietly - sitting - that - has been - chair.
5. time-I have-your-sorry-I am-answer-had-to- not - letter.
6. since - in Rome - have been - quietly - I - living - 1965.
7. in the afternoon - leaving - they - Italy - are next - week - Thursday - on - for.
8. To-morrow-homework - finish - your - must - before - midday.
9. is - highly - his - by - colleagues - he - respected.
10. the baby - me - like - I - to hold - for - you - would.
11. ago-went- fetch - a few - he - upstairs - a coat - minutes - to.
12. returned-friends-o'clock-to-hotel-with-they-their - at - eleven.
13. morning - six - arrived - o'clock - this - she - at - Paris - from.

14. partially - for - blame - he - to - disaster - is - the.
15. generally - as - try - I - much - possible - evening - the - do -
in - to - as.

Additions to Remarks, Using Auxiliary Verbs.

Ex. (46a) Add to the following remarks using :

and so + the auxiliary + the noun / pronoun in brackets.
If there is an auxiliary in the first remark repeat this if not use do / does / did.

1. He lives in London (I) He lives in London and so do I.
2. He had to wait. (You) He had to wait and so had you.
1. I have read it. (Nagi)
2. He is a writer (She).
3. Anwar can speak English. (his wife).
4. She ought to get up. (You).
5. He wants to help us. (she)
6. The pork was bad. (the beef)
7. The first bus was full. (the second)
8. I bought a ticket. (my brother)
9. You must come. (your son)
10. This bus goes to Heliopolis. (that)
11. I'm getting out at the next stop. (my friend)
12. He used to work in a restaurant. (I)

Ex. (46b) Add to the following remarks using.

and neither / nor + the auxiliary + the noun / pronoun in brackets e.g.

He isn't back. (She) He isn't back and neither is she.

13. I haven't seen it. (Mary).
14. You don't know the way. (your aunt)
15. They didn't use it (we)
16. He can't come. (his sister)
17. I don't believe it (Janet)
18. Samy couldn't understand. (Laila)
19. I'm not going. (You)
20. This telephone doesn't work. (that)
21. Ali's dog won't bite you. (mine).

22. I hadn't any change.
23. He didn't know the way.
24. My father wouldn't mind.

(the taxi driver).
(anyone else).
(my mother).

Contrary additions.

Ex. (47a) Add to the following remarks using.

but + noun / pronoun + the auxiliary or do / did / does.

Make a negative addition to an affirmative remark.

e.g. She thanked me. (he). She thanked me but he didn't.

Make an affirmative to a Negative remark.

e.g. She can't eat oysters(I)She can't eat systers but I can.

Use needn't at the negative of must, and must as the affirmative of needn't.

25. Nabil was seasick.
26. He wasn't there
27. You must go.
28. My sister can speak German.
29. Alexander didn't want to wait.
30. Magdy needn't stay.
31. A cat couldn't eat it
32. He will enjoy it
33. The teacher hadn't got a television set.
34. This beach is safe for bathing.

(Mary).
(she)
(your brother)
(I)
(kamal)
(Samia)
(a dog)
(his wife)
(his pupils).
(that beach)

أنواع الجمل Kinds of Sentences

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. The simple sentence | ١- الجملة البسيطة |
| 2. The compound sentence | ٢- الجملة المركبة |
| 3. The complex sentence | ٣- الجملة المعقدة |

الجملة البسيطة The Simple Sentence

تتكون الجملة البسيطة من فاعل + فعل أساس واحد + المفعول به.

Subject + Verb + Object

1. The children played with their toys.
2. The Nile runs through Egypt.

Joining two Simple Sentences :

ربط جملتين بسيطتين

١ - باستعمال صفة **adjective** أو **Adjectival phrase** أو عبارة وصفية

Two Simple Sentences One Combined Sentence

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. The boy is clever. | The clever boy answers well. |
| 2. He answers well. | |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. The soldiers are on the front lines, | The soldiers on the front lines |
| 2. They protect our country. | protect our country. |

٢ - باستعمال **a participial phrase** تعبير من أسم الفاعل

Two Simple sentences One Combined Sentence

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. He had finished his composition. | Having finished his composition, |
| 2. He revised it راجعها | he revised it. |
| 1. The day was hot. | The day, being hot . |
| 2. I did not go out. | I did not go out. |

٣ - باستعمال **a preposition** حرف جر

Two Simple Sentences One Combined Sentence

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. This boy succeeds | This boy succeeds by working hard. |
| 2. He works hard. | |
| 1. He wrote his composition. | He wrote his composition without . |
| 2. No one helped him. | help from anyone. |

٤ - باستعمال المصدر **The Infinitive**

Two Simple Sentences

One Combined Sentence

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. He went to Tanta. | He went to Tanta to |
| 2. He wished to visit his uncle. | visit his uncle. |

1. The boy wanted to go to the cinema
2. He asked his father The boy asked his father **to let him go**
to the cinema
1. I was unable to complete my work. I had **not enough time**
2. I had not enough time **to complete** my work
1. The man was weak. The man was **too weak to walk.**
2. He could not walk.

Ex. (48a) Join the following simple sentences using different ways, the principal verb is written in black :

1. I was standing behind the door. No one **saw** me.
2. He ran to catch the train. He **fell**.
3. The clocks **work** by electricity. They are in the street.
4. I **decided** to act without his help. I was tired of waiting.
5. We **walked** along the street. It was busy.
6. The workmen **went** home. They had not finished their work.
7. The servant **took** a holiday. He did not ask me.
8. He **sharpened** the pencil. He used an old razor.
9. I felt sorry for the blind man. I **gave** him a piaster.
10. The floor was dirty. I **told** the servant to wash it.
11. He **made** many mistakes. He was ignorant of his work.
12. My watch has stopped. I **did not know** the time.
13. We blew up the ball. We **used** a bicycle pump.
14. The explorer **has made** a great journey across the desert.
His aim was to discover the lost oasis.
15. The questions **were** difficult. Ali could not answer them.
16. He **spoke** slowly and clearly. He wished everyone to understand him.
17. You are trying to open the box. **Can you show me ?**
18. The town **was decorated**. The citizens wished to honour the
President.

Ex(48b): A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Havinghis work, he returned home.
a) did b) done c) doing d) do
2.with the result, he felt at ease.
a) Satisfied b) Satisfy c) Satisfying d) Satisfies

3. They achieved good progress byday and night.
 a) work b) working c) worked d) works
4. I need your help. Don't leave without.....the situation to me.
 a) explain b) explained
 c) explains d) explaining
4. The boy was stupid to answer any of the teacher's simple question.
 a) very b) so c) too d) such
6.the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friends.
 a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing
7. The machines.....in our factory are up-to-date.
 a) using b) use c) used d)uses
8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk.
 a) was b) being c) been d) be
9. I will have a new suit.....next week.
 a) make b) making c) makes d) made
10. Don't let him ...the place unless he tells u all about this matter.
 a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving
11. The road, being.....,we arrived very late for the meeting.
 a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks
12. He will get his carthis week.
 a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs
13. She fell while.....to catch the bus.
 a) run b) ran c) runs d) running

Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without)
 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being)
 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using)
 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having)
 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve them. (too)

The Compound Sentence الجملة المركبة

It consists of two simple sentences joined with certain Conjunctions such as تتكون من جملتين بسيطتين مربوطتين بأداة ربط معينة and -(both-and)-(not only - but also)-as well as - but - yet - however - nevertheless - thus - so - therefore - (either - or) - or- otherwise - (neither - nor).

1. And تستعمل لربط جملتين متصلتين ببعضها الآخر

Ex. The boy opened the door. The boy walked into the room.
They boy opened the door and walked into the room.

2. Both - and

a) Ali is clever. b) Ahmed is clever too.

Both Ali and Ahmed are clever.

لاحظ أ، الفعل في الجملة السابقة تحول إلى جمع are لأن الفاعل أصبح جمع

3. Not only but also لكن أيضا ليس فقط

لربط جملتين بسيطتين وللتأكيد لاحظ إستعمالاتها المختلفة.

a) He listens carefully in class. b) He works hard at home.
He, **not only** listens carefully in class, **but also**, he works hard at home.

في الجملة السابقة يمكن استعمال as well as بدلا من **Not only - but also**
He listens carefully in class **as well as** he works hard at home.

إذا استعملت **Not only** في أول الجملة يوضع الفعل بعدها في صيغة استفهام.

Not only does he listen carefully in class, **but also** the works hard at home.

2a) Ali has passed his examination.

b) Ali has obtained full marks.

Ali has **not only** passed his examination, **but also** he has obtained full marks.

Not only has Ali passed his examination but also has obtained full marks.

3. As well as وأيضا

a) He spoke English well. b) He spoke French well.

He spoke English **as well as** French well.

ملحوظة : هناك أستعمال معين **as well as** أدرس جيدا الأمثلة الآتية :

a) I am interested in music. My brother is interested in music too.

I, **as well as** my brother **am** interested in music.

لاحظ أ، الفعل **am** يتبع الفاعل الأول (I) في مثل هذه الجملة.

a) She is fond of swimming.

b) Her cousins are fond of swimming too.

She, as well as her cousins, **is** fond of swimming.

4. **But-yet** لكن **however – nevertheless** إلا أن **whereas**

لربط جملتين بسيطتين متناقضتين :

a) Winter is cold.

b) Summer is hot.

Winter is cold but **(yet-however)** summer is hot.

b) He was blind. He could find his way.

He was blind, **however (but-nevertheless)** he could find his way.

5. **Thus-so-therefore-hence-consequently and. as a result.**

لربط جملتين بسيطتين والجملة الثانية تكون نتيجة للجملة الأولى وأي أداة تحمل محمل الأخرى.

a) He was very tired.

b) He could not walk.

He was very tired so, **(thus-therefore)** he could not walk.

a) She was sick.

b) She went to the doctor.

She was sick, **consequently (hence)**, she went to the doctor.

6. **(Either أو or أما أو otherwise أو)** للاختيار

a) Yes must study hard.

b) You will not get high marks.

1. **Either you must study hard or you will not get high marks.**

2. You must **either** study hard **or** you will not get high marks.

3. You must study hard, **otherwise (or)** you will not get high marks.

Either I or he, is to blame. في هذه الحالة الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

7. **Nether لا.....nor** ولا

لربط جملتين منفيتين

a) He cannot read.

b) He cannot write.

He can **neither** read **nor** write.

b) He does not understand the lesson.

c) He does not answer the question either.

He neither understands the lesson nor answers the questions.

إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ **neither** يوضع الفعل بعدها وبعد **nor** في صيغة الإستفهام.

Neither does he understand the lesson nor does he answer the questions.

a) He did not come early.

b) He did not stop talking either.

Neither did he come early nor did he stop talking.

Ex. (49a) Join the following pairs of sentences to make one compound sentence : Don't use "And".

1. Ali works badly. He plays well.
2. He must obey me. I will punish him.
3. We come to school on Sunday. We have a holiday on Friday.
4. He is clever. He is intelligent too.
5. The pupil gave a suitable answer. He got high marks.
6. He worked much. He did not receive any money.
7. He must pay the money. He will go to prison.
8. I gave him money. I found him work.
9. The gardener did not plant seeds. He did not water the garden.
10. He spent all his wealth. He robbed his brother.
11. He wrote fine plays. He acted in them.
12. He broke his promise. He told a lie.
13. He must do the work thoroughly. I shall dismiss him.
14. My friend Salah is good at games. He is good at his lessons.
15. I don't believe his story. I don't believe yours.

Ex.(49 B) Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. You must take the medicine regularly. You won't get better.
(Either ..)
2. The thief robbed the man of his money. He killed him.
(Not only)
3. She sings beautifully. She also paints well. (as well as)
4. He has done his best. His brother has done his best.
(Both and)
5. A violent storm began. The river overflowed its banks.
(consequently)
6. My father has seen this film. He has read the book. (Not only)
7. Illiterate people cannot read. They cannot write.
(Neither)
8. The boy eats too much. He sleeps too much. (Not only)
9. The boy worked hard. He made progress. (and as a result)
10. I have visited France. I have visited Italy too. (both)

Ex49c) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d and

- 1- The bus was very late we decided to take a taxi.
a) yet b) however c) as well d) so
- 2- He was rude, the teacher punished him.
a) and as a result b) but c) nor d) as well

- 3- It was cold she wasn't wearing a coat.
 a) and as a result b) so c) nevertheless d) as well
- 4- The lecture was very important few students attended it.
 a) and as a result b) therefore c) yet d) as well
- 5- Usama drives a car Adel rides a motorbike.
 a) and as a result b) therefore
 c) fence d) whereas
- 6- She is both intelligent beautiful.
 a) and b) but c) yet d) as well
- 7- I have never been to the opera and has my cousin.
 a) but b) nor c) also d) hence
- 8- I felt ill I stayed in bed.
 a) and as a result b) however
 c) yet d) nor
- 9-he does the work thoroughly or leave the job.
 a) Neither b) Either c) Also d) As well
- 10- did he visit London nor did he visit Paris.
 a) Neither b) Also c) Either d) Both
- 11- Her room was in a mess, ... she had to spend hours tidying it.
 a) yet b) also
 c) consequently d) however
- 12- You can either call her send her a letter.
 a) or b) nor c) otherwise d) yet
- 13- Nagi is tall and strong.
 a) either b) nor c) or d) both
- 14- the maths test nor the literature test were easy.
 a) Both b) Neither c) Either d) All
- 15- Salwa might beat home tonight or she might be at her sister's.
 a) either b) neither c) both d) as well
- 16- The disco was very smoky we could hardly breathe.
 a) but b) however c) so d) as well
- 17- He worked extremely hard he got a promotion.
 a) therefore b) yet c) either d) neither
- 18- John's flat was on fire he didn't panic.
 a) therefore b) nevertheless
 c) consequently d) as well
- 19- His mother is French his father is Polish.
 a) therefore b) either c) whereas d) both
- 20- He did his best he came last.
 a) and as a result b) therefore c) also d) yet

The Relative Pronouns الأسماء الموصولة

who-whom-which (that) whose. as – but

الذي – التي – الذين – اللاتي (اللاتي)

الأسماء الموصولة تربط جملتين بسيطتين وتحل محل اسم مكرر في جملتين لتكون جملة واحدة معقدة.

1. Who (that)

للفاعل العاقل مفرد وجمع

1. The man served me. The man was standing behind the counter

كلمة **The man** مكررة في الجملتين ويمكن حذف الثانية التي في الجملة الفرعية ووضع **who** بدلا منها.

The man **who was standing** behind the counter, served me.

2. The boy succeeds every year. He is clever.

The boy **who is clever**, succeeds every year.

4. I saw a **fat man**. He could not walk.

I saw a fat man **who could not walk**.

يلاحظ في الأمثلة السابقة أن اسم الموصول **Who** يوضع بعد الاسم الذي يعود عليه مباشرة ويمكن أن تحل **that** محل **who**.

2. Whom (that)

للمفعول به العاقل مفرد وجمع

1. That is **the boy**. I met **him** on Friday.

That is **the boy whom I** met on Friday.

يلاحظ في الجملة السابقة أن **Whom** وضعت محل **him** وهي مفعول به في الجملة الثانية.

2. I know **that girl**. You spoke to **her**.

I know **that girl whom you** spoke to.

I know **that girl to whom you** spoke.

يمكن وضع حرف الجر قبل الاسم الموصول أو بعد الفعل.

3. This is the man. I was helped by **him**.

This is the man **by whom I** was helped.

This is the man **whom I** was helped by.

4. This is the gentleman, I meet **him** every day.

This is **the gentleman whom I** meet every day.

في جميع الجمل السابقة نلاحظ أن **whom** وضعت محل المفعول به أو قبل الاسم الموصول.

3. which (that)

للفاعل والمفعول به غير العاقل

1. This is the train. I came by it.

This is **the train which I** came by.

or. This is **the train by which I** came.

2. I like the song. Mary sang it.

I like **the song which Mary** sang.

3. I live in a house. It is surrounded by a garden.

I live in a house which is surrounded by a garden.

نلاحظ في الجمل السابقة أن **which** حلت محل الفاعل أو المفعول به غير العاقل ويمكن لحرف الجر أن يوضع قبل الاسم الموصول أو بعد الفعل.

4. Whose

للملكية عاقل وغير عاقل

my - his - her - its - your - their - our - 's

1. I know a man. His wealth is great.

I know a man whose wealth is great.

2. The man became poor. The thieves robbed his shop.

The man whose shop the thieves robbed, became poor.

3. We climbed a mountain. Its top is high.

We climbed a mountain whose top is high.

4. I saw a girl. The girl's eyes are blue.

I saw a girl whose eyes are blue.

نلاحظ في الأمثلة السابقة أن **Whose** حلت محل صفات الملكية.

5. As

تستعمل **as** كأسم موصول عندما تسبقها كلمة **same** أو **such** مثال ذلك :

1. Meet me at the same place as you did yesterday.

2. This is the same book as I bought.

في المثالين السابقين **as** تعني **which** لأنه تسبقها كلمة **same**

3. This is not such a good result as I hoped.

4. I never say such things as you do.

6. But

يمكن أن تستعمل **but** كأسم موصول ولكن للنفي نفى (who-not) أو (which-not)

1. There is no one but regrets his death.

There is no one who does not regret his death.

2. There is no plant but requires water.

There is no plant which does not require water.

لا تستعمل **which** بعد **all** وبعد **the best** ولكن تستعمل **that**

I know all that he said.

5. You can omit "that" "who" "which" when they are the object of the verb in the relative clause.

عندما تكون مفعول به يمكن حذف "that" أو "who" أو "which"

Example:

A) The woman whom you met yesterday lives next door.

The woman you met yesterday, lives next door.

B) The car **which you wanted** to buy, was not for sale.

The car **you wanted** to buy, was not for sale.

C) The **thing which I really liked** about it was its size.

The **thing I really liked** about it, was its size.

Warning تحذير

6. You cannot omit that "who" or "which" when they are, the subject of the verb in the relative clause.

For example, you say "The woman who lives next door is very friendly. You don't say." The woman lives next door is very friendly.

7. A relative pronoun can be the object of a preposition. Usually the preposition goes at the end of the clause.

1st. I wanted to do the job **which I'd been training for**.

2nd. The house **that we lived in** was huge.

8. You can often omit the relative pronoun that is the object of a preposition.

1st. Mary was the only person (**whom**). I could talk to.

2nd. She's the girl (**whom**) I sang the song for.

9. You can use "when" "where" and "why" in defining relative clauses after certain nouns. You use "when" after time or time words such as "day" "or" "year". You use "where" after "place" or place words such as "room" "street". You use "why" after reason.

a) There had been a **time when** she hated all men.

b) This is the **year when** profits should increase.

c) He showed me **the place where** they were.

d) That was the **room where** I did my homework.

e) There were several **reasons why** we can't do that.

f) The reason **why I'm calling** you is to tell you good news

Ex. (50A) Join the following pairs of sentence, using a relative pronoun. Don't use "that".

1. He told me a tale. I never heard it before.

2. Mary can solve her problems. She is intelligent.

3. The doctor examined the man. The man was ill.

4. I visited my friend. He was absent from school.

5. The police caught the thief. The thief robbed the shop.
6. Do you know the boy ? I spoke to you about him.
7. Those children are in my class. You saw them studying grammar.
8. The man is the pilot of the plane. I was talking with him.
9. This is the plan. I came to London by it.
10. These two men were decorated for bravery. I am proud of them.
11. A man died in the street today. His name is unknown.
12. The boy walked slowly. His leg was injured.
13. I never saw such bad work. Samy has done it.
14. This is the same story. Laila told it.
15. Meet me at the same place. You met me in it yesterday.
16. He only does such work. He is forced to do it.
17. The pilot has flown 10,000 miles. I went in his plane.
18. Mary has invited us to tea. Her mother makes lovely cakes.
19. The man was annoyed. The man's flat was robbed.
20. Here is the book. You asked for it yesterday.

Ex. (50B) Choose the correct answers :

1. The man (**who-whose-whom-where**) I met yesterday, lent me some money.
2. Ashraf (**whom-which-who-whose**) wife is ill, cannot come to the party.
3. This is the car (**whom-whose-who-which**) I use every day.
4. Where is the hat (**which-whose-whom-who**) I wore yesterday
5. Here is the chair (**which-whose-whom**) is worth L 70.
6. Mary is a good typist (**whom-which- where-who**) gets high salary.
7. Mary is a good typist (**which-who-whose-whom**) the manager has great faith in.
8. The horse (**who-which-whom-whose**) I selected won the race.
9. Put it on this table (**whom-whose-where-which**) is conveniently close.
10. Her husband (**which-who-whom-whose**) is older than she, is a bank manager.
11. The eldest son (**who-which-whom-whose**) work is in the army, is twenty four.

12. The eldest son (**which-whose-who-whom**) is in the army is twenty four.
13. I want to borrow a story (**who-whom-whose-which**) is not too long.
14. All (**which - whom- who-that**) I have, is yours.
15. This is the best (**who-that-whose-whom**) I can do for you.
16. This is definitely the place (**when - where - why - whose**) I lived.
17. Do you remember the time, (**when - where - whose - why**) we got lost?
18. There must be a good reason (**when - where - why - whose**) he was late.
19. They are building a hospital in the street, (**when - where - why - whose**) we live.
20. Hisham is the one (**who - whom - where - whose**) car you borrowed?
21. Can you give me any reason, (**why - when - where - whose**) I should help you?
22. Nagi is the one (**who - whose - where - which**) desk is next to mine.
23. This is the neighborhood (**when - why - where - which**) I spent most of my childhood.
24. The reason (**when - why - where - which**) Engy can't come to your party is that she has to study for her exams.
25. The little corner shop (**when - why - where - which**) I used to buy my groceries is now a huge supermarket.
26. What is the reason (**why - when - where - which**) Adel didn't come to school today?
27. Samy didn't realize that the restaurant (**why - when - which - where**) we ate last night was your father's.
28. Do you remember the day (**why - when - where - whose**) we first met?
29. Engy didn't explain (**why - when - which - whose**) she didn't attend the meeting.
30. That's the island (**where - when - which - whose**) they discovered the ancient city.

The Complex Sentence الجملة المعقدة

الجملة المعقدة تتكون من :

- ١ - جملة رئيسية **principal clause** وهذه تؤدي معنى كامل بمفردها.
- ٢ - جملة فرعية أو أكثر **Subordinate clause** وهذه لا يمكن أن تؤدي معنى كامل بمفردها :

تنقسم الجملة المعقدة إلى ثلاث أجزاء :

- ١ - الجملة الاسمية (التي تؤدي عمل الاسم) **1. Noun clause**
- ٢ - الجملة الوصفية (التي تؤدي عمل الصفة) **2. Adjective clause**
- ٣ - الجملة الظرفية (التي تؤدي عمل الظرف) **3. Adverbial clause**

The Adjective Clause الجملة الوصفية

هذه الجملة تؤدي عمل الصفة

Forms of adjectives:

شكل الصفة:

١ - صفة بسيطة عادية مثل **clever boy-intelligent girl - wise man**

verb + ing

exciting film interesting book

كتاب مثير

٢ - **Past Participle** التصريف الثالث للفعل يستعمل أحيانا صفة مثال ذلك :

educated man رجل متعلم - **broken bottle** زجاجة مكسورة

sunken ship سفينة غارقة - **written exercise** تمرين تحريري

ويمكن استعمال مشتقات من التصريف الثالث لتكوين الصفات مثل :

an air conditioned house منزل مكيف الهواء

a talented composer ملحن موهوب - **a narrow minded man** رجل ضيق الأفق

٤ - مجموعة من الكلمات تصف كلمة واحدة مثال ذلك :

1. The pupils **in the third year**.
2. The people **living in Alexandria**.

الجملة الوصفية هي تحويل الصفة أيا كان شكلها إلى جملة باستعمال.

الأسماء الموصولة + **verb to be** أو أي فعل مناسب + الصفة

ويسمى ذلك تحويل الجملة كلها من **simple** إلى **complex**

والمقصود هو تحويل من **phrase** إلى **clause**

لدرس الأمثلة الآتية بعناية : **Study very carefully these examples**

1. The clever boy succeeds every year.

جملة بسيطة تتكون من فاعل + فعل أساسي واحد.

لتحويل هذه الجملة البسيطة إلى جملة معقدة **complex** أي لتحويلها من **phrase** إلى

clause نصنع جملة جديدة (فاعل + فعل) من الصفة الموجودة باستعمال (الاسم الموصول

المناسب + **to be** + الصفة) فنقول :

The boy **who is clever** succeeds every year. **complex / clause**

Principal clause جملة رئيسية **subordinate clause**

The boy succeeds every year, **who is clever.**

2. The wise man can solve his problems. **simple / phrase.**

The man **who is wise** can solve his problems **complex / clause.**

٣ - وعند تحليل هذه الجملة نقول :

Principal clause **subordinate clause**

The man can solve his problems, **who is wise**

3. People **living in Alexandria** enjoy the sea. **simple / phrase**

People **who are living** in Alexandria enjoy the sea.

complex / clause

People **who live** in Alexandria enjoy the sea **complex / clause**

في الجملة السابقة يمكن استعمال **to be** + الصفة أو يمكن استعمال الفعل من **living**

4. The pupils **who** are in the third year must work hard.

Simple / Phrase

يلاحظ في الجمل السابقة أننا استعملنا الاسم الموصول **who** ليصف العاقل.

5. I have read **an interesting** story. **simple / phrase.**

I have read **a story which was** interesting. **complex / clause**

عند تحليل الجملة السابقة نقول :

principal clause جملة فرعية **subordinate clause** جملة رئيسية

I have read a story, **which was interesting**

6. I saw a **wonderful** film. **simple / phrase**

I saw a **film which was** wonderful **complex / clause**

7. Mary lives **in an air-conditioned** house. **simple / phrase**

Mary lives in a house **which is air conditioned.**

complex / clause

8. We live in a house **containing many rooms.**

simple / phrase

We live in a house **which is containing many rooms.**

complex / clause

We live in a house **which contains many** rooms

complex / clause

ملحوظة : الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ **ing** وتصبح صفات تصف أشياء غير عاقلة.

الأفعال في التصريف التالي يمكن أن تصبح صفات للعاقل فقط مثال ذلك :

He saw **an exciting** film.

He was **excited** when he saw the film.

عند التحويل من **complex** إلى **simple** أو من **clause** إلى **phrase**
تُحذف الأسماء الموصولة + **to be** أو الفعل المصاحب للاسم الموصول. وإذا كانت
الصفة بسيطة (كلمة واحدة) توضع قبل الاسم الذي تصفه.
أما إذا كانت الصفة مركبة (عبارة) فتوضع بعد الاسم الذي تصفه.

1. The man **who is intelligent** can overcome his problem.

Complex/clause

The **intelligent man** can overcome his problems.

Simple/clause

نلاحظ في المثال السابق أن الصفة **intelligent** صفة بسيطة لذلك توضع قبل الاسم
الموصوف عند التحويل إلى **simple** أو **phrase**.

2. I bought a suit **which is made of wool** **complex/clause**

I bought a suit **made of wool** **simple/phrase**

3. People **who are** learned behave wisely. **complex/clause**

Learned people behave wisely. **simple/phrase**

4. The man **who was wounded** could regain his health:

complex/clause

The **wounded man** could regain his health. **simple/phrase**

5. Students **who are careless**, are always punished.

simple/clause

Careless students are always punished. **simple/clause**

Ex. (51a) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. Violent winds pull out trees. (which)
2. The students answered the questions which were difficult. (Omit which)
3. The government decided to educate the illiterate people. (who)
4. The man playing the piano is my friend. (who)
5. The girl who has golden hair, answers well. (Omit - who)
6. My friend bought a car which was old. (Omit - which)
7. Our brave soldiers have freed our land. (who)
8. His broad minded though has helped us. (which)
9. Books which are written by hand are put in museums. (Omit - which)

10. Minerals found in Egypt will help in developing the country. (which)
11. Hard working students always attain their ends. (who)
12. The passengers on this train escaped death. (who)
13. People like faithful friends. (who)
14. The carpenter repaired the broken chair. (which)
15. Clouds which were heavy caused rain today. (Omit-which)
16. Narrow minded people always face troubles. (who)
17. We admire their unconquerable spirit. (which)
18. Homeless children should be housed in healthy homes. (Who)
19. The goods which were in the shop window were damaged by fire. (Omit-which)
20. A useful book gives knowledge. (which)

II. Adverbial Clauses

1. Clause of Purpose

The conjunctions أدوات الربط

So that-in order that-in the hope that-that (لكي)

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين بينهما علاقة غرض أو هدف وتكون جملة واحدة **complex** **so that** أو **in order that** أو **in the hope that** أو **that** بعد

may إذا كان الفعل مضارع.

يأتي فاعل + **might** إذا كان الفعل ماضي + المصدر

1. He works hard. **He wants to get** high marks.

He works hard **so that he may/can** get high marks.

في المثال السابق جملتين بسيطتين بعد ربطهما بـ **so that** أصبحت جملة واحدة **complex** **so that he may / can get high marks** والجملة **clause** تصبح

2. They went to Alexandria. They wished to enjoy the sea.

They went to Alexandria **in order that they might** enjoy the sea.

جملتين بسيطتين أصبحت جملة واحدة **complex**

والجملة **in order that they might enjoy the sea** تصبح **clause**

3. He travelled abroad. He hoped to find work.

He travelled abroad **in the hope that he might** find work.

والجملة **in the hope that he might find work** تصبح **clause**

ولتحويل أي جملة بها **so that** ومثيلاتها من **Complex** إلى **Simple**

أي تحويلها من **Clause** إلى **Phrase**

تُحذف هذه الأدوات (أدوات الربط السابقة) + الفاعل + **may** أو **might** بعدها وتُضَع بدلاً منها **to, so as to, in order to + infinitive**

الاسم **noun** + يهدف **or for - with the intention of-with the aim of** **or verb + ing**

1. He works hard **so that he may get** high marks.

complex/clause

He works hard **so as to / in order to/to** get high marks.

simple/phrase.

or He works hard **for getting** high marks. **simple/phrase.**

2. They went to Alexandria **in order that they might** enjoy the sea.

complex/clause

They went to Alexandria **so as to/in order to/to** enjoy the sea.

Simple/Phrase

They went to Alexandria **for/ with the intention of / with the aim of** enjoying the sea.

عند التحويل من Simple إلى Complex أي تحويل من Phrase إلى Clause اتبع العكس

He ran quickly **so as to catch** the train. Simple/Phrase

He ran quickly **so that he might** catch the train.

Complex/Clause

خشية أن Lest-for fear that

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين بينهما علاقة غرض أو هدف وتكون جملة واحدة.
بعد Lest أو for fear that يأتي فاعل + should مع جميع الضمائر + المصدر
مثال ذلك:

1. He worked hard. He was afraid to fail.

He worked hard **lest he should fail.** complex/Clause

2. He got up early. He was afraid to miss the train.

He got up early **for fear that he should miss** the train.

complex/Clause

3. I opened the door quickly. I did not want to disturb him.

I opened the door **lest I should disturb** him

complex/Clause

لتحويل جملة بها lest أو for fear that من complex إلى simple أي من clause إلى phrase .

تُحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + should ويوضع بدلاً منها :

so as not to + infinitive.

or **for fear of + noun or infinitive + ing**

1. He worked hard **lest he should fail.** complex/Clause

He worked hard **so as not to fail.** phrase

or He worked hard **for fear of failing.** (failure) simple

2. He got up early for fear that he should miss the train. clause

He got up early **so as not to miss** the train. phrase

He got up early **for fear of missing** the train simple

كذلك عند التحويل من simple إلى complex أي phrase إلى clause تتبع الخطوات السابقة مثال ذلك :

1. He went with a guide **so as not to lose** his way. simple

He went with a guide **lest he should lose** his way. complex

In case + present tense In case + past tense

Take your credit card **in case** you run out cash.

He took a jumper **in case** it got cold.

Note: We can express negative purpose by using:

a) prevent + noun / pronoun + from + ing form

She covered the sofa with a sheet **to prevent it (from) getting** dirty.

b) avoid + ing form .

They set off early in the morning **to avoid getting stuck** in traffic.

Ex. (52a) Join the following to make one complex sentence

1. He went home. He wanted to take rest.
2. They spent the day in the Barrage. They hoped to enjoy the fresh air.
3. The students worked hard. They were afraid to fail.
4. She went to the doctor. She wished the doctor to examine her.
5. They kept the child in a warm room. They feared he would take cold.
6. The doctor cleaned the instruments. He was afraid the wound would fester. يتلوث
7. He told me a funny story. He wanted me to forget my sadness.
8. She answered perfectly. She wished to get the top prize.
9. We stopped using plastic bags. We wanted to protect the environment.
10. Nagi takes his bicycle to work. He wants to reduce traffic pollution.
11. The government has introduced stricter traffic laws. They want to reduce road accidents.
12. Hany offered me some flowers. He wanted to apologise for his behaviour.
13. We should recycle paper. We want to protect the forests.
14. I had a glass of water before I went to bed. I didn't want to be thirsty during the night.
15. They arrived at the airport three hours early. They feared to miss the flight.

16. Hassan called the police station. He wanted to report a break-in at his flat.

Ex. (52b) Change the black typed clauses into phrase and vice versa :

1. He went home **so as to study** his lessons.
2. They got up early **so that they might enjoy** the fresh air.
3. He disguised **تكر** himself **so as not to be recognised**.
4. The policeman hurried **in order that he could catch** the thief.
5. The army marched quickly **to surprise** the enemy.
6. He saved his money **lest he should fall** in trouble.
7. The pupils listened carefully **to understand** the lesson.
8. He hurried to the station **for fear of missing** the train.
9. My uncle travelled to Europe **with the intention of taking** a degree.
10. Many of our soldiers sacrificed their lives **so as to free** our land.

Ex. (52c) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. We waged the war so that we could restore our land.
(with the aim of)
2. We decided to conquer Israil to break the myth **أسطورة** of her army.
(so that)
3. The boys escaped for fear of being punished. (lest)
4. He sat in the furthest corner lest he should be seen.
(for fear of)
5. I gave up sugar and butter because I didn't want to put on weight.
(lest)
6. I came to live in the country because I wanted to have trees around me instead of buildings. (so that)
7. She moved carefully because she didn't want to wake the children.
(lest)
8. She left quietly because she didn't want to make any troubles.
(for fear that)
9. We covered the furniture because we didn't want to get paint all over it.
(so as not to)

10. I waved my arm because I wanted him to see me.
(in order that)
11. He wore a disguise because he didn't want his friends to recognize him.
(lest)
12. Take your mobile phone. It is possible that someone may call you.
(in case)
13. She put her jewellery in the hotel safe. She didn't want it to get stolen.
(prevent)
14. He checked the answering machine. There may have been a message for him.
(in case)
15. I always lock the doors and windows. I don't want to be burgled.
(avoid)
16. We'll take some food with us. We might get hungry. (in case)
17. I've bought some extra blankets because it might get colder at night.
(in case)
18. She locked the money in the safe. Someone might steal it.
(prevent)
19. She put on suntan oil. She didn't want to get burnt. (avoid)
20. The doctor took his medicine bag. Someone might have been hurt.
(in case)

2. Clause Of Result

أدوات الربط The conjunctions

{ **so + adjective or adverb + that**
such + noun + that } لدرجة أن
 جدا

أدوات تربط جملتين لتكون جملة واحدة **Complex**

so بعد تأتي صفة وبعد **that** تأتي جملة (فاعل + فعل) نتيجة للصفة بعد **so**

such بعد يأتي اسم وبعد **that** يأتي جملة (فاعل + فعل) نتيجة للاسم بعد **such**

1. He is very strong. He can defeat his rival. منافس

He is **so strong that** he can defeat his rival. **complex/ clause**

2. He was very clever. He passed the examination.

He was **so clever that** he passed the examination.

complex/ clause

3. She was very polite. She respected everyone.

She was **so polite that** she respected everyone.

complex/ clause

بعد ربط الجملتين بـ **so.....that** تصبح جملة واحدة **complex**

1. He is **so strong that he can** defeat his rival.

2. He was **so clever that he passed** the examination.

3. She was **so polite that she respected** everyone.

في الجمل الثلاث السابقة استعملنا **so + الصفة + that**

وسوف نرى استعمال **that + الاسم + such** في نفس الجمل.

1. He is **such a strong man that** he can defeat his rival.

2. He was **such a clever boy that**he passed the examination.

3. She was **such a polite girl, that** she respected everyone.

يمكن استعمال اسم بعد **such** هذا يلزم تحويل **to be** إلى **to have** مثال ذلك (مع نفس الجمل الثلاث).

1. He **has such strength that** he can defeat his rival.

2. He **had such cleverness that**he passed the examination.

3. She **has such politeness that** she respected everyone.

إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ (الصفة - **so**) أو (الاسم - **such**) يوضع الفعل بعدها في صيغة الاستفهام مثال ذلك :

1. She was **such a polite girl that** she respected everyone.

Such a polite girl was she that she respected everyone.

2. He spoke **so clearly that** I heard him.

So clearly did he speak that I heard him.

3. She sings **so beautifully that** I admire her.

So beautifully does she sing that I admire her.

جميع الجمل السابقة **complex** والجمل منها التي تبدأ بـ **that** متبته تعتبر **clause** ولتحويل جملة بها **so that** أو **such that** من **complex** إلى **simple** أو من **clause** إلى **phrase** تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعد **that** ونضع بدلا منها (المصدر + **enough to** + الصفة).

1. He was **so clever that** he passed the examination.

complex / clause

He was **clever enough to** pass the examination.

simple / phrase

2. He was **such a strong man that** he defeated his rival.

complex / clause

He was **strong enough to** defeat his rival. **simple / phrase**

إذا كان الفاعل في الجملة بعد **that** يختلف عن الفاعل الأول عند تحويل الجملة إلى **simple** تستعمل (المصدر + **to** + الفاعل الثاني + **enough for** + الصفة).

1. She was **so polite that** everyone respected her.

complex / clause

She was **polite enough for everyone** to respect her.

simple / phrase

2. He was **such a wise man that** people praised him.

complex / clause

He was **wise enough for people** to praise him.

simple / phrase

لتحويل جملة من **phrase** إلى **clause** أو من **simple** إلى **complex** اتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة مثال ذلك :

1. This book is **small enough to** go in my pocket.

simple / phrase

This book is **so small that** it goes in my pocket.

complex / clause

2. We were **near enough** to see everything. **simple / phrase**

We were **so near that** we could see everything.

complex / clause

عند تحويل جملة بها **so .. that** أو **such.....that** من **complex** إلى **simple**

أي من **clause** إلى **phrase** وتكون الجملة بعد **that** بالنفي تحذف هذه الأدوات .
 الفاعل + النفي بعد **that** ونستعمل بدلاً منها (المصدر + **to** + الصفة + **too**).

1. He was **so poor that he could not** buy his food.

complex/clause

He was **too poor to** buy his food.

simplex/phrase

2. She was **so tired that she could not** work **complex/clause**

She was **too tired to** work.

simplex/phrase

عند تحويل جملة من **simple** إلى **complex** أي من **clause** إلى **phrase** نتبع
 عكس الخطوات السابقة مثال ذلك :

1. He was **too lazy to** succeed.

simple/phrase

He was **so lazy that he could not** succeed. **complex/clause**

2. They are **too exhausted to** continue. **simple/phrase**

They were **so exhausted that they could not** continue.

complex/clause

Ex. (53a) Join the following pairs of sentences to make one Complex Sentence :

1. The aeroplane flew very fast. No one could see it.
2. The mountain is very high. No one could climb it.
3. The journey was very tiring. I fell asleep.
4. The flowers are very beautiful. It is a shame to pick them.
5. It was a very boring book. I couldn't finish it.
6. It was a very long flight. We had three meals on board.
7. It was a very pretty dress. I couldn't resist it.
8. They were very large boxes. We couldn't send them by air.
9. He was very fat. He couldn't get through the door.
10. I was very busy. I couldn't answer the telephone.

Ex. (53b) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa:

1. The child became **so ill that he could not** leave his bed.
2. He was **honest enough for everyone to** trust him.
3. He was **so frightened that he could not** move.
4. The enemy soldiers were **so cowardly that they could not** resist.
5. Our soldiers were **so brave that they destroyed** the enemy.
6. They walked **too slowly to** catch the train.

7. The building is **too high for us to reach it.**
8. Some people are **so short-sighted that they cannot appreciate matters.**
9. The Pyramids are **so strong that they will remain for centuries.**
10. The moon is **bright enough to read a book.**

Ex. 53c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. He was a dreadful liar. Nobody believed anything he said.
(such)
2. It proved to be a very difficult problem. No body could solve it.
(such)
3. We had a very good time. We didn't want to go home. (such)
4. The food was very good. We ate far too much. (enough)
5. His clothes were very old. They were falling apart. (enough)
6. They were so frightened that they ran away. (They got)
7. The children were so noisy that we could hardly hear ourselves.
(too)
8. They obeyed him with such willingness that the strike went on for over a month. (So)
9. So stupidly did he speak that. I didn't even bother to listen.
(said such)
10. She got such a shock that she dropped the bag. (so choked)
11. He was so silly that no one took any notice of him. (too)
12. He spoke too quickly for me to understand. (so)
13. He was so old that he could understand everything. (enough)
14. He was so proud that he didn't apologize. (too)
15. The kitchen is too small for the whole family to eat in. (So)

Too / Enough

Ex. (54) Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence using too / enough with infinitives :

1. It is very cold. We can't go out.
It is **too cold to go out.**
2. You are quite clever. You understand perfectly.
You are **clever enough to understand perfectly.**

1. It is very dark. I can't see anything.
2. I am very old. I can't wear this kind of hat.
3. I am very rich. I could buy your whole hotel.
4. He is very ill. He can't eat anything.
5. You are quite thin. You could slip between the bars.
6. He was furious. He couldn't speak.
7. Our car is very wide. It won't get through those gates.
8. The ice is quite thick. We can walk on it. (omit it).
9. He was very drunk. He couldn't answer any question.
10. It is very cold. We can't have breakfast in the garden.

(3) Clause of Cause

أدوات الربط The Conjunctions

Because - for - since - as لأن

أدوات ترتبط جملتين بسيطتين لتكون جملة واحدة Complex

1. He succeeded. He was clever.
He succeeded **because he was clever.** complex/clause
2. She stayed in bed. She was very ill.
She stayed in bed **as she was very ill.** complex/clause
3. He could not answer well. He was bad tempered.
He could not answer since (for) he was bad tempered.
complex/clause

نلاحظ في الجمل السابقة أن **since** أو **as** تعنيان **because** وليس هما علاقة بالزمن.
عند تحويل جملة بها **because** أو **for** أو **since** أو **as** بمعنى **because** من **complex** إلى **simple** أي من **clause** إلى **phrase**.
تتحذف هذه الأدوات "الفاعل" الفعل بعدها وتضع بدلا منها :

because of / owing to / on account of / as a result of / due to/thanks to الصفة + **noun or V.+ing or Being** + بفضل

1. He succeeded **because he was clever.** complex/clause
He succeeded **because of his cleverness.** simple
or **Being clever**, he succeeded phrase
2. She stayed in bed **as she was ill.** complex/clause
She stayed in bed **as a result of her illness.** simple
Being ill, she stayed in bed phrase

عند التحويل من **simple** إلى **complex** أي من **phrase** إلى **clause**
نتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة.

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1. He lost his way owing to the darkness. | simple/phrase |
| He lost his way because it was dark. | complex/clause |
| 2. Being happy , she danced. | simple/phrase |
| She danced because she was happy . | complex/clause |

Ex. (55a) Join the following pairs to make one Complex Sentence:

1. He could not see. He was blind.
2. He was angry. He lost his watch.
3. he could not play well. He was not trained well.
4. He could not walk. His leg was broken.
5. He suffers from cough. He smokes much.

Ex. (55b) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. He failed because of his laziness. (lazy)
2. Owing to his bravery, he defeated his rival. (because)
3. Being tired, he went to bed. (Being)
4. We could not study, because there was much noise.
(Being very)
5. As the day was hot, they decided to spend it on the beach.
(Owing to)
6. The boy was punished because he was careless.
(carelessness)
7. He was put into prison as a result of his bad behaviour.
(behaved)
8. Thanks to his intelligence, he could overcome his difficulties.
(Intelligent)
9. The travellers suffered a great deal as they didn't have enough water
(lack of)
10. Egypt, being full of monuments, tourists visit it all the year round.
(Because Egypt)

Ex.(55c): Change the black typed phrases into clauses and vice versa:

1. He was dismissed **because he neglected his work**.
2. He got high marks **as he studied hard**.

3. **Being experienced**, he could choose the best kind of computers.
4. **As a result of hard work**, he got the top prize.
5. **Due to his mental abilities**, he could solve the most difficult maths problem.
6. **Thanks to her good manners**, she was chosen the ideal student.
7. The doctor performed the operation successfully **because he was very skilful**.
8. The policeman was given a great reward **as he was efficient at work**.

(4) Clause of Contrast

أدوات الربط **The Conjunctions**

although - though - even though / if - however - whatever
as بعد صفة

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين بينهما علاقة تناقض وتكون جملة واحدة **Complex** مثال ذلك:

1. He was poor. He was happy.

a) **Although he was poor**, he was happy. **complex / clause**

b) **Though**, he was poor, he was happy. **complex**

c) **Even though he was poor**, he was happy. **clause**

Poor though he was, he was happy. ويمكن أن توضع بصورة أخرى.

2. She was wealthy. She felt miserable.

a) **Although she was wealthy**, she felt miserable

complex / clause

b) **Though she was wealthy**, she felt miserable. **complex**

c) **Even though she was wealthy**, she felt miserable. **clause**

يلاحظ من الجمل السابقة أن **even though / if. though, although** استعمالهم واحد

١ - يمكن استعمال **however** بدلا من **although** ولكن يجب أن تأتي بعدها صفة.

1. **Although** he was poor, he was happy.

complex

However poor he was, he was happy.

complex

He was happy, **however poor** he was.

clause

2. **Though** the tree is high, he can climb it.

complex

However high the tree is, he can climb it.

complex

He can climb the tree, **however high** it is. **clause**

٢ - يمكن استعمال **whatever** بدلا من **although** ولكن يأتي بعدها اسم مثال ذلك :

1. Although he tells lies, أكاذيب he is believed. complex
 Whatever lies he tells, he is believed. clause
 He is believed, whatever lies he tells. clause
 يمكن استعمال ضمير بعد **whatever** مثل ذلك :

Whatever he said, we all laughed complex
We all laughed, whatever he said. clause
as إذا جاءت بعد صفة تعني **although** مثال ذلك :

1. **Clever as he was, he could not answer.** complex
Although he was clever, he could not answer. clause
 2. **Educated as he was, he behaved badly.** complex
Although he was educated, he behaved badly. clause

عند تحويل جملة بها **although** أو **even though** أو **however** أو **whatever** إلى **as** بعد صفة من **complex** إلى **simple** أي من **clause** إلى **phrase** .
 تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها ونضع بدلاً منها.

in spite of / despite for all. notwithstanding / regardless
of بالرغم من + **noun or infinitive + ing**

1. **Although he was poor, he was happy.** clause
In spite of being poor, he was happy. simple
In spite of his poverty, he was happy. phrase
 2. **However careful he was, he made mistakes** clause
Despite his carefulness, he made mistakes. simple
Despite being careful, he made mistakes. phrase

يمكن استعمال اسم الفاعل أي (**ing** + مصدر الفعل) إذا لم تعرف الاسم من الصفة :

3. **Whatever difficulties he faced, he could succeed.** clause
For all his difficulties, he could succeed. phrase

وعند التحويل من **simple** إلى **complex** أي من **phrase** إلى **clause** أتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة مثال ذلك :

Despite his politeness, they did not respect him. phrase
Although he was polite, they did not respect him clause

Ex. (56a) Join the following pairs to make one complex sentence :

1. The battle was fierce. We could win the battle.
2. The distance was too far. We could cover it in a short time.
3. The road was bad. They crossed it easily.
4. He was very hungry. He refused to eat.

5. We shall stay a little longer. It is late.
6. He behaved unwisely. He was highly educated.
7. He made the same mistake. I warred him much.

Ex. (56b) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa :

1. **Though he has a car**, he often uses a bus.
2. **However strong he may be**, he cannot bend this bar.
3. **Intelligent as he was**, he behaved wrongly.
4. **Whatever books he reads**, his knowledge is limited.
5. I will buy a car, **whatever money it costs**.
6. **In spite of his strength**, he could not fight two man.
7. **For all his wealth**, he does not help the poor.
8. **Despite his courage**, he escaped.
9. **However violent the resistance was**, we could conquer them.
10. **Whatever mistakes he made**, I forgave him.
11. **Regardless of his serious illness**, he went on working.

Ex. 56c): Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- I heard him however low his voice was. (in spite of)
- 2- I could save whatever little money I got (although).
- 3- Fat as he was, he ran quickly (although).
- 4- Whatever mistakes he made, I forgave him (for all...)
- 5- However cautious he was, he fell into troubles. (in spite of).
- 6- For all his great efforts, he failed to attain his ends (whatever).
- 7- Although he has a good name, he faces troubles. (regardless of).
- 8- Clever as he was, he failed to answer well. (cleverness).
9. He arrived on time even though he stopped for lunch in the way. (in spite of)
10. He died poor although he worked hard all his life. (hard work).
11. She finished the race though she had a bad fall. (notwithstanding).
12. Even though I have studied French for three years, I find it difficult to speak (in spite of).
13. Even though she is sixty, she's still very fit. (regardless of).
14. John is still very cheerful although he lost his job. (despite).

(5) Clause of Time

The Conjunctions أدوات الربط

While-when (as) till-until-since-after-before

as soon as - No sooner than.

Hardly when - Scarcely when.

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين لتكون جملة واحدة complex تحدد الزمن.

Study the following examples carefully أدرس الأمثلة الآتية بعناية

(1) While (As)

1. I was studying my lessons. The light went out. جملتين بسيطتين

While (as) I was studying my lessons, the light went out.
complex

لتحويل جملة بها while أو as بمعنى while من complex إلى simple أي من clause إلى phrase هناك ثلاث طرق :

1. While studying my lessons, the light went out. simple

2. Studying my lessons, the light went out. phrase

3. During my study, the light went out. simple

كذلك عند التحويل من simple إلى complex أي من phrase إلى clause نتبع العكس مثال ذلك :

1. During my walking, I saw my friend. simple/phrase

As (while) I was walking, I saw my friend complex/phrase

2. Playing a football match, Samy fell on the ground phrase

While (as) Samy was playing a football match, he fell on the ground.

(2) When (As)

1. The thief saw the policeman. Then he ran away جملتين بسيطتين

When (as) the thief saw the policeman, he ran away

complex/phrase

On seeing the policeman, the thief ran away. simple/phrase

2. The gardener dug the ground. Then he found a treasure.

When (As) the gardener dug the ground, he found a treasure
(clause)

On digging the ground, the gardener found a treasure.

simple/phrase

كذلك عند التحويل من simple إلى complex أي من clause إلى phrase اتبع العكس

On catching sight of the lion, he escaped. (phrase)

When he caught sight of the lion, he escaped (clause)

(3) Till - until

1. They waited for me. **At last** I returned.
They waited for me **till (until)** I returned. complex/clause
They waited for me **till** my return. simple/phrase
2. I stayed at his home. **At last** he came.
I stayed at his home **until (till)** he came. complex/clause
I stayed at his home **until his coming**. simple/phrase

(4) Since

1. He has not sent letters **since** he departed. complex/clause
He has not sent letters **since his departing (departure)** simple/phrase.
2. **Since he died**, no one has visited his family. complex/clause
Since his death, no one has visited his family. simple/phrase

(5) After

1. **After I had finished** my work, I went home. complex/clause
a) **After finishing** my work, I went home. simple
b) **Having finished** my work, I went home. phrase

نلاحظ طريقتين لتحويل جملة بها **after** من **complex** إلى **simple** عند التحويل من **simple** إلى **complex** أتبع العكس.

1. Having prepared my books, I went to school simple/phrase
After I had prepared my books, I went to school. complex/clause

2. **After building the house**, they lived in it. simple/phrase
After they had built the house, they lived in it. complex/clause

(6) Before

1. I had prepared my passport **before** I travelled abroad. complex
I had prepared my passport before my **travelling** abroad. simple
2. They had studied the plans **before they started** the project. clause
They had studied the plans **before starting** the project. phrase

بمجرد أن As soon as

No sooner-than

لم يكـد

Hardly-when

حتى

Scarcely-when

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين حوادثهما متتابعة وأحيانا غير متوقعة ومفاجأة مثال ذلك :

1.I had reached the station. **Soon** the train left. جملتين بسيطتين

As soon as I had reached the station, the train left.

complex / clause

2.He had left the house. We missed the jewels.

As soon as he had left the house, we missed the jewels. complex

3.He had arrived. He demanded a meal.

As soon as he had arrived, he demanded a meal

complex / clause

scarcely.....when-hardly.....when-no sooner.....than يمكن

في الأمثلة الثلاث السابقة بدلا من as soon as استعمال مثال ذلك

1.I had **no sooner** reached the station **than** the train left.

2.He had **scarcely** arrived **when** he demanded a meal.

إذا استعملت **no sooner** أو **hardly** أو **scarcely** في أول الجملة يوضع الفعل بعدهم في صيغة الإستفهام.

1.**No sooner** had I reached the station **than** the train left.

2.**Hardly** had he left the house **when** we missed the jewels.

3.**Scarcely** had he arrived **when** he demanded a meal.

لتحويل جملة بها **as soon as** أو **no sooner...than** أو **hardly..when** إلى **scarcely. when** من **simple** إلى **complex** أو من **clause** إلى **phrase**

تُحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها وتضع بدلا منها

immediately after / immediately on + noun

1.**No sooner** had I reached the station than the train left.

clause

Immediately on reaching the station, the train left. phrase

2.**As soon as** he had arrived, he demanded a meal. clause

Immediately after his arrival, he demanded a meal. phrase

Ex. (57a) Join the following pairs to make one Complex Sentence :

1.I waited for a long time. At last he appeared.

2.We arrived at the football field. Then the game started.

3. He arrived at a certain time. Immediately I went home.
4. My father finished his work. He soon went home.
5. I studied my lessons. I went to bed afterwards.
6. He went away yesterday. We have done no work since that time.
7. They crossed the canal. Then they attacked the enemy.
8. The Egyptian soldiers had appeared. Immediately the Israeli soldiers disappeared.
9. I was washing my hands. The telephone rang.
10. She was sitting at the table. Then the children came.

EX.(57b) Change the blacktyped clauses into phrases and vice versa :

1. I didn't know him **until he spoke to me.**
2. No one could believe him **after he had told lies.**
3. The sick pupil forgot everything **when he sat for the exam.**
4. He had not prepared himself **before entering the exam.**
5. **Having prepared everything,** they set out for the picnic.
6. **No sooner had he met him than** he informed him of his success.
7. **In doing your duty,** you should not be ashamed.
8. **Hardly had we attacked** them when they escaped.
9. **Immediately after his reaching** school, the bell rang.
10. **When I spoke to him,** he was angry.

Ex.57c) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I was getting ready for the bed when I heard someone crying
(While getting ready)
2. When I heard the noise, I immediately telephoned the police.
(On)
3. Immediately on hearing my report, they promised to send two policeman round.
(Scarcely)
4. On seeing the burglar escaping, the policeman chased him.
(When)
5. Having arrested the man, the police called for ambulance.
(After the police)
6. When they arrived at the hospital, they found the man had made his escape.
(arrival)

7. No sooner had he heard the bell, than the burglar ran out through the back door. **(Immediately on)**
8. He hadn't cried since he was a boy. **(boyhood)**
9. I stayed there talking to them until I'd seen Nagi. **(seeing)**
10. I read the book before going to see the film.
(I had read the book before I)
11. Mary had been busy since she heard the news. **(hearing)**
12. I haven't given him a thing to eat since he arrived. **(arrival)**
13. Hardly had he asked the question when the answer came to him. **(Immediately after)**
14. As soon as the meal was over, it was time for rest.
(Immediately on)
15. He was detained last Monday after he had returned from a business trip overseas. **(his return)**

(6) The Conditional Clause

If-Unless

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين وتكون جملة واحدة complex
أدرس الأمثلة الآتية :

Study the following examples

Present

Present

1.If we **put** sugar in water, it **dissolves**.

2.If we **heat** iron, It **expands**.

عند التعبير عن الحقائق يكون الفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن المضارع البسيط ، كذلك يكون الفعل الثاني (جواب الشرط) في المضارع البسيط أيضا كما المثالين السابقين.

a) If he **succeeds**, he **will join** the university. **probable**

١ - إذا جاء الفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن المضارع البسيط والحدث محتمل الوقوع يكون الفعل الثاني جواب الشرط : (المصدر + will أو shall) مثال آخر :

b) If he **buys** that car, it **will cost** him much.

2a) If he **succeeded**, he **would join** the university. **Improbable**
If I **could afford** it, I **would buy** it.

٢ - إذا جاء للفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن الماضي البسيط ويكون الحدث غير محتمل الوقوع.

Improbable يكون الفعل الثاني (جواب الشرط) (المصدر + **would** أو **should**).

b) If I **were** a bird. I **would fly**.

If I **were** as big as you, I **would beat** you.

If I **weren't** so busy I **would do** it for you.

c) If he **bought** that car, it **would cost** him much

3a) If he **had succeeded**, he **would have joined** the university.
impossible.

٣ - إذا جاء الفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن الماضي التام (مستحيل الوقوع) **impossible** يكون الفعل الثاني (جواب الشرط)

(**would have/should have + p.p.**)

b) If he **had bought** that car, it **would have cost** him much.

1. If he **succeeds**, he **will join** the university. الثلاث حالات لأداة الربط.

2. If he **succeeded**, he **would join** the university.

3. If he **had succeeded**, he **would have joined** the university.

١ - يمكن استعمال **should** بدلا من If في الحالتين الأولى والثانية.

a) **Should he succeed**, he **will join** the university.

or he **would join** the university.

- b) **Should he buy** that car, it **will cost** him much.
or it **would cost** him much.

٢ - يمكن استعمال **were to** بدلا من **If** في الحالة الثانية فقط.

- a) **Were he to buy** that car, it **would cost** him much.

ملحوظة : يمكن استعمال **providing / provided (that)** أو **as long as**

even if / only if / supposing or else أو **on condition that** بدلا من **If**.
Provided that the weather stays fine, we shall go for a picnic.

٣ - يمكن استعمال **Had** بدلا من **If** في الحالتين الثانية والثالثة في الحالة الثانية تستعمل **Had** بمفردها. في الحالة الثالثة تستعمل **Had** مع التصريف الثالث للفعل.

- a) **Had I enough time, I would go** to the cinema.
b) **Had I' enough money, I would buy** a car.
c) **Had he obeyed** me, he **would have** succeeded.
d) **Had he succeeded**, he **would have** joined the university.

لاحظ في الجملتين (a) - (b) أن **had** تنق بمفردها وتحل محل **If** في الحالة الثانية ولكن في الحالتين (a-c) يأتي معها التصريف الثالث لذلك تحل محل **If** في الحالة الثالثة.

If - not - unless إذا لم

يمكن أن تحل **unless** محل **If not** مثال ذلك :

- a) **If he does not succeed, he will not join** the university.
Unless he succeeds, he will not join the university.
b) **If he did not succeed, he would not join** the university.
Unless he succeeded, he would not join the university.

في جميع الحالات السابقة التي استعملت فيها **If** أو **should** أو **had** أو **were** تكون الجملة **complex** أو **clause** ولتحويلها إلى **simple** أو **phrase** تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها وتضع بدلا منها

In case of / With / By + noun (infinitive + ing)

1. **Were he to succeed, he would join** the university.
a) **In case of his success, he would join** the university. **Simple**
b) **In case of his succeeding, he would join** the university **phrase**

في الجملة (a) استعملنا الاسم الحقيقي **success**

في الجملة (b) استعملنا أسم الفاعل (**succeed + ing**)

2. **If he buys** that car, it **will cost** him much. **clause**
In case of buying that car, it **will cost** him much. **phrase**
3. **If he worked** hard, he **would succeed**. **clause**
By working hard, he **would succeed**. **phrase**

عند تحويل جملة بها **if-not** و **unless** أو **should-not** أو **were-not** أو **had-not** من **simple** إلى **complex** أي من **clause** إلى **phrase**.
تُحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها ونضع بدلاً منها :

But for Or Without + noun أو verb+ ing

1. **Had he not followed** the orders, **he would have been** punished. **complex/clause**
Without following the orders, **he would have been** punished. **phrase**
 2. **Unless he studies** well, **he will not** succeed. **clause**
But for studying well, **he will not** succeed. **phrase**
- للتحويل من **phrase** إلى **clause** نكتب العكس مثال ذلك :

1. **Without working** hard, **he would not** succeed. **phrase**
Unless he worked hard, **he would not** succeed. **clause**
or **If he did** not work hard, **he would not** succeed. **clause**
2. **But for my** help, **he would have** died. **phrase**
If I had not helped him, **he would have** died. **clause**
or **Unless I had** helped him, **he would have** died. **clause**

Ex. (53a) Complete the following :

1. If my parents had been richer,.....
2. The students would have passed their exam if.....
3. He will miss the train if
4. Had he a strong will,.....
5. Had it not been a hot day ,.....
6. Unless it is very fine,.....
7. They would never understand properly unless.
8. If I were younger,
9. If the weather were better,.....

Ex. (53b) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa :

1. **Had he not shown me** the way, I should have missed the way.
2. They would have done it **if they had known how**.
3. **In case of being** very rich, he would buy a new car.
4. **With his confidence** in himself, he can overcome his problems.
5. Had he the strong determination, **he would stop** smoking.
6. **Unless he had been** cautious, he would have lost his money.

7. **But for his intelligence**, he would suffer much.
8. **With your permission**, I will go.
9. **Without his help**, I would have lost my life.

Ex.53c) Rewrite the following sentences using words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Without money, we wouldn't buy our needs. **(Unless)**
2. Had I known you were coming, I would have invited you to lunch. **(In case of)**
3. Hany will be at school next week provided that he has recovered. **(recovery)**
4. He didn't come yesterday so he didn't enjoy the party. **(Had he)**
5. Without practising harder, she wouldn't have become a good musician. **(If it)**
6. But for the terrible weather, they would have climbed the top of the mountain. **(Hadn't it)**
7. It's lucky we booked a room or we would have had nowhere to stay. **(Unless)**
8. You can borrow the money so long as you promise to pay it. **(in case of)**
9. You are not allowed to park in the school unless you are a member of the staff. **(Without)**
10. I couldn't write to them because I didn't have their address **(if)**

(7) Clause of Manner

أدوات الربط **The Conjunctions**

(as كما) - (as if - as though) كما لو كان

1. He works **as I order him** **complex/clause**
He works **according to my orders** **simple/phrase**
2. Answer the questions **as I have taught you.** **complex/clause**
Answer the questions **according to my teaching** **simple/phrase**
3. He answered **as I instructed him.** **complex/clause**
He answered in **accordance with my instructions.** **simple/phrase**

as if - as though

1. He walks proudly **as if he were a king.** **complex/clause**
- a) He walks proudly **like a king.** **simple phrase**
- b) He walks proudly **in a kingly way.** **phrase**
2. He swam **as though he had been a champion.** **complex/clause**

He **swam** like a champion.

simple/phrase

After "as if" or as though " you often use a past tense even when you are talking about the present to emphasize that the information in the manner clause is not true. You can also use "were" instead of "was"

Ex. (54a) *Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa :*

1. He lives **as his salary allows him**.
2. He fought **as a brave man should fight**.
3. They carried out the project **as he planned**.
4. The child was **like his grandfather in behaviour**.
5. **According to this book**, Salah Eddin was a good warrior.
6. **In accordance with the police orders**, smoking is forbidden.
7. The student worked **as if he were a scientist**.
8. Use the paint brush **according to my words**.
9. The student of medicine was **like a skilful doctor in operation**.
10. He spoke foolishly **like a mad man**.

Ex.54b : *Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning.*

1. He was sleeping like a baby. (as if)
2. You speak like your father. (as though)
3. She treats him as though he were her son. (like)
4. She acts as though she owned the place. ("owner")
5. He behaves as his father orders him. (according to)
6. He looked at me as though I were mad. (like)
7. The bricks are made as they were in the Roman times. (according to)
8. I like the freedom to plan my future exactly as I want. (wishes)
9. She behaves like a crazy woman , but she isn't (as if)

(8) Clause of Comparison

أنظر إلى درس صفات المقارنة وإستعمالاتها لتساعدك على فهم الدرس.

The Conjunctions أدوات الربط

(as-as) (not so-as) (than)

Study the following examples :

1. He fought bravely **as the lion did**. complex/phrase

He fought bravely **like the lion**.

simple/phrase

2. He is **as tall as** I am.

complex/phrase

- a) We are **equal in tallness**.
 or We are **equally tall**
 3. He is **not so clever as I am**.
 a) We are **not equal in cleverness**.
 or b) We **are not equally clever**.
 4. I am **stronger than he is**
 a) We **are not equal in strength**.
 or b) **We are not equally strong**.

simple/phrase

complex/clause
 simple/phrase

complex/clause
 simple/phrase

استعمال the - the

إذا بدأ النصف الأول من الجملة بـ : صفة المقارنة + **the** في جملة المقارنة توضع صفة المقارنة بعد **the** في النصف الثاني من الجملة يكون الفاعل والفعل بعد الصفة في الجملتين ، مثال ذلك :

1. **The more he studies, the better marks he gets.**
2. **The more quickly we go, the earlier we shall get there.**
3. **The harder you work, the sooner, you will improve.**
4. **The mistakes you make, the more marks you get.**

Ex. (55a) Complete the following :

1. He received less money than
2. I am not so old.....
3. He does not work so well
4. The more attention a pupil pays,.....
5. The more quickly we run ,.....
6. The thinner the man is ,.....
7. The easier the question is
8. He can write as clearly.....

Ex: 55b : Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. Ali is **not so intelligent** as his brother is. (equal)
2. He wrote well **as his brother did**. (equally)
3. He is **as tall as his father is**. (equally)
4. He and his brother **are equal in generosity**. (generous)
5. He and his brother **are equally short**. (as as)
6. The first film and the second film were **not equally interesting**. (as as)
7. The son and his sister, **are equal in cleanliness**. (as as)

(III) Noun Clauses

الاسم يمكن أن يكون فاعل أو مفعول به أو يأتي بعد حرف جر :

عند تحويل الجملة من simple إلى complex أى من phrase إلى clause
تحويل الاسم إلى جملة اسمية بإستعمال أدوات الربط الآتية :

What-where-who-why-How-that-when-How many-How much-How wide, etc.

Study the following :

أدرس الأمثلة الآتية :

- | | |
|--|--------|
| 1. His words , annoyed me. | phrase |
| What he said , annoyed me. | clause |
| 2. His studies gave him great pleasure. | phrase |
| What he studies , gave him great pleasure. | clause |
| 3. His failure , was unexpected. | phrase |
| That he failed , was unexpected. | clause |
| 4. His generosity , was known to everyone. | phrase |
| That he is generous , was known to everyone. | clause |
| 5. Tell me your address . | phrase |
| Tell me where you live . | clause |
| or Tell me where your address is . | clause |
| 6. Can you tell me your birthplace ? | phrase |
| Can you tell me where your birthplace is ? | clause |
| Can you tell me where you were born ? | clause |
| 7. I saw the builder of that house. | phrase |
| I saw who built that house . | clause |
| 8. I met the writer of this book. | phrase |
| I met who wrote this book . | clause |
| 9. No one knows the reason of his absence . | phrase |
| No one knows why he was absent . | clause |
| 10. The doctor discovered the cause of his illness | phrase |
| The doctor discovered why he was ill . | clause |
| 11. He told me the time of his arrival . | phrase |
| He told me when he arrived . | clause |
| 12. The teacher does not know the number of pupils in class . | phrase |
| The teacher does not know how many pupils there are in class | clause |

| | |
|---|--------|
| 13. She knows the way of making cakes. | phrase |
| She knows how to make cakes. | phrase |
| She knows how she makes cakes. | clause |
| 14. He knew how to solve the problem. | phrase |
| He knew the way of solving the problem. | phrase |
| He knew how he can solve the problem. | clause |
| 15. We hope for his success. | phrase |
| We hope that he succeeds. | clause |
| 16. He spoke of his feeling. | phrase |
| He spoke of what he feels. | clause |
| 17. Do you know the width of the street ? | phrase |
| Do you know how wide the street is ? | clause |
| 18. Can you tell me the depth of the river ? | phrase |
| Can you tell me how deep the river is ? | clause |
| 19. Do you know the cost of this book ? | phrase |
| Do you know how much this book costs ? | clause |

عند التحويل من Phrase إلى Clause نكتب عكس الخطوات السابقة.

Ex. (56a) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa :

1. Tell me **why you were absent.**
2. I do not know the **time of the flood.**
3. It is essential **to think before acting.**
4. Most of the members repeated **what he said.**
5. **He seems that** he is glad.
6. The policeman knew **the place of the crime.**
7. Do you know **the cost of this house.**
8. **His arrival** tomorrow is certain.
9. Bring **what you need** with you.
10. We know **the designer of the house.**

Ex (56b) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. We must hope for his recovery. | (recover) |
| 2. Don't forget where you will examine. | (place) |
| 3. He spoke a long time of his sufferings. | (what) |
| 4. I am sure of the usefulness of this book. | (useful) |
| 5. The patient hoped that he recovers quickly. | (quick) |

6. His young age was evident واضح to all. (That)
7. That he was intelligent ,was clear to everyone (intelligence)
8. Tell me the number of boys in this class. (how many)

Ex. (56c) General objective test on Clauses and Phrases :

1. If you knocked at the door, they (will-would-can-would have) let you in.
2. If you tell the truth, I (will give-would give- could give-would have given) you a prize.
3. Were he to listen more carefully, he (would't make-would make-won't make-wouldn't have made) mistakes.
4. I shan't play tennis to day if it (rains-rained-will rain-rain).
5. We shall eat (whichever-whoever-whatever- wherever) is left over from lunch.
6. Give it to (which ever-whoever-whatever-however) asks for it.
7. Put it (whichever-whatever-however-wherever) you like.
8. Choose (whichever-however-whatever-wherever) of the colours suits you.
9. Without the Nile, Egypt (will be - would be - can be - would have been) a desert.
10. He would not have behaved like that if he (had-have had-has had-had had) a good education.
11. They would have done it if they (knew-would know-have known-had known).
12. Unless the window (had been - was being- was - is) open-the thief wouldn't have entered the house.
13. Had they more money, they (will build-would build - would build-would have built) a bigger house.
14. They could never understand quickly unless they (listen-would listen-listened-had listened) carefully.
15. We shall never arrive in time unless we (hurry-will hurry-hurried-had hurried).
16. Were be to write in ink, it (will be -can be- would be-would have been) easier to read.
17. Take care or else you (fall-would fall-will fall-fell).
18. Put on your coat or else you (catch-will catch-would cutch-caught) cold.
19. Should the train be late, I (shall take-take-took-should have taken) the bus.
20. The pupils were (so-very-enough-too) eager that they asked for extra work.

21. So clever (**is he - were he - he was - was he**) that he could speak six foreign languages.
22. (**Whatever-However-Although-As**) he was still twenty, he could speak six foreign languages.
23. The harder you work, the (**most-least-more-less**) knowledge you gain.
24. The weather was (**hot enough-very hot-enough hot-too hot**) for us to swim in the sea.
25. Our neighbour walks as if he (**is-has been-will be-were**) a turkey.
26. Blind (**however-although-as-whatever**) he was, he could know his way.
27. The room is (**very large-enough large-too large-large enough**) for you.
28. Such (**determined-determination-determining-determine**) had our soldiers that they destroyed the enemy camps.
29. (**Owing to-Since-Because-As**) his bravery, he could storm the enemy's camp.
30. (**In spite of-Without-But for-With**) his stupidity, he behaved sensibly.
31. He was humble (**for all-although-whatever-however**), wealthy he was.
32. (**Regardless of-Despite-Whatever-Though**) money he has, he feels miserable.
33. Those two boys are (**equal-equally-rather-equal in**) in tallness.
34. This is all (**what-which-who-that**) I wish.
35. (**According to-Due to-Owing to-As**) his words, Nagi is the best.
36. (**On account of-Due to-For all- In accordance with**) his wishes, we must return to-morrow.
37. (**According to-For all-Owing to- Because**) his illness, he could not be present.
38. (**By-Without-As a result**) working harder, he would earn more.
39. He was (**too-such-very-so**) fat to get through the door.
40. They are (**such-very-so-too**) big cars that they use a lot of petrol.
41. (**No sooner-Until-As soon as-While**) he returned home, rain began.

42. Scarcely had he touched the wire, (**than-when-that-till**) he got a shock.
43. He ran (**very-such-so-too**) quickly for me to catch him.
44. I waited for a long time (**when-then-that-till**) he appeared.
45. No sooner (**did he win-he could win-he won-had he won**) the prize than he bought a car.
46. So skilful (**was the doctor-the doctor was- had the doctor-is the doctor**) that he could save the patient.
47. He didn't dare to leave his hiding place (**so that-for fear of-lest - in case of**) he should be caught.
48. We camped there (**because-when-although-lest**) it was too dark to go on.
49. They have moved house three times (**when-till-since-if**) they got married.
50. (**However-Whatever-Even if-In spite of**) you don't like him, you still be polite.

The Use of Capital Letters

Capital letters are used at the beginning of :

1. Names of persons, cities, towns, countries, regions, rivers, mountains, seas :

Ahmed-Magdi-Cairo-New York-Iraq-Egypt-The Sudan-The Arab Republic of Egypt-The Nile-The Euphrates-The Mokattam Hills-The Mediterranean Sea-The Red Sea.

2. Adjectives formed from proper nouns :

Egyptian-Syrian-English-German-Russian-etc.

3. The first letter of the first word of every new sentence.

4. The first word of a quotation :

He said to me, "Please lend me your book".

5. The names of months, days of the week and festivals :

January-February-March-April-May, etc.

Saturday-Sunday-Monday-Tuesday, etc.

Ramadan-Christmas-Sham El Nessem.

6. Titles ألقاب of offices and descriptive titles.

The President رئيس الجمهورية

The Vice President نائب رئيس الجمهورية

The Minister of Education : وزير التربية والتعليم

Dr. Kamel-Mr. Adly-Mr. Ramzy-Professor Magdi.

7. Forms of addresses in letters :

Dear Sir-Dear Miss-Dear Friend, etc.

8. Titles of books, newspapers, magazines;

The Citadel-Cleopatra - El Ayam. etc.

Al Ahram-The Egyptian Gazette. The Times. etc.

9. The word "God" and Pronouns that stands for it :

We pray to "God" so that "He" may help us.

The Use Of Punctuation Marks

The use of Commas (,).

a) To separate items لفصل مفردات

I bought two shirts, a pair of shoes, half a dozen handkerchiefs and a beautiful tie.

b) To separate clauses or phrases from the rest of the sentence

Our headmaster, Mr. Ahmed, is absent today.

Although he was poor, he was happy.

c) Before the quotations :

I said to Ali, "Where did you live ?"

d) In letters after salutation :

Dear Mr. Smith, Dear uncle,

2. The use of Full Stop (.) :

a) At the end of a statement في نهاية جملة خبرية

I found my lost book.

b) After abbreviations, the first letters in names :

A.R.E. - U.S.A. - A.H. Salem - M.A. El Sadat.

3. The colon (:): It is used before the quotation or before a list

The tourist exclaimed : "What a great Pyramid".

I telephoned the grocer and order the following :

a packet of tea, half a pound of butter and two kilos of sugar.

4. The question mark (?) : It is used after a question.

1. Where do you live ? 2. Have you seen the new film ?

5. The exclamation mark (!): It is used to express a strong feeling : **Hurrah !** Our team has won (feeling of joy).

Alas ! The poor child is homeless (strong feeling of sorrow).

My dear ! I am delighted to see you (strong feeling of joy).

6. The Quotation Marks (" ") :

a) To enclose direct quotations.

I said to my friend, "What is the time now ?"

b) To enclose titles of books, plays, newspapers and magazines.

"Al Akhbar" is published in Cairo.

"Al Mossawar" is an illustrated weekly.

Have you read "Hamlet"? أسم مسرحية

Ex. (57) Punctuate the following, using capital letters when necessary :

1. the day after christmas george called on the egyptian museum.
2. i started to learn german in january last yea.
3. pray to god because he only can help you.
4. the swiss have been expert watchmakers.
5. el-ayam is written by dr. taha hussain.
6. mr. fawzy is flying to rome by boac on the Thursday after ramadan.

7. my uncle Salah wanted to visit aswan in December.
8. the game being over the spectators returned home.
9. turning my head I could see the thief running.
10. whether you travel by sea air or rail you must tell me.
11. this is what i want a girl who answers the telephone.
12. never he said i shall never agree to that.
13. it only costs six pounds he said would you like one.
14. good heavens no he cried that is quite impossible.
15. These are the things we need coffee sandwiches and some fruit.
16. give it to me immediately he demanded no she replied I refuse.
17. hurrah we have conquered them said the soldier.
18. alas she cried I have lost my child.
19. akher saa is an illustrated weekly.
20. i said to ali how wonderful your watch is.

حروف الجر Prepositions

I- Prepositions of Time

1. "At" تستعمل لتحديد دقيق لزمان. مثال ذلك.

At this moment - at three o'clock-at Christams.

2. "In" تستعمل عادة لتحديد زمن المستقبل

وتستعمل مع فصول السنة والسنين وأجزاء من اليوم والشهر. مثال ذلك :

In two months' time-in 1978-in January-in the morning-in spring-in winter.

3. "By" تستعمل لتوضيح توقيت متأخر سبقتها عند الحديث. وتستعمل مع المستقبل

He will probably arrive by 6 o'clock. مثال :

4. "For" تستعمل لتحديد فترة من الوقت وتستعمل مع زمن المضارع التام

I have lived here for three years. مثال ذلك

5. "Since" تستعمل مع زمن حدث في الماضي ولا يزال في الحاضر (مضارع تام)

I have lived here since 1952.

6. "On"

مع توقيت عام بخلاف at التي تأتي مع توقيت تحدد عادة تأتي مع الأيام والتواريخ. مثال ذلك:

On Wednesday-on March 5th-on a Friday afternoon-on his birthday.

7. "From" تستعمل لتوضيح الحديث مع الماضي والمستقبل وغيرهم

He lived in London from 1950 until 1957.

I shall be at home from 6 p.m..until 9 p.m.

Ex. (58a) Supply the missing preposition :

1. I will meet you there six o'clock sharp.
2. It will be over five minutes.
3. He has been waiting there.....five o'clock.
4. The family are gathering again.....Christmas.
5. He still comes to see me time to time.
6. He always goes to visit her aunt.....Saturdays.
7. The dinner should be over ten o'clock.
8. It always gets cool here the evening.
9. They may arrive any time.
10. January 1st there has been no work in the factory.
11. We are going to try to set off.....daybreak.
12. Wait a minute. He should be here a few minutes.
13. They may arrive.....any time now.
14. He was in hospital.....January until June.

(2) "Between" and "among".

1. "Between" is used with.

- a) Two persons and things.

He stood **between** his son and daughter.

b) Any two of a larger number.

He walked across the garden **between** the flower beds.

c) The speaker and a group.

Ladies and Gentleman ! **Between** ourselves, I have.....

2. **"Among"** is used with more than two people or things and has a less exact meaning of place. e.g. **life among the Eskimos.**

Ex. (58b) Supply the missing prepositions :

1. I was sittingtwo sisters when the bell rang.
2. She divided the cake.....her five children.
3. I can't see any difference these two books.
4. She gave him a pound of apples, but there wasn't a good one.....them.
5. She hid the bushes at the bottom of the garden.
6. I have invited Tamer.....the others.
7. War has just broken outthe two countries.
8. That family is always quarrelling.....themselves.
9. confidentially and ourselves, I can't stand here.
10. The railway line runs the river and the road.

(3) "At" and "In" in phrases of place.

"At" is used to show the exact point : houses. stations small villages etc.

"In" has the idea of within a larger area.

1. I was standing in the street when the storm broke.
2. She waited half an hour at the corner of the street.

Ex. (58c) Supply the missing prepositions :

1. You will find our house the end of the next street.
2. It is strictly forbidden to park.....the middle of the street.
3. Why does she prefer to sit.....the back of the class ?
4. They kept their radio.....the corner of the room.
5. You will find it much more expensive living...London than....
Paris.

(4) Preposition of Direction Towards :

"for" "at" "to" "against" "towards".

"For" is used for direction when the verb indicates the beginning of a movement.

I left **for home**. They set off **for London**.

"Against", has the meaning of pressure or contact.

She threw it **against the wall**. The crowd pressed **against the fence**.

"At" is generally used with certain verbs.

aim **at** - point **at** - look **at** - stare **at** - throw **at**.

"Towards" has the sense of direction الإتجاه while **"to"** generally that of destination مكان الوصول.

They **went towards the scene of the crash** but were stopped by the policeman.

They **went to the scene** of the crash to see what help they could give.

Ex. (58d) Supply the missing prepositions :

1. I shall come.....your house at four o'clock.
2. He leaned..... me and whispered in my ear.
3. The train.....Alexandria leaves in two minutes.
4. He aimed the rifle straight his enemy.
5. Don't laughme, I am doing my best.
6. Just have a look.....this if you please !.
7. It was getting late, so we set offhome.
- 8.They were heading.....the north when the pilot changed course.
9. The country seems to be moving.....war.
10. I shall fight.....this measure until my dying day.

(5)Preposition of Direction from:"From"- "of"- "Off"-Out of.

1. **"From"** is used with the point of departure.

They ran **from the scene of the cinema**.

2. **"Of"** is only used in fixed expressions with the sense of from.

Ex. **Die of, made of, ask of, expect of.**

3. **"Off"** has the meaning from the surface of and also down from.

Take the book off the table. He **fell off** his horse.

4. **"Out of"** means from the interior and has into as an opposite.

He took his handkerchief **out of his pocket**.

Ex. (58e) Supply the missing propositions :

1. Wipe the dust.....the table.

2. I am trying to wash the stain.....your shirt.

3. He took the toy.....his sister, and played with it himself.

4. Have you heard.....your friends recently.

5. He is a bad rider. He is always falling.....his bicycle.

6. It is difficult to keep the dogs.....the flower beds.

7. Take your elbows.....the table and sit up.

8. She is so attractive, he can't keep away.....her.

9. This ring is made.....gold and yours is silver.

10. Poor Mary ! She is suffering a nasty cold.

(6) "In" "With" & "Of" describing people and their clothes

1. **"In" is used with everything (clothes, jewellery, etc) actually worn on the body.** A girl in a red dress. A woman in gold ear rings.

2. **"With" is used with anything which is carried :**

A lady with a black handbag. A man with an umbrella.

3. **"With" is used with physical features and peculiarities, (i.e. diseases).**

(a) A man with a red hair, (b) A boy with a limp.

4. **"Of" is used with permanent qualities of character.**

A man of violent temper. A man of fifty-three.

Note : "With" can also be used with qualities of character but in general suggests less permanent conditions.

A man of common sense. A man with common sense.

Ex. (58f) Add the suitable prepositions :

1. A young fellow....a broken leg. 2. A woman great wealth.

3. Some peasants.....their national dress.

4. A porter...a bundle on his back 5. An old man...red beard.

6. Four young menpleasant appearance.....grey suits.

7. A girl about sixteen..... a pearl necklace.

8. He is a man.....considerable achievements.

9. That man bald head and only one arm is an old soldier.
 10. That lady red a shopping basket is my sister.

Phrasal Verbs

(1) Do

to do his best یبذل أقصى جهده
 to do the homework
 to do a favour جمیل - معروف
 to do a job
 to do the work
 to do the exercise
 to do shopping یتسوق
 to do business

Make

to make the beds یرتب
 to make noise
 to make a promise
 to make trouble
 to make a mistake
 to make progress
 to make money
 to make a speech

Ex. (59) Supply the correct form of "make" or "do" in the following:

1. The best cloth is in England.
 2. He his best to help me.
 3. Have you your homework ?
 4. I have only my duty.
 5. If you take this medicine it will you good.
 6. whatever you like.
 7. What were you when I came in ?
 8. Do you your exercise carefully ?
 9. Don't noise.
 10. I have much work to
- to do away with** (=to abolish) **to do someone in** (=to kill).
to do up (=to fasten ربط to redecorate).
to do a room out (=to sweep and clean).
to be done for (= useless or broken) **to do without** عن یستغنی
to do with (=manage with) **to make for** (=travel towards).
to make up to (to flatter) یتملق **to make up one's mind** قرار یصمم
to make up (=to invent) **to use cosmetics** تزیین مستحضرات التجميل
to make up for (=compensate) یعوض
to make out (=to discern) یری بوضوح 2 understand 3) write.
to make off (with) = to go away with.
to make over (= transfer property) ینقل

Ex. (60) Add the correct particle in the following sentences :

1. We still need two men to make the team.
2. Men don't like girls who make.....too much.
3. Please make the bill and I shall pay immediately.
4. Ahmed, do your shoes.....before leaving the house.
5. I have my room done.....once a week.
6. he made his fortune.....to his son before he died.
7. It is an old paper but there are many words I can't make.....
8. She can't do her hot water bottle on these cold nights.
9. Make you mind. We can't wait here all day.
10. Get out of here or I'll do you !

(2) "Come" & "Bring"

bring about (= cause to happen) **bring in** (= to introduce) يقدم

bring off (=to succeed against difficulties).

bring round (=to bring to a place nearby).

bring on (=happen) **come in** (=enter).

come off (=to take place-succeed).

come by (=obtain by doubtful means).

(discover unexpectedly بالصدفة someone who lives nearby).

come round (= 1. revive 2. visit).

come across (= to meet unexpectedly).

Ex. (61) Add the correct particle to the following sentences.

1. I think she has brought.....her children beautifully.
2. I want an explanation how this disaster came.....
3. The government has brought.....new measures to combat inflation
4. The cold weather has brought my rheumatism.....again.
5. May I ask how you come.....my pencil ?
6. It took him a long time to come.....after the operation.
7. A new series of regulations camelast week.
8. The archaeologists علماء الآثار came.....a tomb of the sixth century A.D.
9. Can you imagine who I came while I was in Paris ?
10. Bring your friendto see me whenever you like.

(3) "Keep" & "Let".

to keep up with (=to remain abreast of) يتماشى مع

to keep in with(to remain on friendly terms with) يكون على وفاق مع

to keep on (=continue) **to keep off** (=don't walk on).

to keep away from (=not come) **to keep out** (=don't come in).
to keep it up (=continue to make effort).
to keep in (=remain after school).
to let up = (=relax) يسترخى **to let in** (=to allow to enter).
to let out (=to allow to leave to let on)=reveal a secret).
to let off (=cause to explode-to excuse).
to let oneself in for (=to commit on self to) يشترك في - يورط في
to let someone down (=to fail to keep an agreement) يتخلى عن

Ex.(62) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

1. We carry an umbrella to keep the rain.....
2. Let us shut the window. It will keep the cold.....
3. Don't let the dogs....., they will make the carpet dirty.
4. I wish you wouldn't keep.....talking. It disturbs me.
5. It is most important to keep.....with your neighbours.
6. Keep.....the grass.
7. I advise you to keep.....from that man, he's a pickpocket.
8. The police blocked the road and let nobody.....
9. Please let me I promise not to do it again.
10. I asked the driver to let me.....at Emad Edin Street.

(4) "Get".

to get at (=reach) **to get out** (= leave work).
to get off (=remove escape punishment-descend from).
to get on with (=continue) **to get on** (=make progress, mount).
to get on with someone(to be on friendly terms with someone)
to get down (=descend ينزل dismount - يترجل).
to get over (=to recover from illness) يشفى
to surmount يتغلب على a difficulty - finish.
to get through exam (= to succeed to pass).
to get through food (= succeed to eat) **get into** (= enter).

Ex. (63) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

1. Get from that wall, you might hurt yourself.
2. She got her car to drive away.
3. I can't find out where the water is getting.....the roof.
4. He will never get.....the death of his wife.
5. It is a good idea to getwith your neighbours.
6. Be quite. I want to get.....with my work.
7. He helped her getfrom the horse.
8. The convict السجين got.....in a stolen suit.

9. I hope you are getting with the job.
10. The fat man could get a huge amount of rice.
11. He could gethis exams and got a diploma.
12. You are tall. Can you get.....that lamp on the wall.

(6) "To Be".

to be away يذهب بعيداً **to be back** (=to have returned)
to be at something (= engaged in doing) **to be in** (indoors)
to be around
to be about(to be somewhere in the immediate neighborhood).
to be along (= to arrive when expected).
to be out (=not to be considered 2. not at home).
to be out for (= trying hard to win or get).
to be up finished (used in time only) not in bed. 3. happening.
to be on (=to take place (used of performance of all sorts).
to be over(=finished)**to be behind** with(to be in arrears with) متأخر
to be through with (= to have finished with).
to be off (= 1. to leave, to start on a journey).
 2. cancelled - not to take place. **to be down** (=written down).
to be up to engaged in some activity usually illegal- 2. capable of

Ex. (64) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

- 1.Our time is at six o'clock.
- 2.What were you all.....when we arrived.
- 3.The film we want to see isn't.....tonight.
- 4.She was glad when her children were.....
- 5.Ring again later. Please : Nagi's notyet.
- 6.The cost of living isagain.
- 7.I'm sorry, the party'sbecause of the weather.
- 8.Father is He will return at 10 o'clock.
- 9.Mr. Salah isn'ton Friday.
- 10.You can have this book I'm.....it.

(7) "Break" "Call" "Carry" "Cut".

break down (1. = weep) 2. (have mechanical trouble عطل فنى).
break up (=destroy-finish school) **break off** (=stop suddenly).
call up (= telephone) **call on** (=visit a person).
call at (=visit a place) **call on** (=cancel) يلغى
carry on (=continue) **carry out** (=execute) ينفذ
carry off(achieve triumphantly) يحقق بانتصار **carry over** (=transfer)
cut down (=reduce) **cut out** (=eliminate) يزيل - يتخلص من

Ex. (65) Supply the correct particle in the following :

1. He has had to cutsmoking since his illness.
2. His car broke.....when he was half way home.
3. Call mewhen you are ready to leave.
4. You must carry.....the instructions to the letter.
5. Carry reading where you left off last time.
6. We shall have to call the party.....if it rains.
7. He called my house on his way past.
8. We shall have to cut our expenses this year.
9. He broke.....in the middle of a sentence when she came in.
10. She broke.....when she heard the news.

(8) "Draw" "Drop" "Fall" "Go".

draw on (=approach) يقترب

draw up (= 1. prepare a document) 2. (Stop a vehicle عربة).

draw back (= retreat يتراجع **draw off** (=go away).

draw out يخطط - يرسم **drop out** (=withdraw) ينسحب

drop off (= diminish) يقلل. يخفض **fall off** (=diminish)

fall out (=quarrel) **fall through** (= not to succeed).

fail to (= begin to do something) **fall upon** (=attack).

fall in with (= meet by chance = agree).

go in for (= take up a hobby or career).

go off (=explode) **go out** (= become extinguished) ينطفئ

Ex. (66) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

1. All our carefully laid plans have fallen.....
2. The wind fell as night drew.....
3. Unfortunately the champion had to drop.....the race at the beginning.
4. Attendance at class has fallen.....badly this term.
5. The policeman signed to the driver to draw.....at the side of the road.
6. I have asked my lawyer to draw.....a contract between us.
7. I will gladly fall.....with any plans you may make.
8. Luckily the bomb that fell near our house never went.....
9. Don't let fire gowhile I'm away.
10. We fell.....with a group of gypsies on the way.

(9) **"Look".look after (= take care of يعنى ر) look at (= to regard ينظر)**
look back on (= consider the past) **Look on / upon** (=consider).
look for (=search-seek) **Look out** (= be watchful, beware).
look forward to(= expect with pleasure يتطلع إلى) **look by** (يمر على).
look in (=pay a short visit) **look on** (=to regard) يطل على .
look up (= improve) **look into** (= investigate) يبحث في
look over (=inspect, read again, revise quickly) يفتش - يراجع
look through (=examine) **look down on** (=despise) يحتقر
look up (=look for it in the appropriate book) يفتش عن معنى

Ex.(67)Add the correct particle in the following sentences

1. If you look.....it carefully you'll see the mark.
2. I've been looking.....a cup to match the one I broke.
3. I look her as one of the family.
4. My windows look.....the garden.
5. You can always look her address in the directory الدليل
6. I am looking to seeing your house.
7. I'm going to look.....Mrs. Wagdy on my way to the store.
8. The police is lookingthe numerous fires that happened recently.
9. I look.....Mr. Wagdy as my adviser.
10. "Look.....!" he exclaimed.

10. "Give" "Run" "Set".

give something away (= give it to someone).
give someone away (= betray him) يخون
give back (=restore) يسترد - يستعيد
give away (=make a present of something) يعطى - يهب
give in (= yield) يستسلم **give out** (=fail).
give up (=1. surrender. 2. stop 3. renounce يتخلى عن).
run out of (=have no more) **set about** (= begin to).
run over (=drive over accidentally) **set to** (= begin).
run after(pursue يطارد)**run down**(=be exhausted 2speak ill of ينقد).
run in (to drive slowly) يلين to be run down (to be in poor health).
meet by chance) **set on** (=attack) **set out** (=expose to view).
run into (=collide with يصطدم بـ) **set down** (=write).
run out of (=have none left) **set up**(=establish) يقيم

Ex. (68) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

1. They have set.....a branch of their business in our town.
2. He has failed so many times and yet he won't give.....
3. Our stocks have run and not been replenished بعد ملء
4. The besieged army المحاصر refused to give.....
5. How long is it since you gave.....smoking ?
6. My uncle is very run.....
7. They asked him to set his ideas before he left.
8. She gave all her old clothes before leaving the country.
9. I ran an old school friend in the cinema.
10. My car skidded انزلقت جانباً and ran a wall.
11. A hen ran in front of my car and I'm afraid I ran.....it.
12. Your secret is save with me. I won't give you.....

(11) "Take" and "Turn".

take after (=resemble) يشبه **turn down** (=refuse an offer).
take back (=withdraw) ينسحب
take down (=write) **take in** (= deceive) يخدع
take off (=1. remove 2. leave the ground 3. imitate).
take on (= accept) يقبل **take to** (= begin a habit).
take up (=begin a hobby-occupy) **take out** (=remove).
take over (=assume responsibility) يتولى المسؤولية
turn into (=convert) **turn up** (=appear unexpectedly).
turn in (= go to bed) **turn out** (=produce = result - eject) يطرد
turn on / off (=switch on / off).

Ex. (69) Add the correct particle in the following sentence :

1. He was turned of his house for not paying his rent.
2. He has recently taken....going for long walks in the evening.
3. You can't take.....as easily as that with your stories.
4. Kamel has just taken.....the family business from his father.
5. Her brother turned....last night. They thought he was in France.
6. This factory turns.....100 new cars a day.
7. That boy is always taking.....his teacher's manner.
8. We have to move the wardrobe. It takes....too much space.
9. Little Nagi takes.....his father in appearance.
10. The cake turned.....a great success.

(12) "Put" "Pick" "Hold".

put back (replace) **put in for a job** (= apply for it).
put down (=write) **put off** (=postpone) يؤجل
put out (=extinguish) يطفى **put on clothes** (= dress onself).

pick out (=choose) **hold off** (=stay away).
hold up (=stop by threats) تهديدات **hold on** (=wait).
to be put out (=be annoyed) **hold up** (=delay) يعطل
put up (=erect) ٢ يقيم raise يرفع prices. **hold out** (=endure يتحمل)
put someone up (=give him hospitality) يَأوِي - يستضيف
put up with (=bear) يتحمل (tolerate يسامح)
pick up (= raise يرفع , take with, acquire يستوعب).

Ex(70) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

1. They decided to put the match.....because of the rain.
2. She was put when he spoke to her like that.
3. Put the stove when you have finished cooking.
4. The delegates المندوبين put at the best hotel in town.
5. I'll put my visit to Germany.
6. That vase is valuable. Put it.....before you drop it.
7. Put.....his phone number before you forget it.
8. I know that you are in this photograph but I can't pick you..
9. The thief held.....the cashier and robbed the bank.
10. The rain heldtill after the tennis party.

Verb + Preposition + ing

a) Many verbs have the structure verb (V) + preposition (P) + object. For example, talk about :

- We talked about the problem. (the problem is the object).

If the object is another verb, it ends in - ing :

- We talked about going to America. (V + P + -ing).

Here are some more verbs which have the structure V+P+ing

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------|---------------------|
| succeed in | Has Tom succeeded I | in | finding a job yet ? |
| fell like | don't feel | like | going out tonight. |
| think about/of | Are you thinking | of/about | buying a house ? |
| dream of | I've always dreamed | of | being rich. |
| approve/disapprove of | She doesn't approve | of | gambling. |
| look forward to | I'm looking forward | to | meeting her. |
| insist on | He insisted | on | buying me a drink |
| decide against | We decided | against | moving to London |
| apologize for | He apologized. | for | keeping me waiting |

*** I feel like doing = I'd like to do, I'm in the mood to do.**

We say apologize to someone for something :

-He apologized **to me for keeping** me waiting (no the apologized me).
 With some of these verbs you can also use the structure verb +
preposition+someone+ing. For example :

- We are all **looking forward to Peter coming** home.
- She doesn't **approve of her son staying** out late at night.
- They **insisted on me (or my) staying** with them.

b) These verbs have the structure verb+object + preposition+ ing:

| | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|----------|---------|------------------------|
| accuse | They accused | me | of | telling lies. |
| suspect | Did they suspect | the man | of | being a spy ? |
| congratulate | I congratulated | Ann | on | passing the exam. |
| prevent | What prevented | him | from | coming to the wedding? |
| stop | We stopped | everyone | from | leaving the building. |
| thank | He thanked | me | for | being so helpful |
| forgive | Please forgive | me | for | not writing to you. |
| warn | They warned | us | against | buying the car |

After stop you can leave out from. So you can say :

We stopped every one leaving (or from leaving) the building.

Some of these verbs are often used in the passive :

I was accused of telling lies.

Was the man **suspected of being** a spy?

We were **warned against buying** it.

Ex.70a In this exercise you have to write the correct preposition and to put the verb into the correct form. Use the verb in brackets at the end of each sentence.

Example: Jack insisted on going out by himself. (go).

1. After a long time we eventually succeededa flat (find).
2. I've been thinking for a new job. (look).
3. His parents didn't approve.....him out so late. (stay)
4. I wonder what prevented him to the party. (come)
5. I m getting hungry. I m looking forward.....dinner. (have)
6. I don t feel.....today. (study).
7. Forgive me you but I must ask you a question. (interrupt).
8. The arrested man was suspectedinto a house. (break).
9. Have you ever thought married? (get).
10. I've always dreamed.... on a small island in the Pacific. (live).
11. The cold water didn't. stop her a swim. (have).
12. Have you ever been accused a crime? (commit).
13. She apologized so rude to me (be).
14. We have decided..... a new car. (buy).

Ex 70b Now you have to change direct speech into reported speech. Begin each of your sentenced in the way shown.

Example it was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much.
 (George said to you).

George thanked me for helping him.

1. "I'll drive you to the station. I insist. (Tom said to Ann).

Tom insisted.....

2. I hear you passed your examinations. Congratulations ! (Jim said to you).

Jim congratulated.....

3. It was nice of you to visit me. thank you. (Mrs Dent said to Sue)

Mrs. Dent thanked.....

4. Don't stay at the hotel near the airport. (I said to Jack).

I warned.....

5. I'm sorry I didn't phone you earlier. (Margaret said to you)

Margaret apologized.....not.....

6. "You didn't pay attention to what I said." (The teacher said to the boy) **The teacher accused.....**

**On time/in time
At the end / in the end**

a) On time and in time.

On time = punctual, (في الوقت المحدد) not late. If something happens on time, it happens at the time which was planned :

- The 11.45 train left **on time**. (=it left at 11.45).

- A : I'll meet you at the corner at 7.30.

B : Okay, but please be **on time**. (=don't be late/be there at 7.30).

- The conference was very well organised. Everything began and finished **on time**.

In time (for something/to do something) = soon enough for something/soon enough to do something :

- Will you be home **in time** for dinner? (= soon enough for dinner).

- I've sent Jill her birthday present. I hope it arrives **in time** (for her birthday).

- I must hurry. I want to get home **in time** to see the football match on television. (soon enough to see the football match).

The opposite of in time is too late :

- I got home **too late to see** the football match.

Note the expression just in time :

- We got to the station **just in time** to catch the train.

- A dog ran across the road in front of the car, but I managed to stop **just in time** (to avoid hitting the dog).

b) At the end and in the end.

At the end (of something) = at the time when something ends,

at the end of the month at the end of January

at the end of the film **at the end of** the course

at the end of the match **at the end of** the concert

-I'm going away **at the end of** January/**at the end of** the month.

- **At the end of** the concert, there was tremendous applause.

- All the players shook hands **at the end of the match**.

You cannot say in the end of something.

The opposite of at the end is at the beginning :

at the beginning of the concert, at the beginning of January.

In the end = finally. We use in the end when we say what the final result of a situation was :

- We had a lot of problems with our car. **In the end** we sold it and bought another one.

- He got more and more angry. **In the end** he just walked out of the room.

- Tom couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He decided to go to Italy **in the end**.

Ex. 71a Complete these sentences with "on time or in time".

Example : The bus was late this morning, which is unusual. It's usually on time.

1. George is usually late for work but this morning he arrived....
2. I washed your shirt this morning but it should be dry..... for you to wear it this evening.
3. We had to get on the train without tickets because we didn't get to the station.....to buy them.
4. It's a very good train service. The trains always run.....
5. Our best player was injured in the last match. We hope he will be fit.....to play in the next game.
6. We plan to go to America in two weeks but we're still waiting for our visas. I hope they arrive.....

Ex. 71b In this exercise you have to make sentences with "Just in time".

Example : A dog ran across the road in front of the car. You saw it at the last moment.

(I/manage/stop/time) I managed to stop just in time.

1. Tom was going to sit on the chair you had painted. You said, "Don't sit on that chair" !.so he didn't (I/get/away/time) I
2. You were walking home without an umbrella. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily. (I/get/home/time).....
3. You thought you were going to miss the beginning of the film, but it began just as you sat down in the cinema. (I/get/the cinema/time/beginning/film).....

Ex. 71c Complete these sentences with "at" or "in".

Example : The players shook hands **at** the end **of** the match.

1. It took John a long time to find a job after he left school..... the end he found a job as a waiter.
2. "When do you get paid ?" the end of the month."
3. Are you going away...the beginning of August or..... the end ?
4. I couldn't decide what to get Ann for her birthday.....the end I didn't get her anything at all.
5. We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up.....the end and walked home.
6. the end of the course the students usually have a party.
7. I'll be moving to a new address.....the end of September.
8. His illness got worse and worse,the end he had to go into hospital for an operation.
9. Tom didn't want to lend us the money at first butthe end he agreed.

Noun + Preposition (Reason "For", cause "Of")

Study this list of nouns + preposition.

a cheque FOR (a sum of money) :

- They sent me a cheque for £50.

a demand/a need FOR something :

- The firm closed down because there wasn't enough demand for its product.

a reason FOR something :

- The train was late but no-one knew the reason for the delay.

a rise / an increase / a fall / a decrease IN something :

- There has been **an increase in** road accidents recently.

an advantage / a disadvantage OF something :

The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like, but we say "there is **an advantage in doing** something" :

- There are **many advantages in living** alone.

a cause OF someone / something :

- Nobody knows **what the cause of the explosion was**.

a photograph / a picture OF someone / something :

- The accident was my fault, so I paid for the damage to the other car. **a reaction TO رد فعل something :**

- I was **surprised at** his reaction to What I said.

a solution حل TO a problem / an answer TO a question / a reply TO a letter / a key TO a door :

- Do you think we'll find **a solution to this problem ?**

- **The answer to your question** is "NO" !

an attitude موقف to/towards someone/something :

- His **attitude to/towards his job** is very negative.

a relationship / a connection / contact WITH someone / something :

- Do you have **a good relationship** with your parents ?

- Police want to question a man **in connection** with the robbery.
but : **a relationship / a connection / a difference between two things :**

- Police have said that there is **no connection between the two murders**.

- There are **some differences between British English and American English**.

Ex. 72a :In this exercise you have to read a sentence and then complete another sentence with the same meaning :

Example : What caused the explosion ?

What was the cause of the explosion ?

1. We're trying to solve the problem. We're trying to find a solution.....
2. Ann gets on well with her brother. Ann has a good relationship
3. Prices have increased a lot. There has been a big increase.....
4. I don't know how to answer your question. I can't think of an answer.....

5. Nobody wants to buy shoes like these any more.
There is no demand.....
6. I think that being married has some advantages.
I think that there are some advantages.....
7. The number of people without jobs has fallen this year.
There has been a fall.....
8. I don't think that a new road is necessary.
I don't think that there is any need.....

Ex. 72b Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.

Example : There are some differences between British English and American English.

1. I've just received an invitation a wedding next week.
2. The causethe fire in the hotel last night is still unknown.
3. Ann showed me a photograph.....the hotel where she stayed during her holiday.
4. Money isn't the solution.....every problem.
5. The company has rejected the workers demandsan increasepay.
6. The two companies are completely independent. There is no connection.....them.
7. When I opened the envelope, I was delighted to find a cheque 500.
8. Have you seen this picture the town as it looked 100 years ago?
9. Sorry I haven't written to you for so long. The reason..... this is that I've been ill recently.
10. The advantage.....having a car is that you don't have to rely on public transport.
11. There are many advantages.....being able to speak a foreign language.
12. There has been a sharp rise.....the cost of living in the past few years.
13. The front door is locked. Have you got the key the back door?
14. Bill and I used to be good friends but I don't have much contacthim now.
15. I've never met Carol but I've seen a photograph.....her.

Verb + Preposition

Study this list of verbs + preposition :

apologize يعتذر (To someone) **FOR** something :

- When I realized I was wrong, I apologized to him for my mistake.

apply FOR يتقدم بطلب **a job/a place at university etc. :**

- I think this job would suit you. Why don't you apply for it ?

believe IN يؤمن بـ **something :**

- You **believe in God** (= You believe that God exists).
- **I believe in** saying what I think. (= I believe that it is a good thing to say what I think).

Belong TO ينتمي إلى **someone :**

- Who does this coat **belong to**?

care ABOUT يهتم **someone/something (= think someone/something is important) :**

He is very selfish. He doesn't **care about** other people.

Care **FOR** **someone/something : i) = like something (usually in questions and negative sentences) :**

- Would you **care for** a cup of coffee? (= Would you like?)
- I don't **care for** hot weather. (= I don't like....)

ii) = Look after someone :

- She is very old. She needs someone **to care for** her.

take care **OF** **someone / something (= look after) :**

- Have a nice holiday. **Take care** of yourself !.

collide **WITH** يصطدم بـ **someone / something :**

- There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

complain يشكو (TO someone) **ABOUT** **someone / something:**

- We complained to the manager of the restaurant about the food.

concentrate **ON** يركز على **something :**

- Don't look out of the window. **Concentrate on** your work !

consist **OF** **something :**

- We had an enormous meal. It consisted of seven courses.

crash / drive / bump / run **INTO** **someone / something :**

- He lost control of the car and crashed into a wall.

depend ON Someone / something :

-What time will you arrive? I don't know. **It depends on** the traffic.

You can leave out on before question words(when/where/how etc.

- Are you going to buy it ? **It depends (on) how much it is.**

die OF an illness :

- What did he **die of**? A heart attack.

dream ABOUT someone / something :

- I dreamt about you last night.

dream OF being something / doing something(=imagine):

- I often **dream of** being rich.

also : (I) wouldn't **dream (of doing something) :**

- Don't tell anyone what I said. No, I wouldn't **dream of it.**

happen TO someone / something :

- A strange thing happened to me the other day.

- What **happened** to that gold watch you used to have ?

hear ABOUT something (= be told about something) :

- Did you **hear about** the fight in the club on Saturday night ?

- Have you **heard about** Janet ? She's getting married.

hear OF someone / something (= know that someone / something exists) :

- Who is Tom Madely ? I have no idea. I've never **heard of** him.

- **Have you heard of a company** called Smith Electrics" ?

hear FROM someone (= receive a letter / telephone call from someone) :

- **Have you heard from** Ann recently ? Yes, she wrote to me last week.

laugh / smile AT someone / something :

- I look stupid with this haircut. Everyone will **laugh at** me.

listen TO someone / something :

- We spent the evening **listening to** records.

live ON money / food :

- George's salary is very low. It isn't enough to **live on.**

look AT someone / something (= look in the direction of) :

- Why are you **looking at** me like that ?

also : have a look AT, stare AT, glance AT

look FOR someone / something (= try to find) :

- I've lost my keys. Can you help me **look for** them ?

look AFTER someone / something (= take care of) :

- She's very old. She needs someone to **look after** her.
- You can borrow this book if you promise to **look after** it.

pay (someone) FOR something :

- I didn't have enough money to pay for the meal.

but: pay a bill/a fine/a fare/taxes etc.(no preposition).

rely ON someone / something :

- You can **rely on** Jack. He always keeps his promises.

search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) FOR someone / something.

- I've **searched the whole house** for my keys but I still can't find them.
- The police are searching for the escaped prisoner.

Shout AT someone (when you are angry) :

- He was very angry and started **shouting** at me.

but : Shout TO someone (so that they can hear you) :

- He **shouted to me** from the other side of the street.

speak/talk TO someone (with is also possible but less usual):

- **(on the telephone)** Hello, can I speak to Jane, please ?
- Who was that man I saw you talking to in the pub ?

suffer FROM an illness :

- The number of people **suffering from** heart disease has increased.

think ABOUT someone/something(= consider, concentrate the mind on):

- You're quiet this morning. What are you **thinking about**?
- I've **thought about** what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
- Will you lend me the money ? I'll **think about** it.

think OF someone/something (= remember, bring to mind, have an idea):

- He told me his name but I can't **think of** it now. (not think about it).

- That's a good idea. Why didn't I **think of** that ?

We also use think OF when we ask for or give an opinion :

- What did you **think of** the film ? I didn't **think much of** it.

wait FOR someone/something :

- I'm not going out yet. I'm **waiting for** the rain to stop.

write TO someone :

- Sorry I haven't **written** to you for such a long time.

We do not use a preposition with these verbs :

phone someone Did you **phone your** father yesterday ?

discuss something We **discussed many things** at the meeting

enter(go into a place) She felt nervous as she entered the room.

Ex.73a: Complete these sentences with a preposition (if a preposition is necessary).

Example : There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

1. He loves complaining. He complains.....everything.
2. Our neighbours complained ...us...the noise we made last night.
3. She hasn't got a job. She depends.....her parents for money.
4. You were very rude to Tom. Don't think you should apologizehim?
5. Are you going to apologize what you did ?
6. Tom and I ran each other in town yesterday afternoon.
7. He decided to give up sport in order to concentrate...his studies.
8. I don't believe.....working hard. It's not worth it.
9. A football team consists.....11 players.
10. It is terrible that some people are dying.....hunger while others eat too much.
11. As I was going out of the room, I collided.....someone who was coming in.
12. There was an awful noise as the car crashed.....the tree.
13. Do you belong.....a political party ?
14. I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends how I feel.

Ex. 73b: Complete these sentences with a preposition (if a preposition is necessary).

Example : She smiled at me as she passed me in the street.

1. Don't listen.....what he says. He's stupid.
2. What happened.....the picture that used to be on that wall ?
3. A : You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you ?
B : Of course not. I wouldn't dream.....it.
4. I dreamt Ann last night. We were dancing together at a party when she suddenly hit me. Then I woke up.
5. The accident was my fault, so I had to pay.....the damage.
6. I didn't have enough money to pay.....the bill.
7. You know that you can always rely....me if you need any help.
8. The man sitting opposite me on the train kept staring..... me.
9. She doesn't eat very much. She lives.....bread and eggs.

In these sentences put in the correct preposition after hear.

10. Did you hear.....the accident last night ? Yes, Ann told me.
11. Jill used to write to me quite often but I haven't heard..... her for a long time now.
12. A : Have you read any books by James Hudson ?
B : James Hudson ? No, I've never heard.....him.
13. Thank you for your letter. It was nice to hear.....you again.
14. Do you want to hear.....our holiday ? No, tell me later.
15. The town I come from is very small. You've probably never heard.....it.

In these sentences put in the correct preposition after look.

16. When I looked my watch, I couldn't believe that it was so late.
17. Who lookedyou when you were ill ?
18. The police are still looking.....the seven-year-old boy who disappeared from his home last week. Nobody knows where the boy is.

19. When we went out for the evening, a neighbour of ours looked the children.

21. I'm looking.....Tom. Have you seen him anywhere ?

Ex. 73c Complete these sentences with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the sentence as it is.

Example : He was angry and started shouting at me.

1. I've searched everywhere.....John but I haven't been able to find him.

2. Ken gets very jealous. He doesn't like his girlfriend talking other men.

3. I don't want to go out yet. I'm waiting the post to arrive.

4. Please don't shout me ! Be nice to me.

5. We passed Tom as we were driving along. I shouted him but he didn't hear.

6. Ann doesn't write her parents very often but she phones them at least once a week.

7. Can I speak.....you for a moment ? There's something I want to ask you.

8. Sally is often not well. She sufferssevere headaches.

9. The police have been searching the countryside..... the missing girl.

10. She's a bit lonely. She needs someone to talk.....

11. I don't want to discuss what happened last night. I want to forget about it.

12. We're going out for a meal tonight. I must phone..... the restaurant to reserve a table.

In these sentences you have to use the correct preposition (of or about) after think. Remember that sometimes you can use either of or about.

13. Before you make a final decision, think carefully...what I said.

14. I don't know what to get Ann for her birthday. Can you think anything ?

15. You're selfish. You only thinkyourself.

16. I've finished the book you lent me. "Oh, have you ? What did you think it ?
17. We're thinking going out for a meal tonight. Would you like to come ?
18. I don't really want to go out to dinner with Tom tonight. I'll have to think an excuse.
19. When he asked her to marry him, she said that she wanted to go away and think..... if for a while.
20. She is rather homesick. She's always thinking.....her family back home.
21. I don't think much.....this coffee. It's like water.

Verb + Object + Preposition

Study this list of verbs + object + preposition :

accuse يتهم someone **OF** (doing) something :

- Tom **accused** Ann **of being** selfish.
- Three students were **accused of cheating** in the examination.

Ask (Someone) FOR something :

- I wrote to the company asking them **for more** information about the job.

but : ask (someone) a question (no preposition).

blame يلوم someone/something **FOR** something :

- Everybody **blamed me for** the accident.

or : blame something ON someone/ something:

- Everybody **blamed the accident on** me.

We also say : (someone is) to blame for something :

- Everybody said that I **was to blame** for the accident.

Borrow something FROM someone:

- I didn't have any money. I had to **borrow** some **from** a friend of mine.

charge يتهم someone **WITH** (an offence/a crime) :

- Three men have been arrested and **charged with** robbery.

congratulate يهنئ someone **ON** (doing) something :

- When I heard that he had passed his examination, I phoned him to **congratulate** him **on** his success.

divide / cut / split something INTO (two or more parts) :

- The book is divided **into** three parts.

- **Cut the meat into** small pieces before frying it.

do something ABOUT something (= do something to improve a bad situation) :

- The economic situation is getting worse and worse. The government ought to do something about it.

explain (a problem / a situation / a word etc.) TO someone :

- **Can you explain this word to me?**(not explain me this word).

also: **(explain / to someone) that/what/how/why.....**

(note the word order) :

- **Let me explain** to you what I mean.

invite someone TO (a party / a wedding etc.) :

- Have you been invited to any parties recently ?

leave (a place) FOR (another place) :

- I haven't seen her since **she left home for work** this morning.

point/aim something AT someone / something :

- Don't **point** that knife **at** me! It's dangerous.

prefer someone / something TO someone / something :

- I prefer tea to coffee.

protect يحمى someone/something FROM (or against) someone / something:

- He put sun-tan oil on his body to protect his skin from the sun.
(or.....against the sun.).

provide يزود someone WITH something :

- The school **provides** all its students **with** books.

regard someone/something AS something :

- I've always **regarded** you as **one** of my best friends.

remind someone/something of (cause someone to remember)

- This house **reminds me of** the one I lived in when I was a child.

- Look at this photograph of Tom. Who **does he remind you of** ?

but : **remind someone ABOUT something (=tell someone not to forget):**

- I'm glad you **reminded me about** the party. I had completely forgotten it.

For remind someone to do something :

sentence **يحكم على** someone **TO** (a period of imprisonment)

- He was found guilty and **sentenced to six months** imprisonment.

spend (money) ON something :

- How much money **do you spend on food** each week ?

Note that we usually say spend (time) doing something :

- I spend a lot of time reading.

throw something AT someone/something (in order to hit them) :

- Someone threw an egg at the minister while he was speaking.

but: **throw something TO someone (for someone to catch):**

- Ann shouted "Catch!" and **threw the keys** to me from the window.

translate (a book etc.) FROM one language INTO another language :

- George Orwell's books **have been translated into** many languages.

warn **يحذر** someone **ABOUT** someone / something. (of is also possible sometimes):

- I knew she was a bit strange before I met her. Tom had **warned me about her.**
- Everybody **has been warned about** the dangers of smoking.

For warn someone against doing something.

For warn someone not to do something.

Ex. 74a: Complete these sentences with a preposition.

Example: I didn't have any money, so I had to borrow some from a friend of mine.

1. You're always asking me.....money. Why don't you ask someone else for a change ?
2. I've been invited.....the wedding but unfortunately I can't go.
3. When I saw Dave, I congratulated him...passing his driving test.
4. Be careful with those scissors. Don't point them.....me !
5. It's not very pleasant when you are accused something you didn't do.

6. The driver of the car was taken to the police station and later charged.....theft
7. Is that your own book ? "No, I borrowed it.....the library.
8. It's a very large house. It's divided.....four flats.
9. Mr. and Mrs. Roberts are on a tour of Europe at the moment. They're in Rome now, but tomorrow they leave.....Venice.
10. The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we ought to do something.....it

Ex. 74b: In this exercise you have to use the correct preposition after "Blame".

Sometimes you have to use "For", and sometimes "On".

Example : Tom said that the accident was my fault.

Tom blamed me for the accident.

Tom blamed the accident on me.

1. Ann said that what happened was Jim's fault. Ann blamed Jim.....
2. You always say that everything is my fault. You always blame everything.....
3. Do you think that the economic situation is the fault of the government? Do you blame the government.....
4. I think that the increase in violent crime is the fault of television. I blame the increase in violent crime.....

Now re-write sentences 3 and 4 using.....to blame for.....

Example : Tom said that I was to blame for the accident.

5. (3) Do you think that the government is?
6. (4) I think that

Ex 74c Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.

Example : Ann shouted "Catch !" and threw the keys to me from the window.

1. Do you prefer your present job.....the one you had before ?
2. They wore warm clothes to protect themselves.....the cold.
3. He's written many books but most people regard his first book his best.

4. Do you spend much money.....clothes ?
5. Do you see that girl over there ? Does she remind you
..... anyone you know ?
6. Remind me the meeting tomorrow night. I'm sure
to forget otherwise.
7. I love this music. It always makes me feel very happy. It
reminds me a warm spring day.
8. When we went on our skiing holiday last year, the organisers
provided us.....all the equipment we needed.
9. Before he came to Britain, many people had warned him.....
the weather. So he was prepared for plenty of rain.
10. He was sentenced.....life imprisonment for the murder of a
policeman.
11. Don't throw stones.....the birds ! It's cruel.
12. If you don't want to eat that sandwich, throw it the
birds. They'll eat it.
13. I couldn't understand the letter because it was in Spanish. So
a friend of mine translated itEnglish for me.
14. I prefer travelling by train.....driving. It's much more pleasant.
15. What do you spend most of your money.....?
16. She got really angry. She even threw a chair.....me !
17. You remind me very much.....someone I used to know a
long time ago. You are really like him in many ways.
18. Some words are difficult to translate.....one language
..... another.
19. Before you go into the house, I must warn you.....the
dog. He can be very aggressive sometimes.

Adjective + Preposition

Study these groups of adjectives + preposition.

**nice/kind/good/generous/mean/stupid/silly/intelligent/
clever/sensible/(im) polite/rude/unreasonable OF
someone (to do something) :**

- Thank you. It was very **nice/kind of you to help** me.
- **It's stupid of her to** go out without a coat. She'll catch cold.

but: (to be) nice/kind/good/generous/mean/(im) polite/
rude/(un)

pleasant / (un) friendly/cruel TO someone :

- She has always been **very nice/kind to me**. (not with me).
- Why were you **so rude / unfriendly to Ann** ? .

angry/annoyed/furious about something with someone
FOR doing something :

- What are you **so angry / annoyed about**?
- They were **furious with** me for not inviting them to the party.

delighted سرور / pleased منشرح / satisfied./ disappointed
خائب الرجاء WITH something :

- I was **delighted / pleased with** the present you gave me.
- Were you **disappointed with** your examination results ?

bored متضايق / fed up WITH something :

- You **get bored / fed up with** doing the same thing every day.

surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished AT / BY
something :

- Everybody **was surprised / shocked at / by** the news.

excited / worried / upset ABOUT something :

- Are you excited **about** going on holiday next week ?
- Ann is upset **about** not being invited to the party.

afraid / frightened / terrified / scared OF someone /
something :

- Are you afraid of dogs ? Yes, I'm terrified **of** them.

proud / ashamed OF someone / something :

- I'm not **ashamed of** what I did. In fact I'm quite **proud of** it.

jealous غيور / envious حقود / suspicious OF مرتاب

someone/something :

Why are you always so jealous of other people ?

- He didn't trust me. He was **suspicious of** my intentions.

aware مدرك / conscious OF something :

- Did you know they were married? "No, I wasn't **aware of** that.

good/bad/excellent/brilliant لامع - متائق, hopeless AT
(doing) something :

- I'm not **very good at repairing** things.

married / engaged خاطب **TO someone :**

- Linda is **married to** an American. (**not with** an American).

Sorry ABOUT something:

- I'm **sorry about the noise** last night. We were having a party.
but: **sorry FOR doing something :**

- I'm **sorry for shouting** at you yesterday.

But it is more usual to say : I'm sorry I..... :

- I'm **sorry I shouted at you** yesterday.

(to feel/to be) sorry FOR someone :

- I **feel sorry** for George. He has got no friends and no money.

impressed متأثر **BY / WITH someone/something :**

- I wasn't **very impressed by / with** the film.

Famous FOR something :

- The Italian city of Florence is **famous for** its art treasures.

responsible FOR مسئول **عن something :**

- Who was **responsible for** all that noise last night ?

different FROM (or TO) someone / something :

- The film was **quite different from (or to)** what I expected.

Interested IN something :

- Are you **interested in** art and architecture ?

capable قادر على **/ incapable OF something :**

- I'm sure you are **capable of passing** the examination.

fond OF someone / something :

- Mary is **very fond of animals**. She has three cats and two dogs.

Full OF something:

- The letter I wrote **was full of** mistakes.

Short OF something:

- I'm a bit **short of** money. Can you lend me some ?

tired OF something:

- Come on, let's go ! **I'm tired of** waiting.

Keen ON شديد الشوق إلى **something:**

- We stayed at home because Ann wasn't **very keen on going** out in the rain.

similar TO مشابه **something :**

- Your writing **is similar to** mine.

crowded **WITH** (people etc.) :

. The city centre was **crowded with** tourists.

Ex. 75a: Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.

Example: I was delighted with the present you sent me.

1. It's very nice....you to let me use your car. Thank you very much.
2. Why are you always so rude.....your parents ? Can't you be nice.....them ?
3. It wasn't very polite him to leave without saying thank you.
4. I can't understand people who are cruel.....animals.
5. Why do you always get so annoyed.....little things ?
6. The people next door are annoyedus.....making so much noise last night.
7. We enjoyed our holiday but we were rather disappointed the hotel.
8. I was surprised.....the way he behaved. It was quite out of character.
9. She doesn't often go out at night. She's afraid.....the dark.
10. I've been trying to learn Spanish but I'm not very satisfied..... my progress.
11. Jill starts her new job on Monday. She's quite excitedit.
12. I was shocked.....what you said. You should be ashamed yourself.
13. Did you know that Linda is engaged.....a friend of mine ?
14. I had never seen so many people before. I was astonished the crowds.
15. Bill has been doing the same job for too long. He's bored it.
16. These days everybody is aware.....the dangers of smoking.
17. Are you still upset.....what I said to you yesterday ?

Ex. 75b: Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.

Example: Sorry about the noise last night . We were having a party.

1. I'd rather not go to an Indian restaurant. I'm not very keen Indian food.
2. Ann is very fond her younger brother.
3. This part of town is always very lively at night. It's usually crowded..... people.
4. In the cupboard I found a box full.....old letters.
5. He said he was sorry the situation but there was nothing he could do.
6. Britain certainly isn't famous.....its food.
7. That man's very honest. He isn't capable.....telling a lie.
8. The man we interviewed for the job was quite intelligent but we weren't very impressed.....his appearance.
9. Travelling is great at first but you get tired.....it after a while.
10. Do you know anyone who might be interested.....buying an old car?
11. Our house is similar.....theirs-I think ours is a bit larger.
12. Bill and I come from the same town but my accent is different his.
13. The police are responsible.....maintaining law and order.
14. We're short our office at the moment. There aren't enough people to do the work that has to be done.
17. I'm sorry.....the smell in this room. It's just been painted.

Preposition + noun ("by" mistake, "on" television)

Study this list and the examples carefully :

to pay BY cheque (but to pay IN cash or to pay cash).

- Did you **pay by cheque or in cash** ?

(to do something) BY accident / BY mistake / BY chance :

- We hadn't arranged to meet. We **met by chance**.

a play BY Shakespeare/ a painting BY Rembrant/ a novel BY Tolstoy etc. :

- Have you read any **books by Agatha Christie** ? (= **any books written by Agatha Christie** ?).

(to be / to fall) IN love WITH someone :

- Have you ever been in love with anyone ?

IN (my) opinion :

- **In my opinion** the film wasn't very good.

(to be) ON fire:

- Look ! That car is on fire.

(to be) ON the telephone / ON the phone :

- You can't phone me. I'm not **on the phone**. (= I haven't got a phone).

- I've never met her but I've spoken to her **on the phone**.

ON television / ON the radio :

- I didn't watch the match on television. I listened to it on the radio.

(to be / to go) ON a diet : رجيم

- I've put on a lot of weight. I'll have **to go on a diet**.

(to be / to go) ON strike :

- There are no trains today. The railway workers are **on strike**.

(to be/to go) ON holiday/ ON business / ON a trip / ON a tour / On an excursion نزهة / **ON an expedition** بعثة etc.

- Tom's away at the moment. He is **on holiday** in France.

- Did you go to Paris **on Business or on holiday**?

- One day I'd like to **go on a world** tour.

but you can also say go to a place FOR a holiday/FOR my holiday(s)':

- Tom has gone **to** France **for a holiday**.

- Where are you going **for your holidays** this year ?

(to go/to come) FOR a walk/FOR a swim/FOR a drink etc.

- She always goes **for a walk** with her dog in the morning.

- After work we went to a cafe **for a drink**.

(to have something) FOR breakfast/FOR lunch/FOR dinner

- What did you have for lunch ?

Ex.76a: Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

Example: We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by chance.

1. I'm hungry. What'sdinner this evening ?

2. my opinion, violent films shouldn't be shown.... television.

3. I think I need a bit of exercise. Shall we go.....a walk ?

4. I mustn't eat too much. I'm supposed to bea diet.

5. There was panic when people realised the building was fire.

6. The weather was terrible when we were.....holiday in Scotland.
7. Where did you goyour holidays last year ?
8. I won't be at work next week. I'll beholiday.
9. I wouldn't like to go a cruise. I think I'd get bored.
10. The shop assistant wouldn't accept my cheque and insisted that I paid.....cash.
11. Did you hear the news this morning.....the radio ?
12. It was onlyaccident that I found out who the man really was.
13. When we went to Rome, we wenta tour around the city.
14. What's that music ? I can't remember the title but I know it's Beethoven.
15. When I was 14, I went.....a trip of France organised by my school.

Ex. (77) General Objective Tests On Prepositions :

1. We spend the mid-year holiday (**in - at - on - by**) Luxor.
2. We spend the summer holiday (**in - at - on - of**) Alexandria.
3. My uncle will arrive (**in - at - one - into**) the afternoon.
4. He takes a walk (**in - at - on - by**) Sundays.
5. I bought a book (**at - for - with - by**) ten shillings.
6. He was standing just (**beside - outside - inside - besides**) you.
7. I have other books (**beside - outside - inside - besides**) these.
8. He has lived here (**for - of - since - from**) two years.
9. He has been ill (**for - since - ago - from**) last Friday.
10. I will come back (**in - after - for - within**) an hour.
11. The work was shared (**between - within - with - among**) all.
12. The officer walked (**between - within - with - among**) two lines of soldiers.
13. He accused the man (**for - with - to - of**) stealing.
14. I am accustomed (**for - with - to - of**) the hot weather.
15. The girls is afraid (**for - to - with - of**) the dog.
16. He aimed (**on - towards - to - at**) the bird.
17. The teacher was angry (**with - at - on - of**) Ali.
18. Parents were anxious (**about - for - on - at**) the child's health.

19. He was ashamed (**for - at - on - of**) his behaviour.
20. He is very careful (**for - with - at - of**) his health.
21. Many people complain (**for - on - at - of**) the heat.
22. Our class is composed (**for - at - on - of**) thirty boys.
23. I have great confidence (**on - of - at - in**) him.
24. The mountain is covered (**by - at - with - of**) snow.
25. The man was cured (**by - at - from - of**) his illness.
26. He was deprived (**from - of - at - off**) his freedom.
27. I congratulated him (**from - at - on - for**) his success.
28. I was disappointed (**in - with - at - of**) his work.
29. I divided the apple (**in - between - into - at**) parts.
30. I have no doubt (**in - for - of - about**) his success.
31. The lady was dressed (**at - on - in - about**) black.
32. This is an exception (**for - into - to - at**) the rule.
33. He failed (**at - on - in - of**) chemistry last year.
34. The bottle is full (**at - in - on - of**) water.
35. I shall be glad to get rid (**at - in - on - of**) smoking.
36. You must guard (**about - for - of - against**) bad habits.
37. A child is dependent (**at - on - out - of**) his parents.
38. They are different (**from - of - for - at**) politics.
39. My brother always insists (**at - on - in - of**) his views.
40. My friend is interested (**in - on - at - into**) physics.
41. She was very jealous (**at - on - in - of**) her sister.
42. He left (**for - into - to - at**) England yesterday.
43. He lives (**by - with - at - on**) his salary.
44. She started (**on - at - with - against**) him angrily.
45. Mother looks (**on - at - in - after**) her children.
46. They looked (**for - about - after - of**) the lost child.
47. She was married (**for - with - to - at**) a rich man.
48. Their house is opposite. (**for - on - of - to**) ours.
49. I passed (**by - with - to - at**) the post office.
50. The teacher is pleased (**from - to - of - with**) the clever boy.
51. I prefer tea (**for - from - with - to**) coffee.
52. I am proud (**for - of - on - from**) my country.
53. He was related (**with - at - against - to**) a rich family.

54. He made **(on - at - of - up)** his mind to leave.
55. He was dissatisfied **(at - in - on - with)** his income.
56. Your book is not similar **(at - to - with - for)** mine.
57. I spend a lot of time **(for - at - in - on)** my readings.
58. I hope he will succeed **(in - for - on - at)** his work.
59. A conceited man feels superior **(at - against - on - to)** everyone else.
60. I am quite sure **(at - for - on - of)** his honesty.
61. We were surprised **(at - for - on - about)** his sudden death.
62. The plane took **(up - of - out - off)** smoothly.
63. The accident tied the traffic **(over-into-up-on)** for an hour.
64. I am tired **(at - from - on - of)** the cold weather.
65. I was trembling **(with - at - for - from)** cold yesterday.
66. I have written the letter **(with - of - by - in)** ink.
67. I have applied **(for - to - of - at)** a job with that company.
68. He was ashamed **(about - for - of - at)** his clothes.
69. My friend was not aware **(about - of - for - at)** his clothes.
70. His hard work brought **(in - about - into - of)** his success.
71. You must bring **(out - up - on - in)** your children carefully.
72. We characterize people **(by - to - with - at)** their appearance.
73. I came **(by - at - on - across)** some old letters.
74. His store competes **(with - on - at - by)** us for customers.
75. My friend co-operated **(with - of - at - by)** me on the project.
76. I correspond **(with - at - to - by)** a friend in London.
77. Nagi has a craving **(to - with - of - for)** sweets.
78. Mary excels **(at - in - by - on)** swimming.
79. The teacher exempted Ali **(from - out - of - for)** the exam.
80. The boy was immersed **(in - on - of - at)** his books.
81. I am indebted **(for - to - at - into)** my friend for his help.
82. You should profit **(by - with - at - from)** your experience.
83. Nagi is named **(on - after - at - for)** his grandfather.
84. The pupil was rewarded **(at - for - in - on)** his cleverness.
85. It is not good to stare **(on - to - against - at)** people.
86. I sympathize **(at - with - of - for)** you about your problem.
87. We triumphed **(at - on - in - over)** the enemy.
88. Mr. Nagi is worthy **(of - for - from - at)** a better job.
89. He repented **(from - on - at - of)** his wrong doing.
90. He feels repentance **(at - on - for - of)** his sin.

وظائف اللغة Language Functions

When we are actually talking, we are more concerned with the need to communicate **فكرة محددة** a particular idea for example an intention **قصد** or suggestion **اقتراح** if we want to communicate efficiently, **بكفاءة** we need to be aware of the various possible ways which we can choose in order to express **نعبر عن** the idea in mind. We also need to know which of the various ways is most appropriate to **مناسب** a particular situation at the time.

There are various ways in which some important communicative purposes can be achieved **تحقيقها** in simple words. How you can be sure you are saying things the way you want to say them. In each section you will find the model auxiliary **الفعل** or auxiliaries expressions **مصطلحات لغوية** which have the same functions.

Various common Functions :

1. Greetings and Leave talking.
2. Greetings and other remarks on the phone.
3. Greeting and closing remarks in letters.
4. Attracting attention and addressing people.
5. Offers - suggestions and Invitations.
6. Permission - Prohibition.
7. Advice and Warnings.
8. Requesting and Persuading.
9. Protesting and Complaining.
10. Apologizing.
11. Refusing, Regretting and declining.
12. Accusing denying.
13. Commands.
14. Certainty - uncertainty.

1. Greetings and Leave Taking

A. 1. Good morning

2. Good afternoon

3. Good evening.

Mr. Morning Mr.

When we meet people, we greet them according to the time of day. Three different times of day are known for this purpose.

Morning is used until lunch time.

Afternoon is used from lunch until about 6 o'clock.

Evening is used from about 6 o'clock until bedtime.

Morning Mr. ... is used among workmates or friends زملاء في العمل

B. 1. Hello Bill

2. Hi Mary

These expressions may be used as greetings when we meet friends at any time of the day.

Hello is also the usual expression when we greet an unknown caller on the telephone.

2. A to B Have you met Mr. Smith?

B to A. No, not yet. How do you do? My name is Black Smith.
to B How do you do Mr. Black.

How do you do? is the formal greeting used by both speakers كلا المتحدثين when they are introduced to each other for the first time.

How do you do? مع انها تبدو سؤال فلا يجب الإجابة عليها

How are you? سؤال حقيقى عن الصحة

study this example :

Smith to Black; Oh, How are you Mr. Black ?

Black : Fine, thank you, How are you ?

Smith : I'm all right, thank you.

How are you ? يقال خصيصا للناس الذين نعرفهم من قبل ولكننا لا نستعملها عندما نتعرف على الناس لأول مرة. كذلك فإن **How are you ?** عادة ما تعبر عن تحية ويكررها المتحدث الثانى دون الإجابة عليها.

How are things? يمكن استعمالها بين الأصدقاء المقربين.

Example:

How are things ? The answer is: **Fine, thanks** or **All right**

Another example :

Hello, I'm Sally. Hi, Sally Nice to meet you. I'm Janet.

Especially when the young generation meet introduction is أقل من الناحية الرسمية

How do you do ? تحل محل **Nice to meet you** لذلك فإن

C. I must leave now. Good bye everybody. Good night
uncle Samy.

Good bye is an expression **عبارة** which anyone can use when taking their leave **عند المغادرة** at any time except late at night.

Good night is used late at night. It is commonly used **شائعة** among members of a family when they go to bed.

D. People who know each other well and especially young people and children use a number of expressions when they are leaving "Bye" (is the shortened form **اختصار** of Goodbye. also Bye , Bye , Cheerio , See you soon.

2. Greetings and other polite remarks on the phone

study the example :

caller, National Automobile club. Central office good morning.

Could you put me through to Mr.

or May / could I speak to Mr.

or I'd like to speak to Mr.

Yes, certainly Hold the line please.

or Would you mind holding on a moment ?

Thank you for calling.

Not at all. It was nice talking to you goodbye.

3. Greetings and closing remarks in letter.

التحيات و الختام في الخطاب

The usual form of greeting in personal letters and friends is **Dear + First name example. Dear Ali. Dear Ahmed.**

Dear uncle Samy, Dear aunt Samia. للأشخاص ذات الصلة الرسمية

Dear Sir, Dear Madam ;

Dear Ali ; Dear Ahmed ختام الخطاب الذي يبدأ بـ

Very sincerely yours or Yours sincerely يستعمل

Dear Mr. Ali ختام الخطاب الذي يبدأ بـ

Very truly yours or Yours faithfully. يستعمل للأشخاص الذين نعرفهم جيدا

Lots of love or Yours ever نستعمل

4. Attracting attention and Addressing people.

جذب إنتباه الناس ومخاطبتهم

A. Excuse me, Could you explain this point again. It is a polite way of attracting someone's attention, and making sure

والتأكد, they are listening to you before you say what you really want to say. If you know the person's name, It is polite to add تضيف it as "Excuse me Mr. Salah".

B. Excuse me, Sir do you know it is a no parking area ?

It is used when a policeman attracts the attention of any motorist. To answer the policeman's remark we say.

Yes Officer I'm not parking I've run out of petrol

a) Excuse me, could I have the bill : عند مخاطبة الجرسون والمضيفة نقول:

b) Excuse me, could I know exactly when we arrive ?

Pardon me تستعمل كطريقة رسمية لجذب الإنتباه

Pardon me madam I think you are standing on my foot.

5. Offers, Suggestions and Invitations

Examples:

العروض - الإقتراحات - الدعاوى

- Won't** you come and sit down ?
- Wouldn't** you like to have a cup of tea ?
- Shall** I get you some biscuits ?
- Will** you have dinner with me ?
- Can** I do anything to help you ?
- Could** you come to supper on Thursday ?

يلاحظ من الأمثلة السابقة إستعمال

shall - will - won't and wouldn't and also can/could to make offers, suggestions and invitations.

Can or could يستعمل للسؤال عن إقتراح مثال ذلك :

- Where can we get a decent meal in this town ?
- Where could one spend an hour or two.

Study the following examples :

What } about having a drink ?
How }

Let's have a drink. **Let me** carry your bag for you (allow).

Why don't we take a taxi ? **I'll do it for you**, shall I ?

2. Some more examples :

Would you like to come to my party ?

I'd love to. Thank you

للإجابة بالإثبات

I'd love, but I'm afraid I can't

للإجابة بالنفي

Dentist; I shall need to see you once more to polish teeth.

Would you like to come back in a week's time?
 perhaps you'd like a drink with us?
 Oh, thank you. It is very kind of you.
 Take a seat please.
 You can sit here if you like.
 Have a look at the paper, will you ?

6. Permission

الإذن

Prohibition الحظر

Can / could / may

يمكن إستعمال

Examples :

Can
May
Could } I have a look at your map

Yes, Of course you can / may.

Can أكثر تأدياً من could / may.

Can / May

يمكن إعطاء الأذن بإستعمال

Examples:

You Can } Take my guide book
may }

Other expressions:

Would you mind { If I opened my opening } the window?
Do you mind { if I read my reading } Your letter

Are we allowed to use our dictionaries?

Would it be all right if I came late?

Is it all right/Ok if I do it tomorrow?

B. Prohibition: الحظر

Permission is refused يرفض الطلب an prohibition is made

We use can't / may not / mustn't

These may be softened تخفف by using. I'm sorry or I'm afraid.

Examples :

You { Can't } smoke here.
may not
You { mustn't } Park here (I'm afraid)
mustn't

You aren't allowed to park here.

You are not to talk during the test.

Advice

We can use **shall/should/can/could** to ask for advice

To give advice we can use should and ought to.

But **"ought to"** is very strong form of recommendation.

Study the examples :

2. How can I mend the vase?

3. What should you do if you were in my position?

Other expressions for giving advice:

1. **You had better go** and see your teacher about it.
2. **If I were you**, I'd ask my teacher about it.
3. **I'd advise** to go and talk to him.
4. **You'd better not** sit close to the fire.

We often follow warnings by saying something unpleasant will happen if they are not needed.

Study the examples.

1. If you don't stop making that noise, I'll call the police.
2. Stop that noise or I'll call the police.
3. You had better hold on tight. You are going to fall.

1. Requests :

A. We can use can/could - will and would to make requests.

1. Can/could You help me please?
2. Would you pass me the salt?

3. Will you post this letter for me?

Other expressions for requests:

1. Would you be kind and shut the window?

2. Would you mind shutting the window?

B. We can also use. "Just a second" to make the interruption المقاطعة or delay التعطيل in answering a request, seem as short as possible.

Example :

1. Excuse me, may I interrupt you? **Just a second**

2. Could you hold this for me? Certainly, **just a second.**

3. Sometimes we preface تقدم a specific request طلب محدد with a general request for help by asking for a favour معروف.

Example :

I wonder if you would } do me a small favour
Could you }

Yes, what is it? or yes, I'll try.

It depends on what it is.

2. Persuading

الإقناع (بفعل شيء ما)

A. Negative questions أسئلة منفية can be used as a very strong attempt to persuade someone to do something.

Examples:

1. Won't you take a holiday this year ?

2. Couldn't you stay until tomorrow ?

3. Wouldn't you like to meet your close friend Ahmed ?

B. (Must - Do)

أحيانا تستخدم صفة الأمر باستعمال

1. Do take another piece of cake, there is still plenty there.

2. You must try the soup, it is delicious.

9. Protesting And Complaining : المعارضة والشكوى

Protests and complaints are usually made in an indirect and by using questions أسئلة المساعدة way using auxiliaries rather than by making statements.

1. Must you always play your radio when I'm working ?

2. Do you have to play it loudly ?

3. Is it absolutely necessary to have it on now ?

4. Pop music can be very disturbing, you know ?

10. Refusing, Regretting And Declining :

1. We may refuse rather than agree to do what someone requests.
We may decline نرفض بأدب **without regrets rather than**
accept an invitation. An excuse اعتذار is often added.

Study the examples :

- A. Will you come back again to morrow, please ? **(Request)**
 I am sorry I won't/can't. I am busy. **(Refusal)**
- B. Dad: John would like to talk to you about our wedding plans.
 Wedding plans ?

I'm not { going
ready
willing } to talk to him on
 that subject

or **It's no use asking to change** my mind

or **I'm not going to change** my mind. **(Refusal)**

or **I won't do it.**

2. **Declining with regrets and excuses** : الإعتذار بأدب مع تقديم الأسف :

Can you come swimming with me ?

| Regrets | Declining | Excuses |
|--|-----------|--|
| I'm sorry | { | I have got a bad could I have to visit my uncle? |
| I'm afraid | | |
| What a pity. | | |
| Unfortunately I am awfully busy just now | | |

11. Apologizing الاعتذار

A. We can express our apology by using complete sentences like

I'm very sorry or I beg your pardon.

In case في حالة of deep apology we can also use.

I'm really terribly sorry, and Do please forgive me.

B. **Ouch** تعبير عن ألم مفاجئ **That 's my foot you stepped on.**

I'm very sorry ! I didn't notice that you were behind me

"You are sitting on my hat ! .

The shortened form **"Sorry or Pardon"**

الشكل المختصر

Pardon is used as an apologetic request for someone to repeat
 يكرر something you have not heard properly.

Study this example:

Sorry I'm late. I missed the train.

It's all right. We haven't started yet.

Is it the 8.30 train that stops at Banha or the 8.50.

pardon ? I said, it is the 8,30 هنا نستعمل كطلب تكرار ما قاله المتكلم

pardon me and Excuse me نستخدم لجذب الانتباه

Excuse me. ولا نستخدم كأسلوب للاعتذار

C. Words like apologize regret are sometimes used in writing, but are rarely heard in speech.

Study this example:

Dear Sir

We must apologize for the delay in sending back your photographs. We regret to say that the negatives were damaged.

12. Accusing And Denying : الاتهام والإنكار

It is usually uncomfortable and embarrassing to accuse أن someone of having done something wrong, even حتى we are sure he has done it. A strong accusation اتهام may bring out an equally strong denial إنكار or angry confession. اعتراف A gentler accusation will bring out a gentler denial or make confession easier. Even when we are certain who the guilty person is , it may ease تسهيل matters to pretend there is some doubt.

Study this example:

Someone has been using my record player. **It couldn't have been Nagi, could it ?** اتهام (accusation).

No, sorry It wasn't me It must have been somebody else.

إنكار (denial)

13. Commands

1. For commands we must use : have (got) to - must

For prohibition للحظر we use mustn't.

Study the example:

1. You **must go** to bed now.

2. You'll **have to** get up early.

3. You **mustn't** forget your ticket (= Don't forget your ticket).

Other expressions:

1. He says **we are to wait** for the manager.

2. **Do you want us to wait** here?

2. For the sake of **أجل من أجل** politeness or good relations (e.g. with employees or students) it is often preferred to give commands in the form of advice, suggestions and requests.

14. Certainty – Uncertainty التأكيد وعدم التأكيد

They can be arranged as follows :

1. **must** (= greatest certainty).
2. **might** (= greatest uncertainty).

Study the examples :

1. That **must be** the right way.
2. They **must have** taken a short cut.
3. There **has to be** another way. (there's got to).
4. This **can't be** the right way.
5. Let's ask the bus driver. He will (= **must**) know.

"must / have got to - can't - couldn't"

They express the highest degree of certainty.

Other expressions

I am sure/ certain this isn't the right way

or **Surely**, this isn't the right way.

There **will certainly** be another way.

B. Should and ought to = not so certain but probable.

لا تستعمل للتأكيد التام ولكنه محتمل.

Study the examples :

We should / ought to get there in time

أما عن الأحداث في الماضي - نقول

They should/ ought to have arrived there now

Other expressions:

We'll probably

We are likely to

It's likely that we will

get there in time

C. Can and could

للتعبير أو التساؤل عن إمكانية وقوع حدث

Study the Examples :

1. This **could be** the road to the station.
2. **Can** this really be the right **way**?

Other expressions:

1. **It's possible** that this is the way to the station.

2. **Possibly**, this is the right way.

D. **May** تعبر عن درجة في التأكد أقل ولكن محتمل الوقوع

Study the example:

1. They **may** come on the next train.

2. They **may** have missed **the train**.

Other expressions:

1. **It's possible that they** will come on the next train.

2. **Perhaps, they will** come on the next train.

E. **Might** = just possible **but very uncertain**.

Study the examples:

1. They **might come on** the next train. (**Present**)

2. They **might have missed** the road. (**Past**)
or **It's possible, (but I don't think it likely).**

1. **A. What would you say when you want to :**

1. Introduce Ali to Ahmed.

2. Greet a person whom you see for the first time.

B. Respond to the following :

1. What about going for a picnic ? (**Agree**) (**Disagree**)

2. Can I help you ? (**Agree**) (**Disagree**)

2. **A. 1.** You stopped someone in the street. You want to know the time. What would you say ?

2. You are at the airport information desk you want to ask about the arrival of a plane. **What do you say?**

3. You have just finished writing a cheque in a bank. Another customer needs to borrow your pen. **What would he say?**

B. Respond to the following :

4. Will you go with me to the cinema ? (**Disagree**)

5. Will you take this book as a present ? (**Agree**)

3. **A . What would you say when you want to :**

1. Invite someone to go with you to the cinema.

2. Ask someone if he is interested in music.

3. Ask someone if he succeeded in getting what he needed.

B. Respond to the following :

1. Would you like to come with me to see the match? (**Agree**)

2. Thank you for your help.

4.A.1. Someone has invited you to go and see a horror film. You only rarely like such thing. What would you say ?

2. Your friend Usama is talking to you.

Usama : I hear you are flying to Europe.

You :

Usama : Oh? I thought it was all fixed. (Fill)

B. Respond to the following :

1. Would you like to go water - skiing ? (Disagree)

2. Would it be possible for you to post this letter ? (Agree)

5. A. What would you say when you want to :

1. Ask someone if he agrees with your opinion in music.

2. Offer someone a new idea.

3. Offer someone to help when his car broke down.

B. Respond to the following :

1. How do you do?

2. Can I help you? (Agree-Disagree)

6.A.1. You have been invited to join a family for a trip to the seaside. You agreed. What would you say?

2. You are writing a letter to an old friend whom you haven't seen for a long time. How do you end the letter?

3. A friend of yours is going to have an operation. What will you say?

B. Respond to the following:

1. Can you book me a flight please? (Agree/Disagree)

2. Would you like an orange? (Agree/Disagree)

A. What would you say when you want to:

1. Ask someone if he is able to repair your car.

2. Ask someone to lend you his notebook.

3. Say you are unable to deal with the problem.

B. Respond to the following:

1. Shall I take your bag sir ? (Agree-Disagree)

2. Could you wait just a minute please ? (Agree)

8.A. 1. Someone has invited you to see a film. Afterwards he asks you your opinion about it. What does he say ?

2. Your holiday in Britain with your friend Magdy is just finishing. He suddenly says. "I've decided not to go back home. I'm going to search for work here. It was a surprise to you. **What would you say?**
3. A friend of yours informs you that he will get married next week. **What do you say?**

B. Respond to the following:

1. Could you post this letter for me please? **(Agree)**
2. Would you mind coming with me for a walk? **(Agree-Disagree)**

9. A. What would you say when you want to :

1. Ask someone if he knows the way to the Pyramids.
2. Ask someone to give you information about how to book a room in a hotel.
3. Say you agree with someone in his plan.

B. Respond to the following:

1. Would you like some butter? **(Agree-Disagree)**
2. Shall I open the window? **(Agree-Disagree)**

10.A. What would you say?

1. To someone who is smoking in a crowded room?
2. What would you say to somebody who is shouting while the baby is asleep?
3. What would you say to a friend who wants to borrow your dictionary?

B. Agree to the following:

1. Your friend wants you to help him with his homework.
2. Your friend wants you to give him a lift to the bank.

11. A. What would say when you want to :

1. Advise someone to give up smoking.
2. Suggest to go camping.
3. Ask for a phone number.

B. Respond to the following:

1. May I have reception please? **(Agree-Disagree)**
2. I'd like to book a room in your hotel.

12.1. At a formal dinner party. Your hostess is talking to you.

"May" "I ask you if you are fond of this country ? "

You(Fill).

2. Someone you have met at your hotel suggests that you go to the cinema together - you refuse.

He : there is a good film at Metro.

You (Fill).

3. At your school you suggest an end year party. What do you say to your colleagues?

4. Laila has a dinner at Samia's flat. She offers to help her with the wash up. **What does she say ?**

5. An old lady is trying to lift a heavy suitcase. **Offer to help her.**

13.A. What would you say when you want to :

1. Borrow a book from a friend.
2. Agree to lend someone your dictionary.
3. Ask permission to leave your work.

B. Respond to the following :

1. I wonder if you'd excuse me for a minute, please? **(Agree)**
2. Can I have some of this material? **(Agree)**

14. Ask your friend to do the following:

1. Open the window halfway.
2. Move your chair a bit.
3. Pay attention to what you say.
4. Switch off the radio as the baby is asleep.
5. Stop smoking for the place is crowded.

- 15. 1.** You are a bit tired. Ask your teacher to give you permission to leave five minutes early.

2. You are going to your friend's birthday party and you will be late. Ask your father to give you permission to be late.

3. Ask your headmaster to give you two day's off to be able to attend your cousin's wedding in Assuit.

4. You and a friend are planning a party but you want to do something unusual.

You :(Fill)

Your friend : That's a great idea.

5. You are attending a language school in London you have been asked to know someone's views about the language school in Oxford. **What would you say?**

16. A. What would you say when you want to:

1. Say you don't know the way.
2. Say you are unable to accept someone's invitation.
3. Refuse to lend someone your bicycle.

Respond to the following:

1. I wonder if I could possibly ask you to move to a table near the window ? **(Agree).**

2. Could you possibly lend me your typewriter? **(refuse)**

- 17. 1.** You are at the national circus. After the show you ask your friend his opinion. **What would you say?**

2. You want to go on a weekend camping trip with your friend.

What do you say ?

3. You are talking to another guest at a hotel with whom you are sharing a table. You ask him about the service at the hotel.

What would you say?

4. You are at the "Opera House" you ask your friend if he is interested in the show. **What would you say?**

5. You and a close colleague at work are chatting about leisure activities. Your favourite pastime is watching television. **Ask about his.**

18. A. What would you say when you want to:

1. Advise someone to walk rather than take a taxi.
2. Warn someone against the bad results of smoking.
3. Advise your friend not to be late.
4. Suggest to go for a picnic.
5. Ask someone's help in carrying a heavy basket.

- 19. 1.** Bill a friend of yours, suggests that the two of you go to a dance party. You say "I must admit I don't take any interest in dancing." **What does he say?**

2. At work you and a friend have a complex problem to solve. You say "The computer is out of order what shall we do?"

What does he say?

3. You are having dinner with a fellow guest at your hotel by the seaside you say "I did not see you at breakfast? Why was that?" **What would he say?**

4. You have been watching a T.V. programme on America's space programme with your friend Tom. "Hm ! I think the whole thing is a complete waste of time" He disagreed with you.

What did he say ?

5. You work for an engineering firm. You are talking to a friend there John. You say you will think most of us will have an electric car in ten or fifteen years time.

John : Could be, but **(Complete).**

20. A What would you say when you want to :

1. Warn your friend against bad habits.
2. Warn a child that he will get burnt if he plays with matches.
3. Advise your friend not to lose his temper.

4. Respond to the following:

1. Do you think you will go abroad this year. **(Disagree).**
2. If you like, I would do the washing up ? **(Disagree).**

21. 1. You and a friend Ted are discussing a new pay offer your for your management .

Ted : I think their offer is pretty fair.

You : Yes, but **(Complete).**

2. You are driving from Cairo to Ismailia. Got lost. Ask a policeman the way. **What do you say?**
3. Someone you have met by chance in the street wants to chat with you. You remembered you had an appointment. **What would you say ?**
4. A young man is trying to push his car. The battery is flat. You offer to help him. **What do you say ?**
5. You are in a bookshop. You want a book on the top shelf but can't reach. The assistance comes up with a ladder. **What does he say ?**

Ex. (78) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. You can't deny that his handwriting has improved. **(can't be)**

2. We mustn't disobey our teachers. (be)
3. They didn't speak a word. (Not a word)
4. The river Nile is the longest river in the world. (longer)
5. Mary is the tallest in class. (taller)
6. I don't like listening to loud music. (keen)
7. Fady felt asleep in class this morning. Surely he stayed up too late last night. (must)
8. When I was a child. I was very shy whenever a stranger came in. (used)
9. "Are you enjoying yourself? he asked me. (if)
10. Although it rained hard, the match was played. (In spite of)
11. It wasn't necessary for you to bring all this food. (have)
12. I recommend you to visit the Picasso exhibition. (worth)
13. Perhaps they're having lunch in the canteen. (might)
14. Could I make an appointment to see the doctor. (mind)
15. The leaders finally agreed about how to end war. (agreement)
16. Winter is the season. I go to Aswan in this season. (when)
17. Dr. Christian Bernard performed the first human heart transplant. (by)
18. He said he was sorry he didn't understand what he had said. (apologized)
19. He said he wouldn't take that job. (refused)
20. My father says that he isn't angry to do this kind of work. (mind)
21. My father told me it was wonderful to pass the difficult test. (congratulated)
22. I always sat at the back of the classroom, but now I prefer to sit in the front row. (used)
23. You should obey the speed limit. (better)
24. You are broke because you spent all your money foolishly. (shouldn't have)
25. The President expressed his great admiration for the new production. (admired)
26. You are cold because you didn't wear a coat. (should have)
27. Can I borrow 25 pounds from you? (lend)
28. He's borrowed more than 2000 from his parents. (owe)
29. They pay him L 200 a week. (earn)

30. He bought that jacket for L 300. **(paid)**
31. Since they were keen to learn French, they have gone to Paris. **(Due to)**
32. They will never pass the test without knowing the rules. **(unless)**
33. The man drawing the sailing boat is my cousin. **(who)**
34. Although he knows Chinese, he wasn't chosen to be ambassador in China. **(Despite)**
35. We decided not to go riding because the weather was bad. **(because of)**
36. He's well qualified for the job except for his lack of experience. **(except that)**
37. I used to live in Canada. **(anymore)**
38. Someone repaired my T.V last week. **(had)**
39. Leave early because the roads might be crowded. **(in case)**
40. Greek isn't as useful as English. **(than)**
41. He is better looking than I am but I'm much more intelligent. **(as as)**
42. I prefer living in Egypt to living in Britain. **(would rather)**
43. He isn't a very good typist. **(typing)**
44. While I was walking through the park, I heard a loud scream. **(when)**
45. He said to me, "Did you have a good day at school?" **(whether)**
46. She was not careful when she was driving, so she made an accident. **(if)**
47. I didn't have enough time, so I couldn't visit my aunt. **(if)**
48. I would rather be a child than an old man. **(prefer)**
49. It's very cold. You really should stay indoors. **(better)**
50. I'll help you with your Maths only if you help me with my English. **(provided that)**
51. I would only agree to share a room with my sister if she promised to take my things. **(as long as)**
52. I speak French well. **(knowledge)**
53. I've worked as a tourist guide for ten years. **(experience)**
54. I've travelled a lot. **(experienced)**
55. I wonder how he will react when I tell him the news. **(reaction)**

56. We sunbathed from two till four. (spent)
57. I don't want anyone to do my work for me. (myself)
58. They played football although it was raining heavily. (heavy)
59. He didn't hand his homework so he was punished. (if)
60. I prefer eating out to cooking for myself. (easier)
61. He was a strong boxer. (used)
62. No answer pleased his teacher. (whatever)
63. I like very much listening to music. (fond)
64. What do you think about electric cars? (opinion)
65. The 2000 Nobel Prize for Chemistry went to Dr. Zowail. (awarded)
66. You should turn off your mobile when you are in a bus or a train. (supposed)
67. I was born in that city. (That's)
68. Friday is the day. We go for a walk then. (when)
69. The woman's purse was stolen. She called the police (whose)
70. "Is what I heard true?" he said. (if)
71. It's vital that no one else should know about the secret. (mustn't)
72. He is free to go any place he wishes. (wherever)
73. You shouldn't eat a heavy meal and then go to bed. (better)
74. Because the traffic was heavy, we were late for the meeting. (Due to)
75. The car was expensive. We couldn't afford to buy it. (such)
76. Please be quiet. I want to hear what the teacher says. (so that)
77. According to the news report, it will rain tonight or it will rain tomorrow. (either)
78. I enjoy reading novels as well as magazines. (not only)
79. Her roommates don't know where she is. Her mother doesn't know where she is. (Neither)
80. She goes to school. She has a full time job too. (Not only)
81. Due to recent improvements in medical services, patients easily find beds in hospitals. (recently)
82. Since the weather was bad, we postponed our trip. (on account of)

83. Alaa was worried about the exam. He couldn't get to sleep.
(too)
84. Thanks to his intelligence, he could overcome his difficulties.
(intelligent)
85. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay at home from school.
(so as to)
86. I unplugged the phone. I didn't want to be interrupted while I was reading.
(so as not to)
87. Walking down the street, I ran into an old friend. (while)
88. Having seen that movie before, I didn't want to go again.
(because)
89. When I read the figures again, I found that I had made a mistake.
(On)
90. Without his help, I would have lost my life. (Hadn't it)
91. Intelligent as he was, he failed to face his problems
(Although)
92. I've never eaten such a good meal. (It's)
93. The teacher said that Osama didn't pay attention during the lesson.
(accused)
94. In spite of her beauty, she didn't attract anyone. (although)
95. Nagi : Yes, all right I won't tell anyone. (agreed)
96. She didn't work hard enough, so she lost her job.
(The reason)
97. There are no seats for tonight's performance.
(Tonight's performance)
98. She is slower and a more careful driver than I am. (drives)
99. No one in the group is younger than her. (She is)
100. Why don't we go to the new Indian restaurant? (suggested)
101. She can help me and I can help her. (We)
102. It began to rain during the picnic. (While)
103. Everyone shouted at the van driver because he didn't stop at the crossroads.
(blamed)
104. They couldn't play the match because of the weather. They plan to play it next week.
(postponed)
105. My suit needs to be cleaned before the interview. (I must)
106. Without good treatment, the patient would have died.
(Unless)

107. The cook is brilliant but he knows nothing about French foods. (as)
108. I paid a lot of money for that shirt. (cost)
109. Can't you find a sharper knife? (Is this)
110. You'd better take a sweater. It might get cold. (in case)
111. I have never been to the ballet before. (It's)
112. Janet never saves money. That's why she never has any. (If)
113. I couldn't mend the puncture in my tyre. A mechanic could. (had)
114. Bill's tooth is rotten and it's hurting him. He is going to the dentist to fill it. (have)
115. Samia felt sorry she was late for an appointment. (apologized)
116. Tom is not rich enough to do all the things he wants to do. (wishes)
117. All the shops are closed this afternoon. (None)
118. The bus was too crowded to get on. (such)
119. Mary lives in a noisy district. (wishes)
120. You never know what's on the note-board. You never look (If)
121. Tom hates the town he lives in. London is his dream. (wishes)
122. Being so selfish, she left him. (Unless)
123. No one has ever used this television. (been)
124. She knew him and he knew her. (They)
125. If I were you, I'd go to the police and tell them everything. (advised)
126. We expressed our joy when Engy passed her exams. (congratulated)
127. The customer complained that he didn't get the money back. (complained of)
128. He bought the shop. He had little money of his own. (Despite)
129. Tom was unable to travel abroad. He lost his passport. (as a result of)
130. Nagi offered his help but no one else did. (the only)
131. The captain left the ship. Everyone else had left before. (the last)

132. You forgot a map, so we lost our way. (Unless)
133. You'd better book a table. The restaurant might be full. (in case)
134. Unfortunately the plan failed. (We wish)
135. It's a pity we sold the piano. (If only)
136. I can't tolerate all that pollution. (put)
137. It's ages since Alan visited his parents. (Alan)
138. It started to rain two hours ago. (has been)
139. I'm sorry that I didn't learn to swim when I was younger. (regret)
140. In spite of his lack of experience, he got a job. (Although)
141. As Janet is a good student, she received many medals. (Being)
142. The letter was delivered although it didn't have enough postage. (despite)
143. You have to wear your seat belt. (supposed)
144. He agreed that he had committed the crime. (admitted)
145. I am eager to have a walk in the fresh air. (feel like)
146. I didn't want to laugh but I couldn't. (couldn't help)
147. It is a fact that the countryside is free from pollution. (One advantage)
148. We are to bring our own pencils to the test. (supposed)
149. I was reading a sentence when the teacher stopped me. (while)
150. It began to rain last night. It's still raining. (since)
151. They climbed the mountain although it was very high. (However)
152. He is unhappy even though he has a fortune. (Whatever)
153. Sally was very sad, but she smiled and pretended to be having a good time. (However)
154. I am not you, so I don't tell him the truth. (If)
155. I would have gone to Paris last year if I had enough money. (In case of)
156. Lamia looked sad, surly she hasn't passed her exam. (can't have)
157. Children ought to go to bed early. (better)
158. Do you want to be a travel agent? (Would)

159. I prefer looking round a museum to watching a basketball match. **(would rather)**
160. "Were you on the way home?" she said. **(wondered)**
161. Daniel can run fast and so can Engy. **(as as)**
162. Mr. Bill is driving too fast. The speed limit is 50 miles an hour. **(better)**
163. "Can you lend me some money?" she said. **(wanted me)**
164. He was not able to make money while he was abroad. **(failed)**
165. Yasser had to go home on his own. **(himself)**
166. She hated being in the house on her own. **(alone)**
167. You can't expect them to do everything on their own. **(themselves)**
168. Nearly all the seats were booked. **(most)**
169. Practising sports makes you very healthy. **(health)**
170. Jane has offered to lend you the money. **(willing)**
171. I didn't have a very good time. **(enjoy)**
172. She's learning French at home without a teacher. **(herself)**
173. She tried to commit suicide. **(herself)**
174. You shouldn't think it is your fault. **(blame)**
175. Mary is showing me some of her photographs. **(hers)**
176. I am going to see my friend. **(mine)**
177. Mary's books don't look so new as Jane's do. **(newer)**
178. Mary's eyes are blue like the sea. **(as ...as)**
179. The last time I went to Paris was in 1990. **(since)**
180. Collecting dolls from foreign countries is one of Janet's interests. **(interested)**
181. I don't mind how long it takes to answer all questions. **(You can)**
182. How long is it since they bought the house? **(When)**
183. I haven't played tennis for ages. **(It's ages)**
184. Though he has a good salary, he was unhappy in the job. **(Despite)**
185. Graham was rude to Louisa. He didn't mean it. **(Graham didn't mean)**
186. We had never stayed in a more expensive hotel like that. **(That's)**

187. Without computers, many of the miracles of our age would be impossible. **(Unless)**
188. If you eat more, you'll become fat. **(The more)**
189. He used both hands because he didn't want to drop anything. **(lest)**
190. It's Mary's job to look after the new staff. **(responsible)**
191. The accident happened because the train driver was careless. **(If)**
192. I advise you to study hard. **(better)**
193. Perhaps your teacher will punish you. **(you)**
194. Bats can fly, but they are not birds **(Although)**
195. She finds visits to the dentist very frightening. **(frightened)**
196. I'm surprised they only fired her. She deserved to be sent to prison. **(must have)**
197. It was a waste of my time making all these sandwiches. They had plenty of food there already. **(needn't have)**
198. It wasn't easy, but we saved the girl in time. **(managed)**
199. He travelled to Italy last year and didn't send letters. **(since)**
200. He refused to do the task. **(objected)**
201. The men were wearing protective clothes, so they were all quite safe. **(Hadn't it)**

Ex.(79) Choose the correct answer between brackets:

1. He often turns **(out – in – on – up)** at parties without invitation.
2. He will put his **(word – signature – say – prints)** on the contract.
3. I watched the ship until it was **(in – out – off – on)** of sight.
4. **(As – No sooner – As soon as – Soon)** he realized the truth, he informed the police.
5. Who got the **(high – higher – height – highest)** mark in class?
6. The house **(which – where – whose – who)** he lives, needs repairing.
7. He made her **(write – to write – wrote – writing)** the report four times.
8. Could you look **(in – at – after – for)** the kids while I go shopping?
9. I wish I **(come – can come – came – could come)** a bit later tomorrow.

10. He won't catch the train if he (**didn't pack – won't pack – wouldn't pack – does not pack**) soon.
11. He'll explain the point again, (**won't he – would he – will he – wouldn't he**)?
12. He has always been a hard worker and still (**has – was – is – has been**).
13. They will paint the house (**in – for – at – since**) three days.
14. I tried to telephone you yesterday, but you weren't (**off – in – on – out**).
15. They are running out of food. They (**haven't much – have much – have none – have a lot**) left.
16. He arrived late at the station, so he (**caught – won – lost – missed**) the train.
17. After trying several times, I (**succeeded – could – would – managed**) to see him.
18. He offered to (**help – pay – borrow – lend**) her as the suitcase was too heavy for her to carry.
19. He was (**charged – changed – accused – convicted**) with murder.
20. Her mother made her (**practised – practise – playing – practising**) the piano all afternoon.
21. You (**must – mustn't – can't – needn't**) make noise, the baby is asleep.
22. As he is a policeman, he is (**used – been used – use – using**) to keeping away all night.
23. I crossed the street to avoid (**speak – spoke – speaking – to speak**) to that terrible man.
24. I really am angry you are so late, you (**had to – would – ought to – should to**) have telephoned.
25. All day long he worked in the fields, so in the evening he (**fell – went – turned – grew**) asleep before he finished his supper.
26. The firemen worked very hard to put (**on – in – out – off**) the fire.
27. I was unable to eat the food as it was (**too – much – so – very**) salty.
28. I was afraid (**to – in – of – at**) mentioning the news to him.
29. She has been in Aswan (**ago – from – for – since**) nine years.
30. When the table was (**lain – lied – loaded – laid**), the mother called her children.

31. He has plenty of money. He (**needn't – mustn't – shouldn't – couldn't**) earn his living.
32. Would you mind my (**open – opened – to open – opening**) the window?
33. Do you know (**who – which – whom – whose**) was responsible for the damage?
34. He is (**too – so – very – enough**) deaf to hear what we say.
35. The (**clerk – official – officer – shop assistant**) who served me in that store was very helpful.
36. I'm coming in your car, (**don't I – aren't I – shan't I – isn't I**)?
37. Adel is (**more – the more – most – the most**) interesting painter I have ever known.
38. I am very tired because I had hardly (**any – enough – some – much**) sleep last night.
39. The examination will end in a few (**days' – dates – day's – days**) time.
40. We (**did – had – gave – took**) a short break over week end between lessons.
41. Who (**invented – discovered – planned – found**) the television?
42. This is the writer (**who – which – whom – whose**) book was made into a film?
43. Here take it. I have (**yet – still – soon – already**) finished it.
44. (**Do – Would – Will – Should**) you like me to buy you a copy for your birthday?
45. Maha is three years old. She is (**too – so – very – enough**) young to go out alone.
46. A: "I love reading." B: (**I do so – so I am – so I do – so do I**).
47. He heard the news. The news (**are – was – with – were**) bad.
48. Ali is putting on his coat. Laila "If you (**going – went – have gone – are going**) out, please buy me the newspaper.
49. I hate (**borrow – borrowed – to borrow – borrowing**) money
50. I have not seen my uncle (**when – for – before – since**) I was a child.
51. He has a car so he (**needn't – wouldn't – mustn't – shouldn't**) take a bus.
52. Everyone burst out laughing. There was a lot of (**laugh – laughed – laughs – laughter**).
53. The next race will take (**part – off – away – place**) in a year's time.

54. My brother (**used to – is using – was using – was used to**) smoke a great deal.
55. It's a cheerful occasion. It's a cheerful (**event – condition – situation – accident**).
56. There's (**the fear – fear – a fear – fearful**) that he may not be alive.
57. It was not difficult to move into my new house, as I did not have (**many – more – much – several**) furniture.
58. The bush area is full of lions, some of them are (**men eater – men eaters – man eaters – men eating**).
59. The sooner you do this work, (**the good – the better – the best – the worse**) for you.
60. In the mile race, the winner was Nagi (**who – whom – which – whose**) broke the school record for the distance.
61. The more money you earn, (**the high – the highest – the higher – highest**) the percentage we pay in taxes.
62. If I had left my house earlier. I should (**have caught – catch – caught – be catching**) the train.
63. I didn't like the man, he made me (**to feel – felt – feel – feeling**) a fool.
64. I stood on the platform watching a train (**comes – coming – to come – came**) in.
65. Need he go so soon? Yes, he (**needs – must – may – would**) if he wants to get home in time.
66. If Mary were here, she (**had shown – would show – will show – would have shown**) you how to cook.
67. I know where the Opera House was, so I (**needn't wait – didn't need to wait – didn't need waiting – mustn't need to wait**) for a guide to take me there.
68. We have been waiting for a bus (**since – for – from – with in**) the past thirty minutes.
69. They (**made – had – did – gave**) a dreadful fight when they got home.
70. If Ihab had ever been told the result, he wouldn't have been happy. From the sentence above we know that (**Ihab didn't know the result- Ihab was not happy about the result – Ihab was happy when he heard about the result – Ihab was sad about the result**).
71. Though our train was late, we got (**to home – home – for home – at home**) in time for dinner.

72. The house (**which – when – where – in where**) the murder was committed is being watched by detectives.
73. "Must you leave at once?" No, I (**mustn't – needn't – hadn't – haven't**), I can stay for another half hour if you like.
74. He's bought a very good-looking dog, (**doesn't he – wasn't he – hasn't he – is he**)?
75. Try to reduce your expenses. (**cut out – cut short – cut up – cut down**).
76. The nearest town is (**a days' journey – a day journey – a day's journey – a journey of a day**).
77. "How many matches have you got left?" Only (**a little – little – a few – small**).
78. After receiving (**much information – any information – some information – little information**) about the accident, the police acted properly.
79. I can't imagine myself (**to stand – stand – to have stood – standing**) in the hot sun the whole day long.
80. Mary expects (**to see – to have seen – seeing – to seeing**) the work done when she comes back.
81. The father of many children (**must – has – should – are**) to work hard to earn his living.
82. Let's go as soon as Nagi(**is coming – came – comes – will come**)
83. Ayman will be ready in a minute. He (**is having – had – could have – would have had**) a bath.
84. (**By worrying – Worrying – Worry – Through worrying**) much, made him irritable.
85. Give her the telephone number (**unless – perhaps – in case – whether**) she gets lost.
86. The convict denied (**having – to have – had – of having**) any knowledge of the stolen money.
87. The weak often (**dies – die – died – are dying**) young.
88. "You have never been honest", (**are – do – have – weren't**) you
89. When Mary and I saw the snake, she screamed, I couldn't kill it, neither could she. From this sentence we know that (**I was more cowardly than Mary – one of us tried to kill the snake, but failed – Mary couldn't kill the snake and I couldn't either – both killed the snake**).
90. John doesn't intend to go to the party, and (**no – so – neither – either**) do I.

91. Will you please stop interfering (**with – into – on – against**) my work.
92. That couldn't be Osama you saw me with last night. I haven't seen him (**for – since – from – during**) ages.
93. I haven't seen him since he (**had got married – has got married – got married – got marrying**).
94. Nagi promised to attend to his father who was ill (**look at – look after – look on – look for**).
95. We (**were going – are going – used to go – going**) to Ras El Bar in summer. Now we go to Alexandria.
96. The producer asked the actors to put (**off – down – on – in**) their costumes and be ready to go on the stage.
97. The teacher wouldn't even look (**on – for – at – upon**) my work, he says my handwriting is shocking.
98. You are advised to drink (**some – much – many – plenty**) fresh water to keep healthy.
99. I'm going to (**make–take–have–do**) my dress dry cleaned.
100. You didn't see (**someone – everyone – anyone – none**) in the room at all. It was completely empty.
101. Our cat and dog are always fighting (**themselves – each other – the others – both**).
102. Each of us (**was – love – were – has**) been carrying an umbrella.
103. The bill came over a thousand dollars (**at all – in all – to all – of all**).
104. I can't resist (**to wear – wore – wearing – to wearing**) blue.
105. (**Would I have been – Had I been – Should I be – I had been**) wise, I would have taken a later plane.
106. The boy was sorry and begged his father (**if he would forgive – to forgive – for forgiving – be forgiven**) him.
107. (**No – Never – None – Not**) amount of money can buy happiness.
108. I can't help laughing at him. from this sentence we know (**I can't laugh at him–I'm laughing because it is impossible not to–I enjoy laughing at him – I managed to laugh at him**).
109. You had better (**to do – doing – have done – do**) your work if you want to pass.
110. We must hurry now, (**mustn't – needn't – should – aren't**) we?

111. You needn't rush through your food, (**needn't – would – need – should**) you?
112. That is the writer (**who her books – who's books – whose books – his books**) have been such a success.
113. I forgot to take my umbrella (**and so – and as a result – because – unless**) I got wet.
114. The (**weight – density – number – thickness**) of population in cities makes life difficult.
115. Because he was worried about his health, he decided to (**cut out–break down–cut down– knock down**) smoking.
116. (**Lately – Later – Latter – Late**), scientists have observed increased pollution in the water supply.
117. If my dearest friend is in trouble, I should help him (**should – shall – shouldn't – shan't**) I ?
118. We (**haven't – haven't had – hadn't had – hadn't**) any rain for the last month.
119. When she visited us, we asked her if she (**was wanting – will want – wanted – wants**) tea or coffee for breakfast.
120. He asked me why I (**do not visit – have not been visiting – had not visited – wasn't visiting**) him before.
121. The students wished they (**had been invited–weren't inviting–could be invited–have been invited**)to the party.
122. Everyone seems to know Adel Imam, (**don't they – didn't they – doesn't they – does they**)?
123. Samy (**mustn't work – needn't have worked – needn't work – mustn't have worked**) on week-ends, he does it because he enjoys it.
124. (**Could – Were – Should – Might**) he to look for us, he would not be able to find us.
125. It is high time you (**changed – must change – have changed – should change**) your childish ways.
126. What a busy day it's been, (**wasn't it – isn't it – hasn't it – doesn't it**) ?
127. It is getting late. You (**had better go – would rather go – have better go – better go**).
128. Hany spends money(**as–as if–like–just**)it grows on trees.
129. The materials in the first store we went to are superior (**than – beyond – to – over**) these.

130. My brother has gone to the city to look for (**work – job – some work – working**).
131. John may not pass the examination, but he will do (**his possible best – his best – the best possible – best**).
132. He was staring (**hard – hardly – hardening – hardy**) at the enemy.
133. They (**bad – badly – great – ever**) misunderstood what he had said.
134. He gave me two oranges but (**all – both – some – either**) were bad.
135. When I asked him his name, he refused to tell me (**whom – who – which – whose**) he was.
136. I don't know how you came to that conclusion. Ihab, but you have hit the nail on the head. The speaker of this sentence thinks Ihab is (**close to the truth – a good but uneducated thinker – absolutely right – far from right**).
137. On doctors orders the patient cut out smoking (**stopped – omitted – cancelled – postponed**).
138. You won't come in till I (**had seen – shall see – have to see – see – saw**) your ticket.
139. This jacket doesn't fit properly. It's far (**too small – small – enough – so small – very small**) for me.
140. If you (**will leave – have left – leave – left**) this job before next year, your will annoy your father.
141. There's still (**hope – a hope – hoping – hopeful**) that he may live.
142. The netball match (**had begun – was to begin – will begin – began**) before the principal arrives.
143. We (**made – went – had – did**) for a swim every morning before breakfast.
144. He is the man (**whom I am knowing trustworthy – who I know is trustworthy – who I know him to be trustworthy – is trustworthy**).
145. On Tuesday we played hockey and (**on next day – the next day – the day next – that day**) we played football.
146. The bigger the memory is, the (**more – most – much – many**) useful the computer is.
147. The news that the thief killed all his children sounded too fantastic to be believed. This means that the news was (**actually true – partially true – very strange and difficult to believe – true and easy to believe**).

148. You can enjoy yourself in a big city (**even when – so far – provided that – unless**) you have enough money.
149. Reading (**between – along – across – through**) the lines of her letter, I'm sure Janet is homesick.
150. If only my father could win some money? Ashraf exclaimed. From this sentence we know that Ashraf (**is hoping his father will win some money – expects his father and no one else to win money – is certain that his father is able to win some money – believes his father will win**).
151. You had better stop (**to be – being – been – having been**) late from school.
152. Whenever the baby cried, the mother (**sighs – sighed – will sigh – could sigh**).
153. Have you any objection (**being asked – to asking – to ask – asking**) him to lunch?
154. The Mansons have moved. They don't live here (**anymore – no longer – still – yet**).
155. Somebody told me that story, I've forgotten (**whom – who – whose – which**) ?
156. Don't make any noise, (**will – do – won't – don't**) you.
157. Do you often dine with the girls at the restaurant? No, I (**scarcely ever – scarcely never – scarcely seldom – scarcely not**) do.
158. I avoided (**mentioning – mention – to mention – mentioned**) the subject to him.
159. They had (**feeling – the feeling – a feeling – any feeling**) that he was still alive.
160. No sooner had the bell rung (**when – than – as – that**) the boys assembled.
161. Although he is slow (**he is very accurate – he is not accurate – therefore he is very accurate – but he is very accurate**).
162. He had a good sleep after he (**has – had – has had – had had**) a heavy lunch.
163. The tooth was so bad that he (**has to have – had to have – has had – must have**) it taken out.
164. As soon as she saw the girls, she asked them what they (**had been doing – have been doing – have done – are doing**)

165. You needn't **(have told – tell – told – be telling)** a lie when the headmaster asked for your fees.
166. I saw the accused **(ran – having run – run – is running)** away from the house.
167. You **(would have to pay – would have had to pay – would pay – will have to pay)** if your friend hadn't had any money.
168. We were all astonished when we saw the house **(where – which – that – when)** he had lived.
169. The antiquities of Egypt **(over which – about which – through whom – of which)** such a lot has been written, should never be lost.
170. Both teachers and pupils would **(very much – almost – very well – mostly)** like to have a holiday today.
171. As the senior prefect, he ought to have known better, **(should be – ought he – oughtn't he – wouldn't he) ?**
172. This is something you are not certain about **(isn't it – aren't it – is it – are you) ?**
173. The minister **(as well as us – as well as us all – as well as all of us – and we all)** was present at the ceremony.
174. The driver went slowly **(not to overturn – that he may not overturn – so as not to overturn – so as to overturn)** the load.
175. My wife prefers playing the piano **(to – than – from – rather)** listening to music.
176. The longer we do nothing, the **(much – many – more – most)** serious the problem becomes.
177. By this time next year, Wail **(should have - had – will have – would have)** completed his degree course at Cambridge University.
178. **(Having living – Having to live – To have lived – To have live)** on a small salary when one has a large family is not easy.
179. Those interested in the post of Assistant Manager are requested to apply **(as persons – in person – by person – with person).**
180. When he explained the conditions, he asked me **(what would I do – what I would do – I would do what – what will I do).**
181. **(In – To – With – For)** her opinion, he was thoroughly unfit for the job.

182. **(In case of – Although – Unless – In spite of)** having no talents, the man became a popular TV. personality.
183. We got up at four in the morning. We had to make a very **(new – early – bright – running)** start.
184. It wasn't easy to put **(up with – away with – on with – off with)** her bad temper.
185. This time next year, you **(would learn – will learn – will have learned – would have learned)** a lot of English.
186. He's very pleased **(at – with – on – by)** his new secretary.
187. Her mother was very unjust **(at – for – to – with)** the youngest daughter.
188. **(Only – Just – Hardly – Yet)** had he put down the receiver when the phone rang again.
189. They are said **(having been – to be – been – have been)** very ill.
190. She can't stand **(to listen – listening – listen – to be listening)** to music like that.
191. No matter **(how difficult does it seem – however seems difficult – how difficult it seems – however it seems difficult)**, you must keep trying.
192. This is her book. **(Moreover – Indeed – However – Also)** you may borrow it.
193. He is rather lazy. **(Indeed – Nevertheless – Moreover – In spite)** he always passes his exam.
194. She was ill. **(However – Yet – Nevertheless – Consequently)** she stayed at home.
195. You can hardly believe he's gone, **(do you -believe you – can you – isn't it) ?**
196. There was a time when he **(speaking – used to speak – is speaking – would have spoken)** French frequently.
197. Smoking is a very bad habit which many people find difficult to **(break – beat – breath – begins).**
198. He is an **(optimistic – anxious – experienced – active)** person. He looks forward to winning the prize.
199. According to the weather **(forecast – future – expectancy – experience)** they still expect a rise in temperature.
200. He was **(prepared – promoted – proved – produced)** for a job of a manager in another branch.

Advanced Exercises

Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- Take some money, you will need it. (case)
- 2- The car was very expensive, he couldn't afford it. (such)
- 3- The man with the black umbrella is Mr. Jones. (carrying)
- 4- They locked the car. They were afraid someone might steal it. (fear)
- 5- There was thick fog, so the plane couldn't take off. (due)
- 6- Operating a computer is difficult. (It's)
- 7- The examination lasted three hours. (hour)
- 8- Would you like to come to the cinema with me? (coming)
- 9- If he hadn't reacted so quickly, we would have been killed. (reaction)
- 10- Now that I wear contact lenses, the optician tests my eyes every three months. (have)
- 11- It's possible to obtain tickets from most music stores. (obtained)
- 12- The headmaster insisted that all the pupils wear school uniform. (made)
- 13- Someone should have already made all the arrangements for the business meeting. (been)
- 14- Peter had fed the dog by the time Julie came back. (been)
- 15- It is said that this diet is rich in vitamins. (be)
- 16- Her dress needs shortening before the wedding. (shortened)
- 17- I'm sure he wasn't lying when he told us the news. (can't)
- 18- If you let me know in time, I'll be able to book tickets. (long)
- 19- Although he is inexperienced, he always puts forward good ideas. (lack)
- 20- The excursion was so relaxing that we felt refreshed afterwards. (such)
- 21- Bad behaviour in the classroom is something I will not tolerant. (put)

- 22- I finished the book in two days. (took)
- 23- Shall we spend the day on the beach? (spending)
- 24- Your hair needs cutting. (have)
- 25- She has never been so insulted before. (Never before)
- 26- "You've caused a lot of pain to my family." She said to him. (of)
- 27- Simon hasn't been to New York for two years. (last)
- 28- They took a taxi because they didn't want to be late. (not to)
- 29- I paid £300 for the tape recorder. (me)
- 30- They asked whose fault the breakage was. (blame)
- 31- Tom can run faster than Dan. (runner)
- 32- We were so shocked by the news that we didn't know what to say. (shocking)
- 33- It was careless of him to leave the oven on. (should)
- 34- Although he was tall, he couldn't reach the shelf. (Despite)
- 35- Juli's stories amused everybody last night. (found)
- 36- "You'd better think carefully before you make a decision" he said (advised)
- 37- "You would have enjoyed the film but you didn't see it." She said. (if)
- 38- It was unwise of him to believe the weather forecast. (should)
- 39- He would never have bought the car without the generous discount. (Unless)
- 40- She's a talented dancer and a good singer as well. (Not only)
- 41- I haven't seen better service anywhere. (Nowhere else)
- 42- You must not open this door under any circumstances. (Under no)
- 43- He'd never seen such a professional performance before. (Never before)
- 44- As soon as he had eaten, he jumped up and began to dance. (No sooner)
- 45- I won't lend Joe money on any account. (On no)

- 46- It was the first time I had visited London. **(Never before)**
- 47- It's not necessary to come to work on Sundays. **(needn't)**
- 48- It's the first time they have seen snow. **(Never)**
- 49- If she doesn't follow a stricter diet, she won't lose weight.
(unless)
- 50- I wouldn't have succeeded if my parents hadn't encouraged me. **(But for)**
- 51- Julie can get a puppy only if she promises to take care of it.
(long)
- 52- It would be foolish of him not to accept the offer. **(if)**
- 53- If you don't speak clearly, the audience won't understand you.
(or else)
- 54- Fortunately, they were wearing seat belts, so nobody was seriously injured. **(unless)**
- 55- I advise you to see the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse. **(better)**
- 56- Suzan doesn't like watching TV in the evenings, she'd rather read magazines. **(prefer)**
- 57- We'd prefer to go shopping rather than stay at home.
('d rather)
- 58- I wouldn't mind contacting her but I don't have her phone number. **(if)**
- 59- You are all welcome to have some more cake. **(Help)**
- 60- The mechanic made a careful inspection of the car to see what was wrong with it. **(inspected)**
- 61- Sally regrets not having entered the competition. **(wishes)**
- 62- Can you tell me Nora's address? **(lives)**
- 63- What is the distance from the village to the beach? **(How)**
- 64- Jane, what's your favourite colour? **(which)**
- 65- I finished reading the book and then I went to bed. **(until)**
- 66- I spoke to a very helpful assistant manager last week. **(who)**
- 67- We'll leave any time you're ready. **(whenever)**

- 68- We've interviewed all the candidates but we haven't found anyone suitable for the job. **(none)**
- 69- During a walk in the forest, Fady was stung by a bee. **(while)**
- 70- You know, I felt disappointed but I didn't give up trying. **(despite)**
- 71- She is very talented but she doesn't play the piano professionally. **(Talented)**
- 72- She was heavily dressed so as not to catch a cold. **(fear)**
- 73- Despite the technical problems, the train left on time. **(Although)**
- 74- The committee has set up a charity to raise funds for the refugees. **(aim)**
- 75- The subway was flooded because it was raining heavily in the city centre. **(due)**
- 76- Magdy was the only person who didn't agree with the proposal. **(except)**
- 77- He spent all his money on clothes even though his parents had advised him not to. **(regardless)**
- 78- He really wants to buy a car. **(keen)**
- 79- Do you know that a lot of rice is consumed in China? **(Chinese)**
- 80- I'm really disappointed that he didn't win the race. **(pity)**
- 81- You must be experienced in order to get the job. **(have)**
- 82- Although she acts very well, she has never had a leading role. **(good)**
- 83- How many suitcases do you have? **(How much)**
- 84- Ayman likes playing football more than any other game. **(favourite)**
- 85- In some countries the ox is used for pulling vehicles or carrying things. **(are)**
- 86- She doesn't know a lot about astronomy. **(knowledge)**
- 87- Al-Moswar is published every week. **(magazine)**

- 88- You need to be fluent in two foreign languages in order to get the job. (speak)
- 89- None of my colleagues are more hardworking than Nagi. (most)
- 90- Engy's briefcase is similar to yours. (same)
- 91- I love eating fruit, mostly peaches. (particular)
- 92- You should not only give up smoking but also follow a healthier diet. (addition)
- 93- The Mayor didn't comment on the new traffic regulations. (concerning)
- 94- I had to repeat the exam because I failed it. (consequently)
- 95- You know, after painting the flat, it looked new. (been)
- 96- The children's performance at the concert was very impressive. (audience)
- 97- Unfortunately, I watched TV the whole afternoon and I didn't manage to finish my homework. (spent)
- 98- He spoke so fast that we couldn't understand what he was saying. (too)
- 99- Julie had just arrived when the lights went out. (sooner)
- 100- The waitress told me that the restaurant was about to close and I had scarcely started to eat. (Hardly)
- 101- Mum, this food is really delicious. (What)
- 102- Why did they cancel their trip to Cyprus? (was)
- 103- I haven't experienced worse service anywhere. (Nowhere)
- 104- He bought some more coffee so that he wouldn't run out at the weekend. (case)
- 105- You know, although she was angry, she managed to speak calmly. (spite)
- 106- Jake bought all the necessary equipment and then went camping with his friends. (until)
- 107- "Who did you go on holiday with, Usama?" asked Janette. (gone)

- 108- She had just left when her mother called. (**Hardly**)
- 109- Sarah, what is it that makes you dislike him so much? (**why**)
- 110- The students are anxious to get the results of the test.
(**forward**)
- 111- Someone stole the man's car and he has gone to the police station.
(**The man**)
- 112- We must not allow the fire to spread to the village.
(**prevent**)
- 113- He doesn't know anything about what's going on.
(**unaware**)
- 114- As he studied more, the less difficult it was for him to solve the math's problems. (**easier**)
- 115- Mr. Smith is the owner of this house. (**belongs**)
- 116- He was too scared to enter the haunted house. (**bold**)
- 117- Hany finished his homework before the film started.
(**by the time**)
- 118- He expected people to have shown him more respect.
(**been**)
- 119- She hates people keeping her waiting. (**kept**)
- 120- Someone ought to have told us about this. (**been**)
- 121- They can't stand people criticizing them. (**criticized**)
- 122- Nader regrets not having accepted the job he was offered.
(**wishes**)
- 123- I have packed everything except my camera. (**only**)
- 124- You'll have to walk a mile to get to the station for her.
(**walk**)
- 125- He is going on holiday for a month at the end of the year.
(**a**)
- 126- I don't mind being alone at weekends. (**own**)
- 127- Let's go to some other place to do our shopping. (**else**)
- 128- What do you think of my new shoes? (**opinion**)
- 129- The local bakery is making their wedding cake. (**are**)

- 130- It wasn't necessary to buy me such an expensive present.
(bought)
- 131- I don't feel like going to the cinema tonight. (rather)
- 132- Their car broke down, so they missed the concert. (if)
- 133- This is the worst book I have ever heard. (than)
- 134- They don't live as far away as I thought. (than)
- 135- He prefers to live alone rather than share a flat. (his)
- 136- We can go to the shops any time that suits you.
(whenever)
- 137- "Why don't we invite Laila for dinner?" he said (inviting)
- 138- I'm sure the decision was difficult to accept. (been)
- 139- We bought more food than we really needed. (have)
- 140- James travelled round Europe all winter. (spent)
- 141- The person found guilty of murder was sent to prison.
(who)
- 142- The hotel in which we spent our summer holiday has been
closed down. (where)
- 143- I'm sure he wasn't serious when he said he'd resign. (can't)
- 144- Simon has done very little work to do. (hardly)
- 145- "Honestly I didn't steal the chocolate." The boy said
. (stealing)
- 146- In spite of the restaurant being expensive, the food tasted
terrible. (Even though)
- 147- It sounds easy but it's really rather difficult. (as)
- 148- She was tired. She felt like she had run a mile, but she
hadn't actually. (as if)
- 149- He isn't a millionaire. He spends a lot of money.
(as though)
- 150- I'm sure it wasn't Suzan that broke the vase. (can't)
- 151- The lady in the pink dress is my aunt. (wearing)
- 152- We stopped at the service station otherwise, we would have
run out of petrol. (if)

- 153- Tim couldn't have found that treasure without the map.
(unless)
- 154- It's a pity I didn't read that book. (wish)
- 155- Engy would have lent you the money but you didn't ask her.
(asked)
- 156- She wasn't old enough, or experienced enough to get the
job. (Neither)
- 157- Helen regretted selling her grandfather's house. (wished)
- 158- Women are said to be safer drivers than men. (drive)
- 159- John is in the habit of getting up early everyday. (used)
- 160- We haven't told anyone about our decision yet. (No one)
- 161- A plumber is repairing my dishwasher this afternoon.
(repaired)
- 162- Adel hasn't visited the dentist since last year. (checked)
- 163- The moment she reached the staircase, she hears a strange
noise. (just after)
- 164- I didn't have much money left, so I didn't buy any souvenirs.
(hardly)
- 165- You are always blaming me for things that go wrong.
(Whenever anything)
- 166- You don't do any exercise and that's why you put on weight.
(if)
- 167- It's true that John doesn't appreciate good music and nor
does Hady. (appreciates)
- 168- I hope you have fun at the party. (yourself)
- 169- They returned home. They realized that their house had
been burgled. (No sooner)
- 170- Julie opened the door. The bird flew out of the cage.
(hardly)
- 171- He didn't have any qualifications, and as a result, he didn't
get job. (because)
- 172- It wasn't necessary for Iman to do the ironing, but she did.
(have)

- 173- It wasn't necessary for me to go to work but I did. (**needn't**)
- 174- If you go near the house, the dog will chase you. (**else**)
- 175- I don't think it's a good idea to go to the party. (**were**)
- 176- I want to go on holiday but I haven't got enough money.
(**wish**)
- 177- You shouldn't borrow any money you won't be able to pay it
back. (**better**)
- 178- Magda read the paper during breakfast. (**while**)
- 179- It isn't necessary for you to write the instructions down.
(**have**)
- 180- Edfu is the city he lived in until he was 18. (**where**)
- 181- Talking during the exam is not allowed. (**No one**)
- 182- I want to go to Samir's party, but I'm too ill. (**wish**)
- 183- Fady has got the same number of CDs as Nagi. (**many**)
- 184- Could you give me a lift to the office, please? (**mind**)
- 185- She had difficulty reading his handwriting. (**difficult**)
- 186- It was the first time she had driven a car. (**never**)
- 187- Salwa doesn't like people to ask her about her work. (**be**)
- 188- "Would you like to come to dinner on Friday?" they said to
us. (**invited**)
- 189- "I've got the fastest car of all my friends." Daniel said.
(**boasted**)
- 190- Don't open the door on any account while I'm out.
(**On no account**)
- 191- I had never seen such a fierce dog before. (**Never before**)
- 192- It rained heavily all day, so they didn't go out. (**But for**)
- 193- Mary regrets not studying hard for her exams. (**wishes**)
- 194- If you don't stop being naughty, I will tell the headmaster.
(**else**)
- 195- "What a fantastic view!" they said. (**exclaimed**)
- 196- The only one he didn't send invitation to was Nadia.
(**everyone**)

137/- It takes me an hour to drive from my house to the airport.
(It is)

198- I haven't seen such beautiful mountains anywhere else.
(Nowhere)

199- "I'm the prettiest girl at the party." Said Alia. (boasted)

200- Taking photographs inside the museum is strictly prohibited.
(not)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d and

1- The problem of pollution worse these days.

a) will get b) got c) is getting d) was getting

2- the housework. Maggie sat down to rest.

a) Doing b) Having done

c) Done d) Has done

3- some spare time, Tom went for a walk.

a) Having b) Have c) Has d) To have

4- It's no use the door. It's locked.

a) pushing b) push c) to push d) to pushing

5- We expect everyone to the meeting.

a) to come b) come c) to coming d) coming

6- She was lying on the sofa about the exam.

a) think b) to think c) to thinking d) thinking

7- This time next month. I in a new house.

a) will live b) will be living

c) am living d) will have lived

8- The match at two o'clock tomorrow afternoon.

a) starts b) start c) is starting d) starting

9- Julie is starting a new job tomorrow. She forward to it.

a) looks b) looking c) look d) is looking

10- They were happy to hear they a prize.

a) had won b) were winning c) have won d) win

11- The boys avoided through the dark forest.

a) to walk b) walking c) walk d) to walking

12- Look at the sunshine, it a beautiful day.

a) is being b) is going to be c) be d) being

- 13- "Where have you been? I haven't seen you for a while" "Oh, I very hard recently."
- a) am working b) have been working
c) was working d) will be working
- 14- "Did you watch the late film on TV last night?" "Yes, but I it twice before."
- a) already saw b) was already seeing
c) was seeing already d) had already seen
- 15- Jane works very hard Kate is lazy.
- a) whereas b) despite c) though d) in spite
- 16- I you, I would look for a new job.
- a) Would b) Were c) Should d) Had
- 17- "Suppose you some money, what would you do with it?" "I'd probably go on holiday".
- a) win b) will win c) won d) had won
- 18- "Can I go out tonight, mum?" "I'd rather you at home and did your homework."
- a) will stay b) stayed c) stay d) had stayed
- 19- "I've just passed my driving test." "Congratulations. I wish I a car."
- a) will drive b) can drive c) drive d) could drive
- 20- We get up early this morning, so we slept until ten o'clock.
- a) needn't b) didn't need to c) mustn't d) couldn't
- 21- it was raining, he took his umbrella with him.
- a) Due to b) Because of c) Since d) Though
- 22- ill, Samia didn't go to work yesterday.
- a) Feeling b) Feel c) To feel d) To have felt
- 23- you give me a lift to the supermarket please?
- a) Ought b) Should c) Would d) Do
- 24- We had started the journey than we got a flat tyre.
- a) the moment that b) no sooner
c) whenever d) hardly
- 25- Who in my desk? Things have been moved.
- a) look b) looks
c) looking d) has been looking
- 26- I remember the time I fell and broke my leg.
- a) where b) when c) which d) why

- 27- The reasonhe is happy is that he has just passed his exams.
 a) where b) when c) that d) why
- 28- "Did you make dinner last night?" "No, by the time I got home. Mary it?"
 a) had already made b) already made
 c) has already made d) already has made
- 29- I'll take my umbrella it rains later today.
 a) so that b) in case c) in order to d) due to
- 30- The office I work is very large.
 a) which b) what c) where d) when
- 31- They for an hour now, so they're tired.
 a) exercise b) have been exercising
 c) are exercising d) were exercising
- 32- This time next week I on a sandy beach.
 a) will be lying b) will lie
 c) am lying d) will have lied
- 33- We the lock fixed before we went on holiday.
 a) have had b) are having
 c) had had d) will be having
- 34- The girl at that desk is my best friend.
 a) sits b) to sit c) sat d) sitting
- 35- That's the boy father is my teacher.
 a) whose b) who's c) who d) that
- 36- I think I my hair cut next Saturday.
 a) have b) have had c) will have d) had
- 37- "Where is Dad?" "He's in the garden some apples from the tree."
 a) pick b) picking c) to pick d) picked
- 38- "They have finished building the new theatre." "I know. It by the mayor next month."
 a) is opened b) opened c) will be opened d) is being
- 39- "I finish that computer game yesterday." "Well done, it's really a difficult game."
 a) can b) could c) would d) was able to

- 40- "Have you found your keys yet?" "No, I've looked but I can't find them."
- a) everywhere b) everything
c) everybody d) anywhere
- 41- "The children must have been hungry" "I know. They ate on their plates."
- a) everywhere b) everything c) anything d) something
- 42- "Why didn't you go to the party?" "Because of my friends was invited."
- a) none b) both c) either d) no
- 43- "Have you got any brothers?" "I've got two. of them are older than me."
- a) Either b) Both c) All d) None
- 44- "Mum, did you make a chocolate cake today?" "Well, I made two cakes, but of them was chocolate."
- a) either b) all c) both d) neither
- 45- I got home, the children were already asleep.
- a) By the time b) Until c) By d) Whenever
- 46- "I cut my hair myself." "Really? How brave! I by a hairdresser."
- a) cut mine b) have mine cut
c) am cutting mine d) mine is cut
- 47- Hang the picture on the wall the fire place.
- a) above b) under c) between d) at
- 48- sugar shall I add to the cake mixture?
- a) How often b) How much
c) How many d) How heavy
- 49- John fell his bicycle and hurt his knees.
- a) down b) around c) about d) off
- 50- The sea is in this area.
- a) quite a clean b) quite clean
c) clean quite d) a quite clean
- 51- It's getting colder. I think it's going to snow.
- a) coldest b) cold and c) colder and d) coldest and
- 52- He acts he were my friend, but he isn't.
- a) as though b) though c) as d) like

53- "Did you watch the film yesterday?" "No, it by the time we got home."

- a) finished b) has finished
c) was finishing d) had finished

54- "Engy looks different now, doesn't she?" "Yes, she to have long dark hair, didn't she?"

- a) is used b) used c) is using d) is used to

55- "Are you tired?" "No, I to walking long distances."

- a) got used b) used c) am used to d) am using

56- Janet had trouble with her job at first." "Yes, she to working on her own."

- a) used b) got used c) was used d) wasn't used

57- "Why are you so tired?" "Because I to getting up early in the morning."

- a) am used b) am not used c) didn't use d) used

58- "Did you find your degree course difficult?" "Yes, but I soon to it."

- a) got used b) used c) was used d) be used

59- She hadn't finished the washing up when the guests arrived.

- a) yet b) just c) before d) still

60- I fell asleep I closed my eyes.

- a) just b) as soon as c) already d) still

61- "I haven't seen Mark for weeks." "Well, I him this afternoon.. why don't you come along?"

- a) have met b) am meeting
c) shall have met d) meet

62- "Laila doesn't study enough." "I know. I'm afraid she her exam."

- a) won't pass b) won't be passing
c) won't have passed d) isn't passing

63- "Whose is this earring?" "I don't know. I found it when I the house."

- a) have cleaned b) had cleaned
c) was cleaning d) cleaned

75- did Suzan leave home?

a) How long

b) How long ago

c) How much

d) How many

76- She prefers trousers to skirts.

a) wearing b) wear

c) to wear

d) to wearing

77- "How long Tony?" "Since we were children."

a) did you know

b) do you know

c) had you known

d) have you known

78- Nahed by the time I get home tonight.

a) is leaving

b) will have left

c) will leave

d) will be leaving

79- Hanaa all her money by the time the shops closed.

a) had spent

b) was spending

c) spent

d) has spent

80- This time next month we for our holiday.

a) are packing

b) will pack

c) will have packed

d) will be packing

81- No reporters to approach the scene of the accident.

a) allowed b) were allowed c) needn't d) didn't have

82- We phone Mary. It's her birthday today.

a) needn't b) don't have to c) ought to d) are able to

83- "Where's Ashraf?" "I'm not sure. He be in the study."

a) might

b) will

c) ought

d) shall

84- "I feel very tired today." "You have stayed up so late last night."

a) could

b) might

c) shouldn't

d) won't

85- "Did you phone Adel yesterday?" "No, I, he came round to see me."

a) needn't

b) didn't need to

c) shouldn't

d) mustn't

86- No information to the new staff yet.

a) has given

b) has been given

c) was given

d) was being given

87- He be at work. His car isn't outside his house.

a) might

b) will

c) can't

d) must

88- We go shopping yesterday because we had plenty of food.

- a) **needn't have** b) **need to**
c) **didn't need to** d) **don't need to**

89- Could you get me two of bread from the bakery?

- a) **loaves** b) **packets** c) **kilos** d) **pieces**

90- Two months a long time to wait for a reply.

- a) **are** b) **is** c) **were** d) **have been**

91- day, I will buy a big house with a garden.

- a) **A** b) **The** c) **That** d) **One**

92- "..... we miss the bus, what will we do?" "Call a taxi."

- a) **Supposing** b) **Providing** c) **When** d) **Unless**

93- "..... you hurry, you will be late for work ." "I'm nearly ready now."

- a) **Supposing** b) **Providing** c) **When** d) **Unless**

94- Hassan apologized shouting at me.

- a) **at** b) **in** c) **for** d) **about**

95- If you your room, you can go out to play.

- a) **have tided** b) **tided** c) **had tided** d) **are tiding**

96- If I feel better tonight, I to the party.

- a) **would go** b) **go** c) **went** d) **might go**

97- That office block is much than this one.

- a) **taller** b) **tall** c) **tallest** d) **being tall**

98- They had lots of potatoes, so they buy any more.

- a) **mustn't** b) **couldn't** c) **wouldn't** d) **didn't need to**

99- the bank is closed, what will we do?

- a) **Unless** b) **Though** c) **Supposing** d) **Providing**

100- If you in such a hurry, you wouldn't have forgotten the file.

- a) **hadn't left** b) **had left** c) **have left** d) **having left**

101- He denied his mother's vase.

- a) **to break** b) **broke** c) **have broken** d) **breaking**

102- They be friends. They never speak to each other.

- a) **would** b) **could** c) **can't** d) **mustn't**

103- I take your order now, madam?

- a) May b) Should c) Must d) Ought
104- you leave now, you won't miss the start of the film.
- a) Supposing b) Unless c) Providing d) Would
105- the heavy snow, we managed to get to the office.
- a) In spite of b) While c) However d) Whereas
106- "There were a lot of people at the party." "I know. But of them were strangers to me."
- a) all b) neither c) either d) both
107- "Mum, did you wash my blue shirt?" "Well, I washed two shirts, but of them was blue."
- a) all b) neither c) either d) both
108- "You can't be lonely. You have lots of friends." "Yes, but of them can come to visit today."
- a) all b) both c) none d) either
109- "Both of those dresses are beautiful." "Yes, but I don't think of them will fit me."
- a) all b) neither c) either d) no
110- "Did you watch a comedy last night?" "No, we watched two films, but of them were comedies.
- a) neither b) both c) all d) either
111- "Do you have pen-friends?" "Yes, and of them live abroad."
- a) neither b) both c) all d) either
112- "Did you read both of those books?" "Yes, but I didn't enjoy of them."
- a) neither b) both c) all d) either
113- "This cake tastes very sweet." "I think I put sugar in it."
- a) too many b) too much c) a lot d) a great deal
114- "The sun is very bright today." "I know. That's I'm wearing sunglasses."
- a) where b) when c) why d) which
115- "Shall I take my coat with me?" "Yes, take it it gets cold later."
- a) in case b) whereas c) in spite d) however
116- "Fadia is getting engaged next week." "Then that must be the reason she looks so happy.
- a) when b) why c) who d) which
117- is that letter I wrote? Have you seen it?

a) Which b) When c) What d) Where

118- When we lived by the sea; we ... to swim every morning.

a) were used b) used c) were using d) got used

119- We waved goodbye the car was out of sight.

a) while b) when c) until d) by the time

120- "I love going to the beach." "....."

a) So do I b) So I do c) Neither do I d) Nor I do.

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

| Infinitive or Present المضارع أو المصدر | | Past الماضي | Past Participle النصريف الثالث |
|--|--------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| arise | ينهض | arose | arisen |
| awake | يستيقظ | awoke | awoke |
| bear | يلد | bore | born |
| bear | يحمل - يتحمل | bore | borne |
| beat | يضرب - يهزم | beat | beaten |
| become | يصبح - يصير | became | become |
| bend | يلوى - يثنى | bent | bent |
| begin | يبدأ | began | begun |
| bet | يراهن | bet | bet |
| bid | يأمر - يقول | bade | bidden |
| bind | يربط | bound | bound |
| bite | يعض | bit | bitten |
| bleed | يذمي - ينفز | bled | bled |
| blow | يهب - ينفخ | blew | blown |
| break | يكسر | broke | broken |
| breed | يربي | bred | bred |
| bring | يحضر | brought | brought |
| broadcast | يذيع | broadcast | broadcast |
| build | يبني | built | built |
| burn | يحرق - يحرق | burnt-burned | burnt-burned |
| burst | ينفجر | burst | burst |
| buy | يشترى | bought | bought |
| catch | يمسك - يصطاد | caught | caught |
| choose | يختار | chose | chosen |
| cling | يتعلق | clung | clung |
| come | يأتي - يحضر | came | come |
| cost | يكلف | cost | cost |
| cut | يقطع | cut | cut |
| creep | يزحف | crept | crept |
| deal | يتعامل | dealt | dealt |

| | | | |
|---------|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| dig | يحفّر | dug | dug |
| do | يفعل | did | done |
| draw | يرسم - يجر - يسحب | drew | drawn |
| dream | يحلم | dreamt, dreamed | dreamt, dreamed |
| drink | يشرب | drank | drunk |
| drive | يقود - يجر | drove | driven |
| dwelt | يسكن - يقطن | dwelt | dwelt |
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten |
| fall | يسقط - يقع | fell | fallen |
| feed | يطعم - يغذي | fed | fed |
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |
| fortell | يتنبأ | fortold | fortold |
| fight | يحارب | fought | fought |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| flee | يهرب | fled | fled |
| fling | يرمي أو يقذف بقوة | flung | flung |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| forbid | يمنع | forbade | forbidden |
| forget | ينسى | forgot | forgotten |
| forgive | يسامح - يعفو عن | forgave | forgiven |
| freeze | يتجمد | froze | frozen |
| get | يحصل على | got | got |
| give | يعطي | gave | given |
| go | يذهب | went | gone |
| grind | يطحن | ground | ground |
| grow | يزرع - ينمو | grew | grown |
| hang | يعلق | hung | hung |
| have | يملك | had | had |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| hide | يخبي - يخفي | hid | hidden |
| hit | يضرب - يصطدم - يرتطم | hit | hit |
| hold | يمسك | held | held |

| | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| hurt | يضر - يؤذي | hurt | hurt |
| keep | يحفظ - يصون | kept | kept |
| kneel | يركع | knelt | knelt |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |
| lay | يضع | laid | laid |
| lead | يقود | led | led |
| leap | يقفز | leapt | leapt |
| learn | يتعلم | learnt-learned | learnt-learned |
| leave | يترك | left | left |
| lend | يقرض - يسلف | lent | lent |
| let | يدع | let | let |
| lie | يرقد | lay | lain |
| lie | يكذب | lied | lied |
| light | يشعل أو يضيئ | lighted-lit | lighted-lit |
| lose | يفقد | lost | lost |
| make | يصنع - يجعل | made | made |
| mean | يعني - يقصد | meant | meant |
| meet | يقابل | met | met |
| mistake | يخطئ | mistook | mistaken |
| misunderstand | يسئ الفهم | misunderstood | misunderstood |
| outrun | يتفوق على | outran | outrun |
| overcome | يغلب على | overcame | overcome |
| overthrow | يطيح بـ | overthrew | overthrown |
| put | يضع | put | put |
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| ride | يركب | rode | ridden |
| ring | يدق | rang | rung |
| rise | يشرق - ينهض | rose | risen |
| run | يجري | ran | run |
| say | يقول | said | said |
| see | يرى | saw | seen |
| seek | يبحث عن | sought | sought |
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |

| | | | |
|--------|---------------|---------|----------|
| send | برسل | sent | sent |
| set | ببدا - يضع | set | set |
| sew | يحيك - يخيظ | sewed | sewn |
| shake | بهتز - يهز | shook | shaken |
| shed | يذرف - يسفك | shed | shed |
| shine | يلمع يضئ | shone | shone |
| shoot | يطلق - ينفذ | shot | shot |
| show | يري - يبين | showed | shown |
| shrink | ينكمش - ينقلص | shrank | shrunk |
| shut | يغلق | shut | shut |
| sing | يغني | sang | sung |
| sink | يغوص - يغرق | sank | sunk |
| sit | يجلس | sat | sat |
| slay | يذبح - يقتل | slew | slain |
| sleep | ينام | slept | slept |
| slide | ينزلق | slid | slid |
| smell | يشم | smelt | smelt |
| sow | يبنر | sowed | sown |
| speak | يتكلم | spoke | spoken |
| spell | يتهجى | spelt | spelt |
| spend | ينفق - يقضى | spent | spent |
| spill | يسكب | Spilled | Spilled |
| spin | يفزل | Span | Spun |
| split | يشق | Split | Split |
| spoil | يفسد | spoilt | Spoilt |
| spread | ينشر ينتشر | spread | Spread |
| spring | يقفز | sprang | Sprung |
| stand | يقف | stood | Stood |
| steal | يسرق | stole | Stolen |
| stick | يلصق | stuck | Stuck |
| sting | يلدغ | stung | Stung |
| stride | يخطو | Strode | Stridden |
| strike | يضرب - يخبط | Struck | struck |

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------|------------|--------------|
| swear | يقسم | Swore | sworn |
| sweep | يكنس - يكنسج | Swept | swept |
| swell | يتورم | Swelled | swollen |
| swim | يسبح | Swam | swum |
| swing | يتأرجح - يتمايل | Swang | swung |
| take | ياخذ | Took | taken |
| teach | يعلم | Taught | taught |
| tear | يمزق | Tore | torn |
| tell | يخير | Told | told |
| throw | يرمي - يقذف | Threw | thrown |
| think | يفكر - يعتقد | Thought | thought |
| thrust | يدفع | Thrust | thrust |
| tread | يطأ - يدوس | Trod | trodden |
| undergo | يمر به - يجتاز | Underwent | undergone |
| understand | يفهم | Understood | understood |
| undertake | يعهد به | Undertook | undertaken |
| wake | يقظ | Woke-waked | waked-awoken |
| wear | يلبس - يرتدي | Wore | worn |
| weave | ينسج | Wove | woven |
| weep | يبكي | Wept | wept |
| win | يكسب - يربح | Won | won |
| wind | يلف - يربط | Wound | wound |
| withdraw | ينسحب | Withdrew | withdrawn |
| withstand | يتحمل | Withstood | withstood |
| wring | يعصر | Wrung | wrung |
| write | يكتب | Wrote | Written |

Ex. 80 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly.

1. I had a three - weeks holiday in Spain.
2. My boss has been to Alexandria and I'm doing some of his works.
3. Nadia was lying in the sun before the children were playing in the pool.
4. How long did you pass your test?
5. I was walking down the street while a car stopped beside me.
6. He continued his journey before he changed the tyre.
7. Our team had scored three goals until we got to the match.
8. The professor didn't start speaking since everyone was quiet.
9. She had been singing for years just she finally became a star.
10. Do you know where he lived in Alexandria before he moved to Cairo?
11. They have been sailing for a month before they reached the port.
12. She took off her coat by the time she entered the house.
13. She was upset because she was waiting to hear from her son for days.
14. She has finished most of the work by the time her boss arrived.
15. She was pleased because she gave the job.
16. We were living in the same house for twelve years before we decided to move.
17. He left his job because he was feeling dissatisfied for months.
18. She isn't used to live in tropical climates.
19. The bus to Alexandria departs for an hour.
20. I really need a drink. I'll buy you one. What would you like?
21. I'm sure he is going to understand if you explain it to him clearly.
22. If I will have enough money, I'll buy you a new bicycle.
23. Last week I met Paul and he told me that Mary was moving to Canada two weeks before.
24. I'll leave before he is coming.
25. I've known him just we were at school.
26. She was working in Alexandria for two years before she applied for a new post.
27. She had just dressed before Nagi arrived.

28. Nadia has been studying English since three months.
29. She met her husband ten years already.
30. I yet haven't read this book.
31. How long did they move into their new house?
32. She's the cleverest person I ever met.
33. Janet didn't go to the dentist for six years.
34. I can't remember which I last saw a comic film.
35. He can't stand treated like a slave.
36. She came in only finding Fady had left.
37. They made him to pay for the damage.
38. Let me the first congratulating you on your success.
39. I prefer reading a book than watching T.V.
40. I prefer to read book rather to watch T.V.
41. If you don't stop to smoke, you'll make yourself ill.
42. We are waiting for his first novel published in England.
43. Don't tease him anymore. He doesn't enjoy to be laughed at.
44. Listen carefully because I don't want to misunderstand.
45. She wasn't too inexperienced to get the job.
46. The horror film was terrified.
47. Dad didn't let me to drive his car.
48. He found it difficult enough to do the crossword.
49. The secretary was complaining for have too much work.
50. If the swimmer was able to find his way out of the jungle, he would have survived.
51. Today is a holiday. You can't go to work.
52. You didn't have to worry about the problem anymore I'll take care of it.
54. You don't need to say that. She was very upset by your remark.
55. Perhaps he left the car unlocked. He will have left the car unlocked.
56. You might drive slowly. This is my advice.
57. It would be a good idea to leave early. You would better leave early.
58. It wasn't necessary for them to pay for our meal. They couldn't have paid for our meal.
59. He said he was sorry he was late. He apologized to be late.
60. I don't feel well but I'll carry out working any way.

61. Nagi is not good about playing football. He'd rather play squash.
62. When he was full recovered from his illness, the doctor told him to take it easy.
63. Although he arrived an hour late, he tried hardly to make up for the last time.
64. His hands were too cold as ice.
65. The soon you start, the sooner you'll finish.
66. The richer you are, the many friends you have.
67. The plane flew highly in the sky.
68. The smaller the flat is, the law the rent is.
69. You drive fast, the quicker we'll get there.
70. This energy saving machine is more economical model on the market.
71. The police was following the thief everywhere.
72. This new energy saving machine uses the least electricity than the others.
73. The news were announced on the television screen.
74. I've never seen so boring film.
75. She's the quicker typist of all.
76. That table is alike to this one.
77. Nagi has got as much books as Hany.
78. This ring is far much valuable than that ring.
79. It's possible we'll stay for another night. We should stay for another night.
80. My grandfather died with cancer.
81. This holiday was different of all the others.
82. There's a big difference from English and Greek food.
83. She attended a three- years course.
84. You must cut off the amount of sugar you consume.
85. The village was cut down for days because of the snow.
86. Every year, one out in five children in Britain is injured in an accident.
87. He tries hard to keep up with the class. He makes his good to keep up with the class.
88. It takes two hours to fly from Athens to Rome. It's trip takes two hours from Athens to Rome.

89. He is the little helpful policeman I've ever met .
90. Jane would prefer to work as a doctor from working as a nurse.
91. Smoking in trains is not allowed. You needn't smoke in trains.
92. Shall we go to the party tonight? What for going to the party tonight?
93. They started restoring the monument a year ago. They were restoring the monument for a year.
94. The hospital which I was born is being extended.
95. If I have been you I'd get some legal advice.
96. Despite of her severe disability, she fulfilled her goal in life.
97. Engy used to be the happier than she is now.
98. He explained to us the more best ways of self-defence.
99. Until I arrived home, Samy had already left.
100. We waited for six hours until the train got to the station.
101. Ann didn't buy the car since she had saved enough money.
102. He watered the plants by the time she got home.
103. As soon as I'll get home. I'll have something to eat.
104. When the Queen will arrive, we must stand up.
105. We waited for you by the time it got dark.
106. I'll call you immediately I reach my hotel.
107. The children cleared the table by the time they had finished eating.
108. I helped him so as he could finish early.
109. He opened an account so that save money to buy a car.
110. I'll take some sandwiches in case I'll get hungry.
111. He doesn't carry a lot of cash in order that avoid getting robbed.
112. She put on her raincoat lest get wet.
113. The little boy hid for fear to be punished.
114. There's too a lot of noise that I can't work.
115. It was such a nice weather that we went to the park.
116. It was such nice a day that we went to the beach.
117. He didn't work hard for he lost his work.
118. The road was blocked as a result there has been an accident.

119. For it's raining out side, let's take a taxi.
120. Because the traffic I arrived at the office late.
121. Samy is so short to join the police force.
122. He worked extremely hard that he got a promotion.
123. Despite of being rich, they aren't happy.
124. He is tall while his sister is short.
125. Although he studied hard but he failed the exam.
126. What he said, she was convinced.
127. In spite the rain, the game was not off.
128. While she going on a diet, she put on five kilos.
129. In spite of you say. I won't believe you.
130. Whatever hard he studies, he doesn't get good marks.
131. His mother is French even though his father English.
132. Expensive however the restaurant, the food tasted terrible.
133. They travelled at night in the hope to be seen.
134. The students which failed the exam can sit again in May.
135. My uncle has a large collection of antiques, many of whom are valuable.
136. The supermarket has thirty employees, most of which work part time.
137. She is friendly with the two children whose their mother is the headmistress.
138. Mr. Collins is the man from which I bought my tape recorder.
139. The building which I work caught fire yesterday.
140. Neither Nadia or Fadia knows how to drive.
141. The travel agency will contact you so that your flight is changed.
142. The hotel which we spent our summer holidays, has been closed down.
143. I not only enjoy my job and it's very well paid.
144. The plane couldn't take off because the thick fog.
145. She won't buy him any chocolate if he stops crying.
146. Mr Smith is keen at photography.
147. The accident victim had to be operated about immediately.
148. The flat wasn't cleaned yet.
149. The politician is interviewed now.

150. Tea was grown in India.
151. The prizes will award to the President tomorrow.
152. The prisoner were being taken to prison now.
153. These should take before meals.
154. There was hard any food left.
155. It is very more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
156. He is good at write stories to children.
157. I love given flowers.
158. They can't stand be criticized.
159. She hates being keep waiting.
160. She likes complementing on her work.
161. A cure for the disease hoped efficient.
162. The hostage believed to have died.
163. He said to be a dishonest man.
164. The hotel was fully booked, when we stayed at a guest house.
165. He plays football as if he is a professional best yet he is not professional.
166. She is jealous at her well-off sister in law.
167. Has someone repaired the telephone. I've just used it so it must have repaired.
168. The firemen looked tired. They tried to put out the fire for six hours.
169. When we arrived at the airport, the plane already taken off.
170. After the policeman questioned the suspect, he let him go.
171. Patients must give medicine every morning.
172. The drowning child was risking by the life guard yesterday.
173. Our water heater is repaired at the moment.
174. The explosion had caused by a gas leak.
175. The tax on cigarettes have been increased.
176. The rooms were cleaned daily.
177. The actress will protect by a bodyguard 24 hours a day.
178. The award be presented by an eminent scientist now.
179. Surgeons make operations on people in hospitals.
180. My brother has a difficult decision to do next week.
181. Everyone does mistakes when they learning something new.

182. If you take this medicine, it will do you good.
183. I have much work to make.
184. Trained dogs are using by the police to find drugs.
185. Eating too much chocolate makes me feeling sick.
186. I have cut my hair last week.
187. Nagi is having his house decorating at the moment.
188. The manager asked having a room booked to him.
189. Jim hates to have his mistakes correct.
190. He used have his meals cooked.
191. He told the maid to have served his breakfast in his room.
192. Now I wear contact lenses I had tested my eyes every three months.
193. All the arrangements should have made for the business meeting.
194. Maged got two of his teeth extracting yesterday.
195. This diet says to be rich in vitamins.
196. It thought that most of the society's problems are the result of unemployment.
197. The bus driver made the noisy passenger got off the bus.
198. He tried to give away smoking twice.
199. I was asked to hold out while Mr. Smith was fetched to the phone.
200. We were held back on the motorway for three hours.
201. Thick fog prevented the plane of taking off.
202. There was no reason on his reckless actions.
203. This man reminds me about my uncle.
204. He stood up and walked forward the front door.
205. I'm happy at the job I've got.
206. There was a lot of traffic because a car had broken up in the middle of the road.
207. There's a strong relation about smoking and lung cancer.
208. Hard work thinks to be the key to success in life
209. He can't lying when he told us the news.
210. I'll be able to book tickets so long as you let me know in time.
211. Despite of his lack of experience, he always puts forward good ideas.
212. The teacher doesn't put up bad behaviour in the classroom.
213. What for spending the day on the beach?

214. Neither John nor Tom doesn't like staying up late.
215. I can only help if you say me problem.
216. He asked me what was I doing.
217. I want to know if we were going out tonight.
218. She told him put the box over there.
219. He asked his wife if she has paid the electricity bill.
220. Nadia said that he has never written to her before.
221. My mother advised me don't stay up too late.
222. He accused me for acting as if I were guilty.
223. He insisted to me wearing that jacket.
224. He advised me that to go to the doctor.
225. The manager denied having to steal the money.
226. She accused him to cause a lot of pain to her family.
227. By who was the mistake made?
228. When will the meeting hold?
229. He asked me where was I going?
230. They suggested to see the film.
231. I wonder why did he lie to me.
232. The suspect denied to murder the young man.
233. They accused him to commit the crime.
234. I'll give you a call if I needed any informations.
235. Mary had a nanny to look over her kids.
236. Look at the unknown words in the dictionary.
237. The judge sympathized at the suspect situation.
238. Have you never been to New York?
239. She watched a film on T.V. When the telephone rang.
240. While she went to answer the phone, she slipped on some water.
241. If I were invited to the party, I'd have gone.
242. If I am a bird. I'd fly.
243. If you reserve a ticket, you will not find a seat.
244. You will get a seat if that you reserve a ticket.
245. Has he known the facts, he'd have told us.
246. But for the neighbours stop shouting, I'll call the police
247. If he not pay the fine, he may go to prison.
248. If he had known about the meeting, he will have come.

249. If only I am a millionaire.
250. She can't type, but she wishes she can.
251. I'm so desperate. I wish I don't move to this house.
252. I didn't see the programme, I wish I saw it.
253. I wish he will drive more carefully but I don't think he will.
254. If you do some exercise, you couldn't lose weight.
255. I prefer to stay at home rather than to go out.
256. Everyone will win a prize if that they finish the game.
257. Your father won't object to your going to the party unless you're back by 9 o'clock.
258. In case that you follow the map, you won't get lost.
259. She must have made out that story, it can't be true.
260. He bought her flowers to make for his bad behaviour.
261. It was so a cold weather that we couldn't go out.
262. Noone really knows why don't so many people like number 13.
263. He arrives too punctually. You can set your watch by him.
264. She wouldn't forgive him even though all his apologies.
265. Although the lack of money, he seems happy.
266. It was unwise of him to believe the weather forecast. He should believe the weather forecast.
267. It said that this juice has a high sugar content.
268. Excessive sunbathing believes to cause skin cancer.
269. Your jeans is hanging on the wardrobe.
270. The information were incorrect.
271. Physics are the study of natural laws.
272. It isn't necessary to wait for us. You can't wait for us.
273. You not need buy any meat. We have got plenty.
274. We usually go to swim in the weekends.
275. It's only six o'clock. It's very early to go to bed.
276. He wasn't too tall to reach the cupboard.
277. I'm thirsty. I was running for two hours.
278. This is the park which I take my do every morning.
279. My husband painted our house all himself.
280. Peter was driving for an hour before he had an accident.
281. Tom worked as a postman for forty years before he retired.

282. Have you been sleeping for long when I called you last night ? Yes I had.
283. They were tired. They have been discussing business problems for four hours.
284. That's the girl which dog bit me last week.
285. Medhat was buying a luxury car recently.
286. I used reading fairy tales when I was a child.
287. My father left before I got up.
288. My brother learnt to drive since he was 18.
289. My brother has learnt to drive a year ago.
290. When I want to relax. I'd rather to read a book.
291. My brother is really happy, he just won the school maths prize.
292. I find it difficult to get decisions easily.
293. My uncle doesn't enjoy to drive in big cities.
294. It's not good to have fun of people because of the way they speak.
295. You have to study for a long time where you want to train to be a doctor.
296. They arranged to go to Mexico. They'd leave tomorrow.
297. He decided to change his flat. He'll move to the city centre.
298. Mary is never being late for meetings.
299. I was never to Austria but I'd love to go.
300. How long were you in London? I've been there since last week.
301. Fred was falling off the ladder while he was painting the cieling.
302. Salah was writing three letters so far today.
303. Nadia will buy a car as soon as she will pass her driving test.
304. I see black clouds in the sky. It will rain.
305. The wind is getting stronger. There will be a sandstorm.
306. Football players pass the ball to each other until one player can win a goal.
307. I hear you're starting your university course. I'm sure you are going to enjoy it.
308. For animals and humans co-operated is important for survival.
309. My predict is that you will be a successful doctor.

310. Her intend is to pass all her exams next year.
311. The patient was saved by a pack of doctors.
312. My uncle is always optimistic and thinks something bad is going to happen.
313. My brother is always pessimistic and expects to win a gold medal.
314. My brother works for insurance company in Cairo.
315. Did Nadia get a job she applied for?
316. Can you turn out light, Please?
317. She works six hours the day.
318. There no chairs, so we had to sit on a floor.
319. I'm sorry. I didn't mean to do that. It was mistake.
320. That's least interesting book I've ever read.
321. The most tall building in our city is Cairo Tower.
322. English is more easy to learn than Chinese.
323. Nagi is the more intelligent student in our class.
324. The Pacific Ocean is not too deep as the Indian Ocean.
325. For many people climbing a great mountain is life style ambition.
326. When someone climbs a mountain, they have recognised one's goal.
327. The air is more thinner at the top of Everest.
328. We expected their house to be very big but it is no big than ours.
329. The young you are, the easier it's to learn.
330. It's difficult to concentrate when you are tired. The more tired you are, the hard you concentrate.
331. Their house is about three times as bigger as ours.
332. That film was really boring. It was more boring film I've ever seen.
333. This hotel is not expensive. It is the less expensive hotel I've ever stayed in.
334. My brother went to Harvard university when he studied economics.
335. This supermarket is open every day exception for Friday.
336. There's a wonderful group of old books in our town library.

337. Credit is money that you owe to someone.
338. My brother has to work during years before he could afford his own car.
339. Before he retired, my uncle worked like a postman.
340. I am used to play tennis a lot but I don't play now.
341. Did you used to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?
342. He not use to smoke in the past but he smokes now.
343. I rarely eat ice cream now but I was using to eat it when I was a child.
344. Last week our plane took up two hours late.
345. How far a have you read this book?
346. How much pages of that book have you been reading?
347. Have you ever been playing tennis?
348. Mary is still writing letters. She had written letters all day.
349. I knew about the accident for a long time.
350. Did you ever work in a factory? No. Never.
351. It was raining since I got up this morning.
352. I like your house. How long are you living here?
353. It started raining an hour ago. It rained for an hour.
354. I was tired yesterday because I was reading until late the night before.
355. Unfortunately even though he was training for six months, Ahmed didn't win the race.
356. As soon as I'm concerned, there are too many cars in modern cities.
357. He changed channels on the T.V. with the real control.
358. She didn't buy the cake for the party. She baked it hers.
359. My neighbour is a mechanic. He repairs his car his own.
360. Her cousins are dressmakers. They make their dresses by them.
361. We didn't go to a travel agent to organize our holiday. We organized it by ours.
362. Can you help me with these suitcases I can't lift them on myself.
363. She told her guests to help their own to food and drink.
364. The police carry guns to protect them in case they are shot at.

365. To save money, we decorated the house our own.
366. You look dreadful. You should look after yours a little better.
367. I'm writing to one of my friends. I'm writing to a friend of myself.
368. Ann invited some of her friends. Ann invited some friends of herself.
369. The box was too heavy for me to lift by mine.
370. Who was Tom with when you saw him? Nobody he was by him.
371. As soon as I'm concerned, we should support small shops and shop in them.
372. If not your help, I would have missed the way.
373. Only if you save money, you would be able to buy a car.
374. Hadn't I missed the early train, I would be late.
375. If the airline wasn't on strike, our flight wouldn't have been delayed.
376. You can visit me any time that you call me in advance.
377. I'll buy some mineral water but for I get thirsty.
378. She will go to the party in case she has finished her work.
379. It would be foolish of him if not accept the offer.
380. He wouldn't talk about his plans even you begged him to.
381. As long as I were you, I would sell my car.
382. Egypt is famous about her ancient monuments.
383. The train was late but nobody knows the reason of the delay.
384. He was worried for the result of the exam.
385. This house belongs to me. Its mine.
386. My brother applied to a vacant post in the bank.
387. Many people died by bird flu all over the world.
388. Nobody knows what the cause for the explosion was?
389. Do you think we'll find a solution at the problem?
390. Nadia gets on well with her employer. She has a good relation to him.
391. I'm not very good about repairing things.
392. We stayed at home because Janet wasn't keen over going out.

393. Mrs Davis is a keen gardener. She is very proud on her garden.
394. Your camera is similar of mine but not exactly the same.
395. My brother works about an international oil company.
396. You should apologize to your friend about you bad behaviour.
397. She lost her ring yesterday. She's looking after it everywhere.
398. I'm sure you're capable at passing your test.
399. The North coast is increasingly popular at holidaymakers.
400. He looks stupid with this haircut. Everybody will laugh about him.
401. Have a nice holiday. Take care at yourself.
402. He is old and lives alone. He needs someone to look at him.
403. I Always dream at being rich.
404. The number of people suffering of heart disease has increased.
405. I wanted to go alone but they insisted to coming with me.
406. Don't look out of the window. Concentrate in your work.
407. There was an accident. A bus collided to a car.
408. He wants his house to repair in a few days.
409. A Monastery is a building which monks live.
410. It believes that the Fayoum Oasis were used to irrigate farmers' fields.
411. It's believed that the temple of Edfue was starting in the year 237 BC.
412. The engineers took the injured man into the emergency room.
413. In ancient Egypt waterwheels were using to irrigate fields.
414. The Alexandria Library was open by the President in 2002.
415. He set out a large company.
416. Temporary shelters should have provided for the earthquake victims.
417. I don't want to think as a burden.
418. We have not allowed to leave before we finished the exercise.
419. Photographs must not taken in the museum.
420. I would have sent a letter if my uncle had known my address.
421. Students should have a dictionary to look after unknown words.
422. We are looking to going for a holiday.
423. Would you mind to answer some questions?

424. We will never run away with energy from the wind and sun.
425. If there is not enough food, people will die with hunger.
426. The old factory is polluted the air in our city.
427. Countries can't do much on them own to reduce the problem of global warming.
428. The information you are looking for can find on the internet.
429. At school we are been taught how to revise for our exams.
430. You don't have to take things that don't belong to you.
431. That film has already seen by more than five million people.
432. We couldn't to go to school tomorrow because it's a public holiday.
433. You needn't use your mobile phone while you are driving. It's against the law.
434. You didn't need to worry about the matter because I'll take care of that.
435. She hadn't to buy a dress for the party because she bought a new one last week.
436. You didn't need to buy meat because we have had much of it in the fridge.
437. Would you want borrowing me year cassette player?
438. You shouldn't park here. It is forbidden.
439. She must be on holiday. I'm not sure.
440. He can be sleeping now. I'm sure.
441. You can go to the doctor. This is my advice.
442. What a lovely day. How good going for a walk?
443. You will drive more slowly. It's raining heavily.
444. You better leave early. It's a good idea.
445. The police are carrying away an investigation into the cause of the star's death.
446. She looks miserable. She will have lost her job.
447. Could you mind typing these letters for me?
448. You won't take a jacket. It's rather warm.
449. You won't wait her because you're not allowed to.
450. It's the to best book I've even read.
451. My car broke out on the motor way and I hod to walk to

the garage.

- 452. What do you make for a living. I work as a nurse.
- 453. Could you make me a favour if you are going out?
- 454. Could you get me some milk?
- 455. Now's a good time to ask for a rise because your boss is in good mind.
- 456. The storm broke out after we have been driving for four hours.
- 457. Did you visit the national museum yet?
- 458. The last time I went to the theatre was a month already.
- 459. As both her parents had died, she was brought in by her grand parents.
- 460. I go swimming twice one weak.
- 461. Tourists from all over the world visit Egypt monuments every day.
- 462. There are castles all over British Isles.
- 463. A busiest city in Britain is London.
- 464. The information you gave me about the trip were false.
- 465. The firemen were putting out the fire while passers by was looking in amazement.
- 466. The police has caught the man that robbed the supermarket.
- 467. A group of architects are designing the new supermarket centre.
- 468. Not have I seen such a smart child.
- 469. My black trousers is dirty. I'll wear something else.
- 470. She has soon finished her homework.
- 471. Everywhere else in the world can you see such rare birds.
- 472. My house isn't so farther from the city centre as Jane's.
- 473. Many new facilities have been provided for disabled.
- 474. Not only the teacher gave us homework but she assigned us a project as well.
- 475. The teacher hasn't given us a test since three days.
- 476. Nagi, I found a brown under the desk. Is it your?

Good Luck

السلام عليكم ورحمة الله وبركاته

نرحب بكم في

[موقع ومنتديات صقر الجنوب التعليمية](#)

[منهاج المملكة الأردنية الهاشمية](#)

ويسعدنا ويشرفنا ان نستمر معكم في تقديم

كل ما هو جديد للمنهاج المحدثثة المطورة ولجميع

المستويات والمواد

ملفات نجعلها من كل مكان ونضعها لكم في مكان واحد
ليسهل تحميلها
علما ان جميع ما ننشر مجاني 100%

أخي الزائر - أختي الزائرة ان دعمكم لنا هو انمامكم لنا
فهو شرف كبير

[صفحتنا على الفيس بوك هنا](#)
[مجموعتنا على الفيس بوك هنا](#)
[قناتنا على اليوتيوب هنا](#)

جميع ملفاتنا نرفعها على مركز تحميل خاص في [صقر الجنوب](#)

نحن نسعى دائما الى تقديم كل ما هو أفضل لكم و هذا وعد منا
ان شاء الله
شجعونا دائما حتى نواصل في العطاء و [نسأل](#) الله ان يوفقنا و
يسدد خطانا

في حال واجهتك اي مشكلة في تحميل اي ملف
من [منتديات صقر الجنوب](#) المنهاج الاردني
[صفحة اتصل بنا](#)